



PUBLICATIONS OF THE  
 AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY.

**Boston University  
 College of Liberal Arts  
 Library**

THE GIFT OF C. C. Dodge '78.....

.....Dec.....19 19

No. ~~4192~~  
~~11222~~

Elements of Greek Grammar.....	1 05
Greek Verbs.....	21
<b>Harkness's</b> First Greek Book. With a Greek Reader.....	1 05
<b>Harper</b> (W. R.) and <b>Castle's</b> (C. F.) Inductive Greek Primer. <i>(In preparation)</i> .....	
<b>Harper and Waters'</b> (W. S.) Inductive Greek Method.....	1 00
<b>Keep's</b> Greek Lessons.....	1 20
<b>Kendrick's</b> Greek Ollendorff.....	1 22
<b>Kühner's</b> Greek Grammar (Edwards and Taylor).....	1 40
<b>Scarborough's</b> First Lessons in Greek.....	90

## ANCIENT LANGUAGES.

Silber's Progressive Lessons in Greek .....	\$0 57
Whiton's Three Months' Preparation for Reading Xenophon...	48
Winchell's Elementary Lessons in Greek Syntax.....	54

### GREEK TEXTS, ETC.

Blake's Lexicon of the First Three Books of Homer's Iliad..	1 00
Boise's Xenophon's Anabasis. Four Books.....	1 08
The same. Four Books, with Lexicon.....	1 32
Crosby's (Howard) Œdipus Tyrannus of Sophocles.....	1 05
Crosby's (Alpheus) Xenophon's Anabasis. Complete, with Lexicon .....	1 60
The same. Four Books and Lexicon.....	1 40
Lexicon to Xenophon's Anabasis.....	70
Lexicon and Notes to Xenophon's Anabasis.....	90
Harper's Xenophon's Anabasis. ( <i>In preparation</i> ).....	
Johnson's (H. C.) Homer's Iliad. Three Books, with Notes...	1 12
The same. Three Books, with Notes and Lexicon.....	1 32
Johnson's (H. M.) Selections from Herodotus.....	1 05
Owen's Homer's Iliad.....	1 40
Acts of the Apostles. With Lexicon.....	1 22
Homer's Odyssey.....	1 40
Thucydides. With Map.....	1 75
Xenophon's Cyropædia.....	1 75
Robbins's (R. D. C.) Xenophon's Memorabilia.....	1 40
Smead's Demosthenes' Philippics. With Notes.....	1 05
Antigone of Sophocles. With Notes.....	1 22
Tyler's (W. S.) Plato's Apology and Crito.....	1 05

### HEBREW.

Gesenius's Hebrew Grammar.....	2 10
--------------------------------	------

### LATIN GRAMMARS AND READERS.

Arnold's First and Second Latin Book.....	87
Latin Prose Composition.....	87







BOSTON UNIVERSITY  
COLLEGE OF LIBERAL ARTS  
LIBRARY



ROMAN LEGIONARY SOLDIER.

AN

EASY METHOD

FOR

BEGINNERS IN LATIN

BY

1822-1907

ALBERT HARKNESS, PH. D., LL. D.

PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY

BOSTON UNIVERSITY  
COLLEGE OF LIBERAL ARTS  
LIBRARY

NEW YORK .:. CINCINNATI .:. CHICAGO  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Subi card only

Gift of  
C.C. Dodge '78  
Dec. 1919

COPYRIGHT, 1890, BY  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Printed by  
D. Appleton & Company  
New York, U. S. A.

PA  
2087  
E90

## P R E F A C E .

---

THE volume now offered to the public is intended to introduce the learner to such a practical and working knowledge of the Latin language as will enable him to read Caesar or Nepos with some degree of pleasure.

The following are a few of the leading features of the work :

1. This volume is not a mere companion to the grammar, but a practical guide for the pupil in the work of reading, writing, and speaking Latin. It approaches the language on its practical side. The very first lesson, without a word of grammar, introduces the learner to complete Latin sentences with verb, subject, and object. Thus at the very outset he finds himself already using the language. He is not only reading Latin, but actually writing and speaking Latin.

2. The work is at once a Book of Latin Exercises, a Latin Reader, and a sufficient Grammar for the beginner.

There is a growing conviction among teachers that the attempt to prepare boys to appreciate Caesar by means of a few short lessons and exercises is a failure—that to do this successfully requires a generous course in reading easy and interesting Latin. Indeed, in some schools it has been deemed wise to supplement the introductory Latin course by additional reading before entering upon the consecutive study of Latin authors. An attempt has accordingly been made to give this work sufficient size and scope to meet this reasonable demand.

3. The exercises are largely conversational. In their preparation the author has taken pains to select interesting and instructive subjects and to treat them in an attractive form.

4. Moreover, these exercises are diversified and enlivened by the frequent introduction of passages of connected discourse, consisting of anecdotes, stories, letters, dialogues, etc.

5. Questions in Latin on the subject-matter of these passages are regularly introduced. These are not only to be translated, but they are also to be answered in Latin. By such exercises the learner is led to feel that he is dealing with a living language.

6. Throughout the entire volume it has been the constant aim of the author to lighten the task of the learner without endangering the thoroughness of his work. The grammar has been made subservient to the study of the language, but it has been by no means neglected. Special thought has been bestowed upon the question of the kind and amount of grammatical information needed by the beginner and upon the no less important question of the order in which grammatical forms and principles may be best introduced. The method adopted is at once progressive and comparative. In verbs, for instance, the pupil first learns in succession the tenses for incomplete action in the four conjugations, compares them carefully with each other, and gets a clear idea of the four varieties of conjugation before he takes up the other tenses. Subsequently the Passive forms are compared with the Active.

7. The special vocabularies accompanying the exercises are not intended merely as a help to the pupil in reading his Latin, but as an essential and important part of the lesson to be learned. Too little attention is given in this country to the acquisition of a copious vocabulary, so essential to any facility in reading Latin authors. It is earnestly recommended that all the vocabularies be so carefully and

accurately learned that the pupil shall be able to give with promptness either the English for the Latin or the Latin for the English. Thoroughness in this part of the work will be sure to be amply rewarded.

In the vocabularies words are classified according to their forms, and no little attention is paid to the subject of English derivatives of Latin origin. In the special vocabularies a column of such derivatives is introduced partly to help the learner retain the form and meaning of the corresponding Latin words, and partly to show him how closely our own language is related to the Latin, and how much it is indebted to that tongue for its rich vocabulary.

8. The method of treatment adopted in this work is largely inductive, but not excessively so. The learner is not required to make his own grammar, but he learns no arbitrary rules, and is allowed to see grammatical principles embodied and illustrated in the language itself before he has any occasion to apply them in his work.

9. The book is illustrated with four full-page colored plates and a large number of engravings of classical subjects carefully reproduced from authentic sources. These illustrations, mainly explanatory of the text, add greatly to the interest and value of the work.

It has not been deemed wise to depart from long-established usage in regard to the principal parts of verbs, but a wider scope has been given to the form in *tum* by including under it both the supine and the neuter of the perfect participle.

In the preparation of this volume the author deems himself fortunate in having had the assistance of Mr. George E. Howes, A. M., Junior Master in the Boston Latin School. He has thus secured for his work the full benefit of the best class-room experience. Mr. Howes in his professional labors has occasion daily to observe the difficulties and discouragements that beset the path of the beginner in Latin. He has

heartily co-operated with the author in an earnest attempt to reduce to a minimum all these disheartening difficulties. He has rendered efficient aid in every part of the work.

Professor Gustavus Fischer, LL. D., late of Rutgers College, has kindly furnished for this volume several interesting dialogues. His critical scholarship, thorough acquaintance with Roman literature and pure Latinity, are a sufficient guarantee for the excellence of his work.

Finally, Professor Albert G. Harkness, of Brown University, has revised a large part of the manuscript, and has thus given the author the benefit of his professional experience and accurate scholarship.

In thus adding a new volume to his series of Latin textbooks the author desires once more to make his grateful acknowledgments to his friends, the classical teachers of the country, who, by their fidelity and skill in the use of his books, have secured for them such marked success. To their hands this work is now respectfully and gratefully committed.

ALBERT HARKNESS.

BROWN UNIVERSITY, *August, 1890.*

# CONTENTS.

---

LESSON	PAGE
INTRODUCTION. Latin Alphabet . . . . .	1
Pronunciation of Latin . . . . .	2
Quantity . . . . .	5
Accentuation . . . . .	6
Sentence, Subject, and Predicate . . . . .	7
Parts of Speech, Gender, Person, and Number. . . . .	8
I. Subject and Object.—Singular Number . . . . .	9
II. Subject and Object.—Plural Number . . . . .	11
III. Nouns.—First Declension . . . . .	13
IV. First Declension.—Genitive . . . . .	14
V. First Declension.—Apposition . . . . .	17
VI. First Declension.—Certain Forms of Verbs . . . . .	19
VII. Nouns.—Second Declension . . . . .	22
VIII. Second Declension.—Nouns in <b>um</b> .—Indirect Object . . . . .	25
IX. Nouns in <b>a</b> , <b>us</b> , <b>um</b> .—Predicate Nominative.—The Preposition <b>in</b> . . . . .	27
X. <i>A Dialogue</i> .— <i>Richard and Henry</i> . . . . .	30
XI. Adjectives in <b>us</b> , <b>a</b> , <b>um</b> .—Agreement of Adjectives . . . . .	32
XII. Second Declension.—Words in <b>er</b> and <b>ir</b> .—Prepositions . . . . .	36
XIII. Second Declension.—Words in <b>er</b> .—Vocative . . . . .	39
XIV. Second Declension.—Comparative View . . . . .	42
XV. <i>A Dialogue</i> .—Questions . . . . .	45
XVI, XVII. First and Second Declensions.—Adjectives.—Dative with Adjectives . . . . .	47
XVIII. <i>A Short Story</i> . . . . .	52
XIX-XXI. Third Declension.—Stems in <b>l</b> , <b>n</b> , and <b>r</b> .—Ablative of Means	53
XXII. <i>A Father's Letter to his Boy at School</i> . . . . .	61
XXIII. Third Declension.—Stems in <b>s</b> . . . . .	63
XXIV. Third Declension.—Stems in <b>b</b> or <b>p</b> , <b>d</b> or <b>t</b> . . . . .	65
XXV. Third Declension.—Stems in <b>c</b> or <b>g</b> . . . . .	68
XXVI. Third Declension.— <i>A Dialogue</i> . . . . .	71
XXVII-XXX. Third Declension.—Stems in <b>i</b> .— <i>The Gauls and the Germans</i> . . . . .	73
XXXI. <i>An Anecdote</i> .— <i>Prince Henry and the Judge</i> . . . . .	82
XXXII. Third Declension.—Gender.—Cases with Prepositions . . . . .	84
XXXIII. <i>Something about Animals</i> . . . . .	87
XXXIV-XXXVII. Adjectives of the Third Declension . . . . .	88
XXXVIII. <i>A Dialogue</i> . . . . .	95
XXXIX, XL. Comparison of Adjectives.—Case with Comparatives . . . . .	97
XLI. Irregular Comparison.—Adverbs . . . . .	101
XLII. <i>The Farmer and his Children</i> . . . . .	105

LESSON	PAGE
XLIII. Nouns.—Fourth Declension . . . . .	107
XLIV. Nouns.—Fifth Declension . . . . .	111
XLV. <i>A Dialogue</i> . . . . .	114
XLVI-XLVIII. The Verb <b>Sum</b> . . . . .	116
XLIX. The Verb <b>Sum</b> .—Ablative of Time . . . . .	122
L. LI. <i>Dialogues</i> . . . . .	124
LII, LIII. Verbs.—First Conjugation . . . . .	128
LIV. <i>A Dialogue</i> .—Agreement of Verb with Subject . . . . .	131
LV, LVI. <i>The Farmer and the Sailor</i> . . . . .	134
LVII, LVIII. Second Conjugation.—Present, Imperfect, and Future	136
LIX, LX. Comparative View of <b>A</b> Verbs and <b>E</b> Verbs.—Pro-	
nouns, Personal, Reflexive, Possessive . . . . .	141
LXI. <i>A Letter to a Friend in Town</i> . . . . .	146
LXII. <i>A Dialogue</i> . . . . .	147
LXIII, LXIV. Third Conjugation.—Present, Imperfect, and Future.—	
Ablative of Manner . . . . .	149
LXV. Comparative View of Conjugations . . . . .	153
LXVI. <i>Jokes on the Doctors</i> . . . . .	157
LXVII, LXVIII. Fourth Conjugation.—Comparative View of Conju-	
gations . . . . .	158
LXIX. <i>A Dialogue</i> . . . . .	162
LXX, LXXI. First Conjugation.—All the Tenses.—Ablative of Sep-	
aration.— <i>Hannibal's Speech</i> . . . . .	164
LXXII. Second Conjugation.—All the Tenses . . . . .	169
LXXIII. <i>A Dialogue</i> . . . . .	173
LXXIV. Third Conjugation.—All the Tenses . . . . .	175
LXXV. <i>The Gauls enter Rome</i> . . . . .	179
LXXVI. Fourth Conjugation.—All the Tenses . . . . .	180
LXXVII. <i>A Dialogue</i> . . . . .	183
LXXVIII, LXXIX. Passive Voice.—First Conjugation . . . . .	185
LXXX. Passive Voice.— <i>More about the Gauls in Italy</i> . . . . .	189
LXXXI. <i>A Dialogue</i> . . . . .	192
LXXXII, LXXXIII. Passive Voice.—Second Conjugation . . . . .	194
LXXXIV. <i>A Dialogue</i> . . . . .	197
LXXXV, LXXXVI. Passive Voice.—Third Conjugation . . . . .	199
LXXXVII. <i>A Dialogue</i> . . . . .	202
LXXXVIII, LXXXIX. Passive Voice.—Fourth Conjugation.—Relative Pro-	
nouns.—Agreement of Pronouns . . . . .	204
XC, XCI. Verbs in <b>io</b> of the Third Conjugation.—Two Accusa-	
tives of the Same Person or Thing . . . . .	208
XCII. <i>A Dialogue</i> . . . . .	213
XCIII, XCIV. Deponent Verbs.—Ablative in Special Constructions . . . . .	214
XCV. <i>A Dialogue</i> . . . . .	218
XCVI, XCVII. Adjectives with <b>ius</b> in the Genitive.—Numerals.—Ac-	
cusative of Time and Space.— <i>Antoninus Pius</i> . . . . .	219
XCVIII, XCIX. Pronouns.—Place in which.— <i>Military Honors</i> . . . . .	225
C. <i>A Dialogue</i> . . . . .	231
CI. Subjunctive of Desire.—Subjunctive of the First Con-	
jugation . . . . .	233
CII. Subjunctive of Purpose.—First and Second Conju-	
gations . . . . .	225

LESSON	PAGE
CIII. Subjunctive in Indirect Questions.—Third Conjugation . . . . .	237
CIV. Subjunctive.—Third and Fourth Conjugations.—Infinitive with Subject Accusative.— <i>The Gods of the Romans</i> . . . . .	240
CV. Subjunctive of the Verb <b>Capiō</b> .— <i>A Dialogue</i> . . . . .	243
CVI. Indirect Discourse.—Moods in Principal Clauses.—Moods in Subordinate Clauses . . . . .	245
CVII. The Irregular Verbs <b>Possūm</b> and <b>Ferō</b> .—Ablative Absolute . . . . .	248
CVIII. The Irregular Verbs <b>Volō</b> , <b>Nōlō</b> , and <b>Mālō</b> .— <i>A Dialogue</i> . . . . .	251
CIX. The Irregular Verbs <b>Fiō</b> and <b>Eō</b> .—Accusative of Limit.—Place from which . . . . .	253
LATIN SELECTIONS . . . . .	257
<i>Queen Elizabeth and Sir Walter Raleigh.—Too Clever by Half</i> . . . . .	257
<i>Spartan Brevity</i> . . . . .	258
<i>Witticism of Cicero.—Scipio Nasica and the Poet Ennius</i> . . . . .	259
<i>The Guards Outwitted.—Augustus Caesar</i> . . . . .	260
<i>King James in Disguise</i> . . . . .	261
<i>Androctus and the Lion in the Arena</i> . . . . .	262
<i>Scipio Africanus impeached</i> . . . . .	264
<i>Eruption of Mount Vesuvius in the Year 79</i> . . . . .	265
<i>Letters: Cicero to Terentia; Balbus to Cicero</i> . . . . .	266
<i>The Battle of Marathon</i> . . . . .	267
<i>Julius Caesar: his Early Life, Public Career, Appearance, and Character</i> . . . . .	269
<i>War with the Helvetii</i> . . . . .	272
TABLES OF VERBS . . . . .	274
RULES OF SYNTAX . . . . .	301
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	309
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	339



# INDEX TO THE ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE
COLORED PLATE I.—Roman legionary soldier . . . . . <i>Frontispiece.</i>	
Head of a Roman empress, adorned with a garland of flowers.—Civic crown of oak-leaves. . . . .	10
Crowns, triumphal, mural, naval . . . . .	12
Head of Antoninus with triumphal crown . . . . .	16
Roman temples . . . . .	23
A Roman statue . . . . .	28
A Greek statue . . . . .	29
Temple of Vesta at Rome, restoration . . . . .	31
Temple of Saturn at Rome, restoration . . . . .	33
A Roman book . . . . .	40
Head of Homer . . . . .	41
COLORED PLATE II.—Temple of Zeus at Olympia.—Temple of Jupiter Capito- lius at Rome . . . . .	42
Fortune, with rudder, diadem, and horn of plenty . . . . .	47
Temple of Vesta at Tivoli . . . . .	51
Head of Julius Caesar . . . . .	57
Head of Cicero, the orator . . . . .	59
Bust of Vergil, the poet . . . . .	60
Writing materials . . . . .	62
Apollo, the god of the sun . . . . .	70
COLORED PLATE III.—Military officers.—War vessels.—Merchant vessels . . . . .	74
Minerva, the goddess of wisdom . . . . .	77
The Acropolis, or citadel of Athens . . . . .	81
A Roman school . . . . .	84
Statue of Rome, mistress of the world . . . . .	86
Diana, the goddess of the moon and of the chase . . . . .	91
The Roman Forum . . . . .	94
Bust of Socrates, the Athenian philosopher . . . . .	100
A Roman study . . . . .	103
Agricultural implements . . . . .	106
A Roman house . . . . .	109
Vestibule of a Roman house . . . . .	110
Atrium, or front court of a Roman house . . . . .	112
Peristyle of a Roman house at Pompeii in ruins . . . . .	113
One of Hannibal's elephants . . . . .	117
A Roman chariot . . . . .	120
Bust of Augustus Caesar, the Roman emperor . . . . .	123
Bust of Pericles, the Athenian statesman . . . . .	124
Chariot and horses, the famous Biga of the Vatican . . . . .	127

	PAGE
An ancient country-house . . . . .	132
Statue of Pudicitia, the goddess of modesty and chastity . . . . .	133
The Vatican statue of Augustus, with coat of mail and scepter . . . . .	139
Temple of Rome and Augustus . . . . .	140
Ruins of the temple of Saturn in Rome . . . . .	144
Pompey's theatre in Rome . . . . .	148
Statue of Augustus in the toga . . . . .	152
Bust of Scipio Africanus the Elder . . . . .	155
Head of Pompey the Great . . . . .	161
Head of Themistocles, the famous Athenian general and statesman . . . . .	167
Roman temple at Nîmes, in France . . . . .	172
A Roman marriage . . . . .	177
Bust of Quintus Hortensius, the orator . . . . .	182
An Athenian silver coin of the age of Pericles . . . . .	184
A Roman copper coin of the third century B. C. . . . .	185
Jewelry found at Pompeii . . . . .	188
A Roman bracelet of gold set with coins . . . . .	189
A Roman feast . . . . .	190
Head of Juno, the queen of the gods . . . . .	191
Amphitheatre at Nîmes, view of the interior . . . . .	192
Amphitheatre at Nîmes, view of the exterior . . . . .	193
The Tullianum, or the Mamertine Prison in Rome . . . . .	198
Bust of Herodotus, the Greek historian . . . . .	212
Clio, the muse of history . . . . .	213
Bust of Alexander the Great, King of Macedonia . . . . .	217
Vase found in the gardens of Sallust . . . . .	223
Statue of Antoninus Pius, the Roman emperor . . . . .	224
Antique vases . . . . .	225
The Arch of Titus in Rome . . . . .	229
The Arch of Constantine in Rome . . . . .	231
The Vatican Library, showing the style and arrangement of book-cases in ancient Rome . . . . .	239
Bust of Jupiter, the supreme god of the Romans . . . . .	242
Ceres, the goddess of agriculture . . . . .	243
Mercury the messenger of the gods . . . . .	244
COLORED PLATE IV.—Gods and goddesses of the Romans . . . . .	246
Roman lamps . . . . .	249
Candelabrum . . . . .	250
The Pantheon at Rome . . . . .	255
The Colosseum . . . . .	263
Pliny's villa at Laurentum . . . . .	266
Bust of Miltiades, the victor at Marathon . . . . .	268
Head of Marcus Junius Brutus, the conspirator . . . . .	271
Roman standards . . . . .	272

# EASY LATIN METHOD.

---

## INTRODUCTION.

**Note.**—The teacher will doubtless deem it advisable to begin with Lesson I, page 9, and to use the introduction for reference.

### LATIN ALPHABET.

1. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, with the omission of **j** and **w**. **I** and **i** supply the place of **J** and **j**, as they are used both as vowels and as consonants.

2. Letters are divided into vowels and consonants.

3. Of the consonants—

**B, c, d, g, k, p, q, t** are mutes;

**L** and **r** are liquids;

**M** and **n** are nasals;

**x** and **z** are double consonants.<sup>1</sup>

4. **C, g, q (qu),** or **h,** before **s,** generally unites with it and forms **x**:

*Ducs, dux,* leader; *rēgs, rēcs, rēx,* king; *coqusī, cocsī, coxī,* I have cooked; *trahsī, tracsī, traxī,* I have drawn.

5. **S** is generally changed to **r** when it stands between two vowels:

*Flōsēs, flōrēs,* flowers; *mēnsāsūm, mēnsārūm,* of tables; *agrōsum, agrōrūm,* of fields; *esam, eram,* I was.

---

<sup>1</sup> *X = cs* and *z = ds*, but here *c* in *cs* often represents *g* and sometimes *q, h,* or *v.*

6. Before **s** or **t**, **b** is generally changed to **p**, and **g** to **c**:

*Scrīb̄sī, scrīpsī*, I have written; *scrībtus, scrīptus*, written; *regsī, rēc̄sī, rēxī* (4), I have ruled; *regtus, rēctus*, ruled.

## PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.<sup>1</sup>

### I. Roman Method of Pronunciation.<sup>2</sup>

7. VOWELS.—The vowel sounds are the following:

LONG.		SHORT.	
ā like a in father:	ā'-rā. <sup>3</sup>	a like a in Cuba: <sup>5</sup>	at.
ē " e " prey: <sup>4</sup>	dē.	e " e " net:	et.
ī " i " machine: <sup>4</sup>	ī'-vī.	i " i " cigar:	id.
ō " o " old:	ōs.	o " o " obey:	ob.
ū " u " rule: <sup>4</sup>	ū'-sū.	u " u " full:	ut.

1. **U** in *qu*, and generally in *gu* and *su* before a vowel, has the sound of *w*: *quī* (kwē), *lin'-gua* (lin'-gwā), *suū'-sit* (swā-sit).

8. DIPHTHONGS.—In diphthongs each vowel retains its own sound:

ae nearly like ai in aisle:	aes, mēn-sae. <sup>6</sup>
au " " ou " out:	aut, au-rum.
ei " " ei " veil:	ei, hei.
eu " " eu " feud:	neu, neu-ter. <sup>6</sup>
oe " " oi " coin:	foe-dus.
ui " " we:	cui (kwe).

9. CONSONANTS.—Most of the consonants are pro-

<sup>1</sup> In this country two distinct methods, the *Roman* and the *English*, are recognized in the pronunciation of Latin. The pupil will, of course, study only the method adopted in the school.

<sup>2</sup> Those who adopt the English Method will now turn to page 3.

<sup>3</sup> The Latin vowels marked with the *macron* ¯ are *long in quantity*, i. e., in the duration of the sound (17); those not marked are *short in quantity*; see 17, note 3. Observe that the accent is also marked. For the laws of *accentuation*, see 18 and 19.

<sup>4</sup> Or *ē* like *ā* in *made*, *ī* like *ē* in *me*, and *ū* like *oo* in *moon*.

<sup>5</sup> The short vowels can be only imperfectly represented by English equivalents. In theory they have the same sounds as the corresponding long vowels, but occupy only half as much time in utterance.

<sup>6</sup> But in pronouncing *ae* endeavor to unite the sounds of the Latin *a* and *e*, and in pronouncing *eu* unite the sounds of *e* and *u*.

nounced nearly as in English, but the following require special notice :

<b>c</b>	like <b>c</b>	in come :	<i>co-ma, cē-na.</i>
<b>ch</b>	“ <b>ch</b>	“ chemist :	<i>cho-rus.</i>
<b>g</b>	“ <b>g</b>	“ get :	<i>ge'-nus, glō-ri-a.</i>
<b>i</b>	“ <b>y</b>	“ yet :	<i>iam (yam), iūs (yoos).<sup>1</sup></i>
<b>s</b>	“ <b>s</b>	“ son :	<i>so-nō, sa-cer.</i>
<b>t</b>	“ <b>t</b>	“ time :	<i>tī'-mor, tō'-tus.</i>
<b>v</b>	“ <b>w</b>	“ we :	<i>vel, vir.</i>
<b>qu</b>	“ <b>qu</b>	“ quit :	<i>quī, quō.</i>

### 10. SYLLABLES.—In dividing words into syllables—

1. Make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mō'-re, per-suā'-dē, mēn'-sae.*

2. Join to each vowel as many of the consonants which precede it—one or more—as can be conveniently pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable: *pa'-ter, pa'-trēs, ge'-ne-rī, do'-mi-nus, mēn'-sa, bel'-lum.* But—

3. Separate compound words into their component parts: *ab'-es, ob-ī'-re.*

## II. *English Method of Pronunciation.*<sup>2</sup>

11. VOWELS.—Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds.

12. LONG SOUNDS.—Vowels have their long English sounds—**a** as in *fate*, **e** in *mete*, **i** in *pine*, **o** in *note*, **u** in *tube*, **y** in *type*—in the following situations :

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel :

*Se, si, ser'-vi, ser'-vo, cor'-nu, mī'-sy.*

2. In all syllables, before a vowel or diphthong :

*De'-us, de-o'-rum, de'-ae, di-e'-i, nī'-hil.<sup>3</sup>*

<sup>1</sup> Observe that *i* is here a consonant ; see 1.

<sup>2</sup> Those who adopt the *Roman Pronunciation* will omit the *English Method*.

<sup>3</sup> In these rules no account is taken of the aspirate *h* : hence the first *i* in *nihil* is treated as a vowel before another vowel.

3. In penultimate<sup>1</sup> syllables before a single consonant, or before a mute followed by a liquid :

*Pa'-ter, pa'-tres, ho-no'-ris.*

4. In unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or before a mute followed by a liquid :

*Do-lo'-ris, cor'-po-ri, con'-su-lis, a-gric'-o-la.*

1) **A** unaccented, except before consonants in final syllables (13, 1), has the sound of a final in *America*: *men'-sa, a-cu'-tus.*

2) **I** and **y** unaccented, in any syllable except the first and last, generally have the short sound: *nob'-i-lis* (nob'-e-lis).

3) **I** preceded by an accented *a, e, o,* or *y,* and followed by another vowel, is a consonant with the sound of *y* in *yet*: *A-cha'-ia* (A-ka'-ya), *Pom-pe'-ius* (Pom-pe'-yus).

4) **U** in *qu,* and generally in *gu* and *su* before a vowel, has the sound of *w*: *qui* (kwi), *qua*; *lin'-gua* (lin'-gwa); *sua'-de-o* (swa'-de-o).

5) When the first part of a compound is entire and ends in a consonant, any vowel before such consonant has generally the short sound: *ab'-es, in'-it.*

**13. SHORT SOUNDS.**—Vowels have their short English sounds—**a** as in *fat*, **e** in *met*, **i** in *pin*, **o** in *not*, **u** in *tub*, **y** in *myth*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant:

*A'-mat, a'-met, rex'-it*; except *post, es final,* and *os final* in plural cases: *res, di'-es, hos, a'-gros.*

2. In all syllables before *x,* or any two consonants except a mute followed by a liquid (12, 3 and 4):

*Rex'-it, bel'-lum, bel-lo'-rum.*

3. In all accented syllables, not penultimate, before one or more consonants:

*Dom'-i-nus, pat'-ri-bus.* But—

1) **A, e,** or **o** before a single consonant (or a mute and a liquid), followed by *e, i,* or *y* before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es, a'-cri-a, me'-re-o, do'-ce-o.*

2) **U,** in any syllable not final, before a single consonant or a mute and a liquid, except *bl,* has the long sound: *sa-lu'-bri-tas.*

<sup>1</sup> Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

**14. DIPHTHONGS.**—Diphthongs are pronounced as follows :

**Ae** like **e**: *Cae'-sar, Daed'-a-lus*.<sup>1</sup>      **Au** as in author: *au'-rum*.  
**Oe** like **e**: *Oe'-ta, Oed'-i-pus*.<sup>1</sup>      **Eu**<sup>2</sup> as in neuter: *neu'-ter*.

**15. CONSONANTS.**—The consonants are pronounced in general as in English. Thus :

I. **C** and **g** are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e, i, y, ae,* and *oe,* and *hard* in other situations:<sup>3</sup> *ce'-do* (se'-do), *ci'-vis, cae'-do, a'-ge* (a'-je); *ca'-do* (ka'-do), *co'-go*.

II. **S, t,** and **x** are generally pronounced as in the English words *son, time, expect*: *sa'-cer, ti'-mor, rex'-i* (*rek'-si*). But—

1. *S, t,* and *x* are aspirated before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel—*s* and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, and *x* that of *ksh*: *Al'-si-um* (Al'-she-um), *ar'-ti-um* (ar'-she-um), *anx'-i-us* (ank'-she-us).

2. *S* is sometimes pronounced like *z*, especially at the end of a word: *spes, urbs*.

3. *X* at the beginning of a word has the sound of *z*: *Xan'-thus*.

**16. SYLLABLES.**—In dividing words into syllables—

1. Make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs: *mo'-re, per-sua'-de, men'-sae*.

2. Distribute the consonants so as to give the proper sound to each vowel and diphthong, as determined by previous rules (12-14): *pa'-ter, pa'-tres, a-gro'-rum, au-di'-vi, gen'-e-ri, dom'-i-nus*.

## QUANTITY.

**17. Syllables** are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.<sup>4</sup>

I. **LONG.**—A syllable is long in quantity—

1. If it contains a diphthong or a long vowel: *haec, rēs*.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> That is, the diphthong is pronounced precisely as *e* would be in the same situation.

<sup>2</sup> *Ei* and *oi* are seldom diphthongs, but when so used they are pronounced as in *height, coin*: *hei, proin*. *Ui*, as a diphthong, with the long sound of *i*, occurs in *cui, hui, huic*.

<sup>3</sup> *C* has the sound of *sh* before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel: *so'-ci-us* (so'-she-us).

<sup>4</sup> Common, i. e., sometimes long and sometimes short.      <sup>5</sup> See Note 3, below.

2. If its vowel is followed by *x* or *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid: <sup>1</sup> *dux, rēx, sunt.*<sup>2</sup>

II. SHORT.—A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel, by a diphthong, or by the aspirate *h*: *di-ēs, vi-ae, ni'-hil.*<sup>3</sup>

III. COMMON.—A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally short,<sup>4</sup> is followed by a mute and a liquid: *a-grī.*

**Note 1.**—Vowels are also in quantity either long, short, or common; but the quantity of the vowel does not always coincide with the quantity of the syllable.<sup>5</sup>

**Note 2.**—Vowels are long before *ns, nf, gn, gm*, and generally before *i* consonant: *cōn'-sul, īn-fē'-lix, rēg'-num, āgmen, ēius.*

**Note 3.**—The signs <sup>ˉ</sup>, and <sup>˘</sup> are used to mark the quantity of vowels, the first denoting that the vowel over which it is placed is *long*, the second that it is *common*, i. e., sometimes long and sometimes short: *ubī.* All vowels not marked are to be treated as short.

## ACCENTUATION.

18. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first: *mēn'-sa.*

19. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the *Penult*,<sup>6</sup> if that is long in quantity;<sup>7</sup> otherwise on the *Antepenult*:<sup>6</sup> *ho-nō'-ris, cōn'-su-lis.*

<sup>1</sup> That is, in the order here given, with the mute before the liquid.

<sup>2</sup> Observe that the vowel in such syllables may be either long or short. Thus it is long in *rēx*, but short in *dux* and *sunt*.

<sup>3</sup> By referring to page 2, it will be seen that, in the Roman Method, *quantity* and *sound* coincide with each other: a vowel long in quantity is long in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is short in sound. But, by referring to 12 and 13, it will be seen that, in the English Method, the quantity of a vowel does not at all affect its sound, except in determining the accent (19). Hence, in pronouncing according to the English Method, determine the place of the accent by the quantity, according to 19, and then determine the sounds of the letters irrespective of quantity, according to 12-15.

<sup>4</sup> A vowel is said to be *naturally* short, when it is short in its own *nature*; i. e., in itself, without reference to its position.

<sup>5</sup> Thus in long syllables the vowels may be either long or short, as in *rēx, dux, sunt*. But in short syllables the vowels are also short.

<sup>6</sup> The penult is the last syllable but one; the antepenult, the last but two.

<sup>7</sup> Thus the quantity of the *syllable*, not of the *vowel*, determines the place of the accent: *regen'-tis*, accented on the penult, because that *syllable* is *long*, though its *vowel* is *short*: see 17, I, 2.

1. A secondary or subordinate accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent—on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third: *mo'-nu-ē'-runt*, *mo'-nu-e-rā'-mus*,<sup>1</sup> *in-stau'-rā-vē'-runt*.

## SENTENCE, SUBJECT, AND PREDICATE.

20. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses a single thought:

*Deus mundum aedificāvit.*      *God made (built) the world.*

21. Every SENTENCE consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks;

2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject:

*Rēgīna laudātur.*      *The queen is praised.*<sup>2</sup>

**Note.**—In Latin, both subject and predicate may be contained or implied in a single word, if that word is a verb:

*Amat, he loves.*      *Amant, they love.*<sup>3</sup>

22. The SUBJECT of a sentence, if expressed, must be a noun or some word or words used as a noun:

*Rēgīna laudātur.*      *THE QUEEN is praised.*<sup>4</sup>

23. The PREDICATE must be either a verb, or the copula *sum*—the verb to be—with a noun or adjective:

*Mārcus laudātur.*      *Marcus IS PRAISED.*<sup>5</sup>

*Mārcus est poēta.*      *Marcus IS A POET.*

*Mārcus est doctus.*      *Marcus IS LEARNED.*

**Note.**—Here the predicates are **laudātur**, is praised, **est poēta**, is a poet, and **est doctus**, is learned. A noun used as **poēta** is here used to form the predicate, is called a Predicate Noun, and is said to be *predicated* or *affirmed* of the subject. Thus it is here affirmed of Marcus that he is A POET. An adjective thus used, **doctus** in the example, is called a Predicate Adjective.

<sup>1</sup> In the English Method divide thus: *mon'-u-e'-runt*, *mon-u-e-ra'-mus*.

<sup>2</sup> *Rēgīna*, *the queen*, is the subject, and *laudātur*, *is praised*, the predicate.

<sup>3</sup> The ending *t* in *ama-t* shows that the subject is of the *third person singular*; *HE* and the ending *nt* in *ama-nt* shows that it is of the *third person plural*.

<sup>4</sup> Observe that the subject *rēgīna* is in *antique* type, and the corresponding English, *THE QUEEN*, in *SMALL CAPITALS*.

<sup>5</sup> The Latin predicates are in *antique* type, and the English in *SMALL CAPITALS*.

**24.** In Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*, viz.: *Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*<sup>1</sup>

**25.** Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case.*

## I. GENDER.

**26.** There are three genders:<sup>2</sup> *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

**Note.**—In some nouns, GENDER is determined by SIGNIFICATION; in others, by ENDINGS.<sup>3</sup> The Gender of nouns as determined by SIGNIFICATION may be ascertained by the following GENERAL RULES.

### 27. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

#### I. Masculines:

- Names of *Males*: **Cicerō**; **vir**, man; **rēx**, king.
- Names of *Rivers, Winds, and Months*: **Rhēnus**, Rhine; **Notus**, south wind; **Mārtius**, March.

#### II. Feminines:

- Names of *Females*: **mulier**, woman; **leaena**, lioness.
- Names of *Countries, Towns, Islands, and Trees*: **Graecia**, Greece; **Rōma**, Rome; **Dēlos**, Delos; **pirus**, pear-tree.

## II. PERSON AND NUMBER.<sup>4</sup>

**28.** The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one; the plural, more than one.

<sup>1</sup> In general, the use of the Parts of Speech is the same in Latin as in English.

<sup>2</sup> In English, *gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males*; feminine nouns, *females*; and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females*; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction, according to grammatical rules.

<sup>3</sup> The gender of nouns as determined by ENDINGS will be given in connection with the several declensions.

<sup>4</sup> For CASES, see 38.

## LESSON I.

SUBJECT AND OBJECT.—SINGULAR NUMBER.<sup>1</sup>

**29.** Examine the following sentences and notice carefully the ENDINGS of the words:

- |                          |                                      |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Laudat.               | <i>He praises, or praises.</i>       |
| 2. Poëta laudat.         | <i>The poet praises.<sup>2</sup></i> |
| 3. Poëta rēgīnam laudat. | <i>The poet praises the queen.</i>   |
| 4. Rēgīna poëtā laudat.  | <i>The queen praises the poet.</i>   |

In these examples observe—

- 1) That the verb, *laudat*, ends in **at**.<sup>3</sup>
- 2) That the noun, *poëta*, *rēgīna*, used as the subject of *laudat*, ends in **a**.<sup>4</sup>
- 3) That the noun, *poëtā*, *rēgīnam*, used as the object of *laudat*, ends in **am**.<sup>5</sup>

**30.** VOCABULARY.

## NOUNS.—SINGULAR NUMBER.

NOMINATIVE.	ACCUSATIVE.	MEANING.	DERIVATIVES. <sup>6</sup>
<i>corōna</i> ,	<i>corōnam</i> ,	wreath, garland, crown.	<i>crown.</i>
<i>epistula</i> ,	<i>epistulam</i> ,	letter, epistle.	<i>epistle.</i>
<i>fābula</i> ,	<i>fābulam</i> ,	story, tale, fable.	<i>fable.</i>
<i>poëta</i> ,	<i>poëtā</i> ,	poet.	<i>poet.</i>
<i>puella</i> ,	<i>puellam</i> ,	girl, maiden.	
<i>rēgīna</i> ,	<i>rēgīnam</i> ,	queen.	

<sup>1</sup> It is advised that the Introduction be used mainly for reference, but that such parts of it be learned from time to time as the interests of the class may require. For pronunciation the pupil must at first depend upon his teacher, but he will soon be able to profit by the rules contained in the Introduction.

<sup>2</sup> As the Latin has no article, a noun may, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated (1) with the definite article *the*: as, *poëta*, the poet; (2) with the indefinite article *a* or *an*: as, *poëta*, a poet; (3) without the article: as, *poëta*, poet.

<sup>3</sup> This is a regular ending in the singular number of a large class of Latin verbs.

<sup>4</sup> This is a regular ending in the singular number of a large class of nouns when used as the *subject* of a verb. The forms in *a* are in the *Nominative Case*.

<sup>5</sup> This is a regular ending in the singular number of a large class of nouns when used as the *object* of a verb. The forms in *am* are in the *Accusative Case*.

<sup>6</sup> The English words inserted in this column are either derived from the Latin, directly or indirectly, or are closely related to it in origin, form, and meaning. They are here introduced partly to help the learner retain the form

SINGULAR.	VERBS.	DERIVATIVES.
	MEANING.	
<b>amat,</b>	(he, she, it) loves. <sup>1</sup>	<i>am</i> -iable.
<b>dēlectat,</b>	(he, she, it) delights, pleases.	<i>delight</i> .
<b>laudat,</b>	(he, she, it) praises.	<i>laud</i> . <sup>2</sup>

### 31. *Translate into English.*

1. Fābula puellam dēlectat.
2. Puella fābulam laudat.
3. Poēta puellam laudat.
4. Puella poētā laudat.
5. Puella rēgīnam amat.
6. Rēgīna puellam amat.
7. Corōna rēgīnam dēlectat.
8. Rēgīna corōnam laudat.
9. Epistula poētā dēlectat.
10. Poēta epistulam laudat.



*Head of a Roman empress,  
adorned with a garland  
of flowers.*

### 32. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The girl praises the queen.
2. The queen praises the girl.
3. The story pleases the poet.
4. The poet praises the story.
5. The wreath delights the girl.
6. The girl praises the wreath.
7. The letter delights the queen.
8. The queen praises the letter.
9. The queen praises the story.
10. The story pleases the queen.



*Civic crown of oak leaves.*<sup>3</sup>

and meaning of the corresponding Latin words, and partly to show him how closely our own language is related to the Latin, and how much it is indebted to that language for its rich vocabulary.

<sup>1</sup> When *amat* has no subject expressed, it means *he loves, she loves, or it loves*, but with a subject it means simply *loves*: *poēta amat*, the poet loves; see also above, *laudat*, he praises, and *poēta laudat*, the poet praises.

<sup>2</sup> Other derivatives, more or less closely connected with these Latin words, are: *corona*-l, *corone*-t; *epistola*-ry; *fabul*-ous; *poet*-ic; *ama*-tory, *ama*-teur; *delight*-ful, *delecta*-ble; *lauda*-ble, *lauda*-tory.

<sup>3</sup> The reward for saving the life of a Roman citizen.

## LESSON II.

## SUBJECT AND OBJECT.—PLURAL NUMBER.

**33.** Examine the following sentences and notice carefully the ENDINGS of the words:

- |                            |                                     |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Laudant.                | <i>They praise, or praise.</i>      |
| 2. Poëtae laudant.         | <i>The poets praise.</i>            |
| 3. Poëtae rēgīnās laudant. | <i>The poets praise the queens.</i> |
| 4. Rēgīnae poētās laudant. | <i>The queens praise the poets.</i> |

In these examples observe—

- 1) That the verb, *laudant*, ends in **ant**.<sup>1</sup>
- 2) That the noun, *poëtae*, *rēgīnae*, used as the subject of *laudant*, ends in **ae**.<sup>2</sup>
- 3) That the noun, *poētās*, *rēgīnās*, used as the object of *laudant*, ends in **ās**.<sup>3</sup>

**34. VOCABULARY.**

## NOUNS.—PLURAL NUMBER.

NOMINATIVE.	ACCUSATIVE.	MEANING.	DERIVATIVES.
<i>corōnae</i> ,	<i>corōnās</i> ,	wreaths, garlands, crowns.	<i>crown.</i>
<i>epistulae</i> ,	<i>epistulās</i> ,	letters, epistles.	<i>epistle.</i>
<i>fābulae</i> ,	<i>fābulās</i> ,	stories, tales, fables.	<i>fable.</i>
<i>poëtae</i> ,	<i>poētās</i> ,	poets.	<i>poet.</i>
<i>puellae</i> ,	<i>puellās</i> ,	girls, maidens.	
<i>rēgīnae</i> ,	<i>rēgīnās</i> ,	queens.	

## VERBS.—PLURAL NUMBER.

<i>amant</i> ,	(they) love.	<i>am-iable.</i>
<i>dēlectant</i> , <sup>4</sup>	(they) delight, please.	<i>delight.</i>
<i>laudant</i> ,	(they) praise.	<i>laud.</i>

<sup>1</sup> This is a regular ending in the plural of a large class of Latin verbs.

<sup>2</sup> This is a regular ending in the plural of a large class of nouns when used as the *subject* of a verb. The forms in *ae* are in the *Nominative Plural*. Observe that the verb is plural when the subject is plural, as in English.

<sup>3</sup> This is a regular ending in the plural of a large class of nouns when used as the *object* of a verb. The forms in *ās* are in the *Accusative Plural*.

<sup>4</sup> Compare these three verbs with the corresponding forms in the singular number on page 10 and notice the difference in the endings, *at*, *ant*:

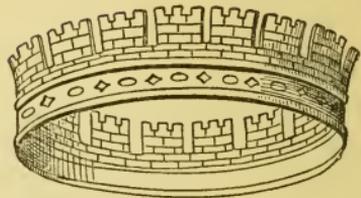
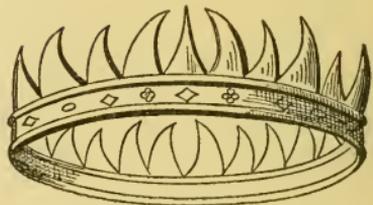
<i>am-at</i>	<i>dēlect-at</i>	<i>laud-at</i>
<i>am-ant</i>	<i>dēlect-ant</i>	<i>laud-unt.</i>

**35. Translate into English.**

1. Corōnae rēgīnās dēlectant.
2. Rēgīnae corōnās laudant.
3. Fābulae puellās dēlectant.
4. Puellae fābulās laudant.
5. Poētae puellās laudant.
6. Puellae poētās laudant.
7. Epistulae puellās dēlectant.
8. Fābulae poētās dēlectant.
9. Corōnae rēgīnam dēlectant.
10. Rēgīna corōnās laudat.
11. Fābula puellās dēlectat.
12. Fābulae puellam dēlectant.
13. Puellae rēgīnam amant.
14. Rēgīna puellās amat.

*Triumphal crown.<sup>1</sup>***36. Translate into Latin.**

1. The letters please the poets.
2. The poets praise the letters.
3. Poets praise queens.
4. Queens praise poets.
5. The garlands delight the girls.
6. The girls praise the garlands.
7. The girls praise the story.
8. Poets praise the story.
9. The story pleases the poets.
10. The girls praise the queen.
11. The queen praises the girls.
12. Poets praise the queen.
13. The letter pleases the girl.
14. The girl praises the letter.

*Mural crown.<sup>2</sup>**Naval crown.<sup>3</sup>*

<sup>1</sup> A wreath of laurel leaves or of gold, worn in triumphal procession by the victorious general.

<sup>2</sup> A crown of gold awarded to the Roman soldier who first scaled the enemy's wall.

<sup>3</sup> A crown of gold awarded to the Roman soldier who first boarded an enemy's vessel.

**37.** In all previous examples and exercises observe—

1. That the *subjects* are all in the *Nominative* case.
2. That the *objects* are all in the *Accusative* case.

These facts are illustrations of Latin usage as stated in the following rules :

**RULE III.—Subject Nominative.**

The Subject of a finite verb<sup>1</sup> is put in the Nominative.

**RULE V.—Direct Object.**

The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative.

LESSON III.

NOUNS.—FIRST DECLENSION.

**38.** The Latin has six cases :

NAMES.	ORDINARY ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative, <sup>2</sup>	Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>with</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> .

**Note.**—Locative.—The Latin has also a few remnants of another case, called the Locative, denoting THE PLACE IN WHICH.

**39.** DECLENSIONS.—The process by which the several cases of a word are formed is called Declension. It consists in the addition of certain suffixes to one common base called the stem. In Latin there are five declensions.

FIRST DECLENSION.—**A** NOUNS.

**40.** Most nouns of the first declension end in **a**, and are *feminine*. They are declined as follows :

<sup>1</sup> That is, of any part of the verb except the Infinitive.

<sup>2</sup> Often with a preposition, like the Objective case in English.

## Mēnsa, table.

		SINGULAR.	MEANING.	CASE-ENDING. <sup>2</sup>
EXAMPLE.				
Nom.	mēns <b>a</b> ,		a table, <sup>1</sup>	<b>a</b>
Gen.	mēns <b>ae</b> ,		of a table,	<b>ae</b>
Dat.	mēns <b>ae</b> ,		to, for a table,	<b>ae</b>
Acc.	mēns <b>am</b> ,		a table,	<b>am</b>
Voc.	mēns <b>a</b> ,		table,	<b>a</b>
Abl.	mēns <b>ā</b> ,		with, by a table, <sup>3</sup>	<b>ā</b>
PLURAL.				
Nom.	mēns <b>ae</b> ,		tables,	<b>ae</b>
Gen.	mēns <b>ārum</b> ,		of tables,	<b>ārum</b>
Dat.	mēns <b>īs</b> ,		to, for tables,	<b>īs</b>
Acc.	mēns <b>ās</b> ,		tables,	<b>ās</b>
Voc.	mēns <b>ae</b> ,		tables,	<b>ae</b>
Abl.	mēns <b>īs</b> ,		with, by tables,	<b>īs</b>

1. Stem.—In nouns of the first declension, the stem ends in *ā*.

2. In the PARADIGM, observe that the stem is *mēnsā*, and that the several cases are distinguished by their case-endings.

3. Examples for Practice.—Like *mēnsa* decline:

**Ala**, wing; **aqua**, water; **causa**, cause; **fortūna**, fortune.

4. Locative.—Names of towns and a very few other words have a Locative, ending in **ae** in the singular and in **is** in the plural: **Rōmae**, at Rome; **Athēnis**, at Athens. See 38, note.

## LESSON IV.

## FIRST DECLENSION.—GENITIVE.

41. Examine the following sentences and notice carefully the ENDING and USE of the GENITIVE:

<sup>1</sup> *Mēnsa* may be translated a table, table, or the table.

<sup>2</sup> These case-endings should be carefully studied and compared, as they will serve as a guide to the learner in distinguishing the different cases and in ascertaining the meaning of words. Observe (1) that the *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike, (2) that the *Dative* and *Ablative* plural are alike, and (3) that the *Genitive* and *Dative* singular and the *Nominative* and *Vocative* plural are all alike.

<sup>3</sup> The *Ablative*, used sometimes with a preposition and sometimes without, is variously rendered, but in the paradigms it is thought best to give only one or two meanings, as the appropriate rendering depends largely on the context.

1. Poēta filiam **rēgīnae** laudat.      *The poet praises the daughter of  
THE QUEEN.*
2. Rēgīna filiam **poētae** laudat.      *The queen praises the daughter of  
THE POET.<sup>1</sup>*

Observe that the GENITIVE in each of these sentences shows *whose* daughter is meant: **filiam rēgīnae**, *the daughter OF THE QUEEN*; **filiam poētae**, *the daughter OF THE POET*. It is said to qualify or limit **filiam**. It simply answers the question, WHOSE? The genitives in the following exercise are all used in this way.

## 42. VOCABULARY.

NOMINATIVE.	GENITIVE. <sup>2</sup>	MEANING. <sup>3</sup>	DERIVATIVES.
agricola,	agricolae, <i>m.</i> <sup>4</sup>	farmer, husbandman.	
diligentia,	diligentiae, <i>f.</i>	diligence, industry.	<i>diligence.</i>
fīlia,	fīliae, <i>f.</i>	daughter. <sup>5</sup>	<i>fīlia-l.</i>
nauta,	nautae, <i>m.</i>	sailor, mariner.	<i>nauti-cal.</i>
patria,	patriae, <i>f.</i>	one's country, native land.	<i>patria-l.</i>

## PROPER NAMES.

Cornēlia,	Cornēliae, <i>f.</i>	Cornelia.	<i>Cornelia.</i>
Iūlia, <sup>6</sup>	Iūliae, <i>f.</i>	Julia.	<i>Julia.</i>
Tullia,	Tulliae, <i>f.</i>	Tullia.	<i>Tullia.</i>
Vīctōria,	Vīctōriae, <i>f.</i>	Victoria. <sup>7</sup>	<i>Victoria.</i>

## VERBS.

ambulat, <sup>8</sup>	(he, she, it) walks or is walking.	<i>ambula-tory.</i>
ambulant,	(they) walk or are walking.	
cantat,	(he, she, it) sings or is singing.	<i>canto.</i>
cantant,	(they) sing or are singing.	

<sup>1</sup> Observe that the Genitives are in **bold-faced type** and the corresponding English in **SMALL CAPITALS**.

<sup>2</sup> In the vocabularies the Nominative and Genitive Singular of nouns are given. All the other cases in both numbers are readily formed from these.

<sup>3</sup> Observe that the words given in the column of derivatives are never to be used as *definitions*, unless they also stand in the column of meanings. Thus, *diligence* is at once a *definition* and a *derivative*. It accordingly stands in both columns. *Fīliā*, *nauticā*, and *patriā* are only derivatives and not definitions.

<sup>4</sup> Gender is indicated by *m.* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, *n.* for *neuter*.

<sup>5</sup> We here treat *fīlia* as entirely regular in declension, taking no account of an irregular form sometimes used in the dative and ablative plural.

<sup>6</sup> *I* in *Iulia* is a consonant with the sound of *y*; see 1 and 9.

<sup>7</sup> Observe that all the nouns that have occurred in the vocabularies, with two exceptions, are of the *feminine gender* according to 40. The two exceptions, *agricola* and *nauta*, are *masculine* because they denote *males*: *farmer, sailor*. The names of *males* are regularly *masculine*; see 27.

<sup>8</sup> Observe that the forms in *at* are singular, those in *ant* plural.

43. *Translate into English.*

1. Filia rēgīnae cantat.
2. Filia Cornēliae cantat.
3. Filia nautae ambulat.
4. Filia agricolae ambulat.
5. Iūlia filiam Vīctōriae amat.
6. Filia rēgīnae Iūliam amat.
7. Iūlia filiās rēgīnae laudat.
8. Vīctōria filiam Cornēliae amat.
9. Filia nautae Tulliam amat.
10. Filiae nautārum Tulliam amant.
11. Cornēlia filiās nautārum amat.
12. Rēgīna dīligentiam Tulliae laudat.
13. Rēgīna patriam<sup>1</sup> laudat.
14. Agricolae patriam<sup>1</sup> amant.
15. Filiae poētārum cantant.
16. Filiae agricolārum ambulant.



*Head of Antoninus,  
with triumphal crown.*

44. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The daughter of Tullia is walking.
2. The daughter of the queen is walking.
3. The daughter of the poet is singing.
4. The letter delights the daughter of the farmer.
5. The letters delight the daughters of the sailor.
6. The daughters of the poet are singing.
7. The daughters of the farmer are walking.
8. The stories please the daughters of the farmers.
9. Cornelia praises the diligence of the farmer.
10. The poet praises the diligence of the farmers.
11. Tullia praises the diligence of Julia.
12. Julia praises the diligence of Cornelia.
13. Cornelia loves *her*<sup>2</sup> native land.
14. The daughters of Cornelia love *their*<sup>2</sup> native land.

<sup>1</sup> Render *her country, their country*. In Latin the possessive pronouns, meaning *his, her, their*, when not emphatic, are often omitted.

<sup>2</sup> Omit in translating into Latin; see foot-note 1.

## LESSON V.

## FIRST DECLENSION.—APPOSITION.

## 45. Examine the following sentences :

1. Poëta Victōriam **rēginam** lau- *The poet praises Victoria* THE  
dat. QUEEN.  
2. Victōria **rēgina** laudātur. *Victoria* THE QUEEN *is praised.*

A noun qualifying another noun denoting the same person or thing is called AN APPOSITIVE, and is always in the SAME CASE as the noun which it qualifies.<sup>1</sup>

## 46. Examine the following sentences :

1. **Quis** rēgnat ? *Who reigns or is reigning ?*  
2. Tullia nōn rēgnat. *Tullia is not reigning.*  
3. **Nōn-ne** Tullia rēgnat ? *Is NOT Tullia reigning ?*  
4. **Nōn-ne** Tullia cantat ? *Does NOT Tullia sing ?*

In these examples observe—

1) The effect of the interrogative words, **quis**, **who?** and **nōn-ne**, NOT ?<sup>2</sup>

2) That the Latin **nōn**, in the second example, stands before the verb **rēgnat**, while in the English the two parts of the verb, *is reigning*, are separated and the negative *not* stands between them.

3) That in the English of the third and of the fourth example, not only the negative but also the *subject Tullia* stands between the two parts of the verbs, *is . . . reigning* and *does . . . sing*: *is NOT TULLIA reigning ? does NOT TULLIA sing ?*

**Note 1.**—In English we may say ‘he loves,’ ‘he is loving’ or ‘he does love,’ but each of these expressions must be rendered into Latin by the single word *amat*; so in the plural, ‘they love,’ ‘they are loving,’ or ‘they do love,’ must be rendered by *amant*. So also in other verbs. Thus, ‘he praises,’ ‘he is praising,’ ‘he does praise,’ *laudat*; ‘they praise,’ ‘they are praising,’ ‘they do praise,’ *laudant*; ‘he pleases,’ ‘he is pleasing,’ ‘he does please,’ *dēlectat*; ‘they please,’ ‘they are pleasing,’ ‘they do please,’ *dēlectant*. In writing Latin the learner must constantly bear in mind this peculiarity of the English.

<sup>1</sup> Thus in the first example the *Appositive* is in the *Accusative* because it qualifies an *ACCUSATIVE*, *Victōriam*, and in the second in the *Nominative* because it qualifies a *NOMINATIVE*, *Victōria*.

<sup>2</sup> Observe that *nōn-ne* is formed by appending *-ne* to *nōn*. The particle *-ne* simply changes *nōn*, not, to a question: *nōn-ne ? NOT ?*

## 47. VOCABULARY.

## PROPER NAMES.

Amelia, <sup>1</sup>	Ameliae, f.	Amelia.	Amelia. <sup>1</sup>
Lāvīnia,	Lāvīniae, f.	Lavinia.	Lavinia.
Graecia,	Graeciae, f.	Greece.	Greece.
Ītalia,	Ītaliae, f.	Italy.	Italy.

## VERBS.

expectat,	(he, she, it) expects, waits for. <sup>2</sup>	expect.
expectant,	(they) expect, wait for. <sup>2</sup>	"

## ADVERBS.

nōn,	not.
nōn-ne,	not ? <sup>3</sup>
nunc,	now.
saepe,	often, frequently.
semper,	always, ever, forever.

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

quis,	who ? <sup>4</sup>
-------	--------------------

## 48. Translate into English.

1. Quis Iūliam laudat ?
2. Poēta Iūliam filiam<sup>5</sup> laudat.
3. Nōn-ne Victōria filiās<sup>5</sup> amat ?<sup>6</sup>
4. Victōria rēgīna filiās amat.
5. Quis rēgīnam saepe laudat ?
6. Poēta Victōriam rēgīnam semper laudat.
7. Victōria rēgīna poētās laudat.
8. Epistolae Victōriam rēgīnam dēlectant.
9. Nōn-ne fābula Iūliam saepe dēlectat ?
10. Fābula Iūliam, filiam poētae, semper dēlectat.
11. Iūlia, filia poētae, epistolam expectat.
12. Quis Graeciam semper laudat ?
13. Iūlia, filia poētae, Graeciam semper laudat.

<sup>1</sup> It is not deemed necessary longer to retain the headings NOMINATIVE, GENITIVE, MEANING, DERIVATIVES.

<sup>2</sup> Or, 'he is expecting, is waiting for'; 'they are expecting, are waiting for.'

<sup>3</sup> See foot-note 2, page 17.

<sup>4</sup> *Quis* is in the Nominative Singular Masculine, and is used like the English *who*.

<sup>5</sup> *Fīliam*, his daughter; *fīliās*, her daughters: see foot-note to 43, 13.

<sup>6</sup> For the rendering of questions with *nōn-ne*, see 46, 3 and 4.

14. Iūlia, filia poētae, Graeciam patriam poētārum semper laudat.
15. Quis dīligentiam agricolae nunc laudat?
16. Poētae dīligentiam agricolārum saepe laudant.

49. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Does not the poet love his<sup>1</sup> daughter?<sup>2</sup>
2. The poet loves his daughter Julia.
3. Does not the queen love her<sup>1</sup> daughter?<sup>2</sup>
4. The queen loves her daughter Lavinia.
5. Does not the queen love her daughter Tullia?
6. She loves her daughter Tullia.
7. The farmer is always praising his daughter Amelia.<sup>2</sup>
8. Cornelia loves Italy, her native land.
9. Who is always praising the story?
10. Julia, the daughter of the poet, is always praising the story.
11. The garland delights Julia, the daughter of the poet.
12. Does not the story please the daughter of the farmer?
13. Stories always please the daughters of the farmer.
14. Is not Tullia now expecting a letter?<sup>2</sup>
15. Tullia, the daughter of the queen, is not expecting a letter.

## LESSON VI.

### FIRST DECLENSION.—REVIEW.—CERTAIN FORMS OF VERBS.

50. By comparing the examples under 41 with the examples under 45, and by observing the *Appositives* and *Genitives* in the exercises, we discover that a noun which qualifies or limits another noun is put—

<sup>1</sup> In translating into Latin, omit for the present the possessives *his, her, their*, etc.; see foot-note to 44, 13.

<sup>2</sup> Remember that the two words *does love*, though here separated, are rendered into Latin by the single word *amat*, and that *is praising* is rendered by *laudat* and *is expecting* by *expectat*; see 46, Note 1.

1. In the SAME CASE as that noun if it denotes the SAME person or thing.

2. In the GENITIVE if it denotes a DIFFERENT person or thing.

51. These facts are illustrations of Latin usage, as stated in the following rules :

### RULE II.—Appositives.

An Appositive agrees in CASE with the noun or pronoun which it qualifies.

### RULE XVI.—Genitive with Nouns.

Any noun, not an appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive.

**Note.**—Point out in the Latin sentences in the preceding lesson three or more *Appositives* and three or more *Genitives*.

## 52. VOCABULARY.

### VERBS.

#### ACTIVE VOICE.

amat,	(he) <sup>1</sup> loves ; <sup>2</sup>
amant,	(they) love ;
dēlectat,	(he) pleases ; <sup>3</sup>
dēlectant,	(they) please ;
exspectat,	(he) expects ; <sup>4</sup>
exspectant,	(they) expect ;
laudat,	(he) praises ;
laudant,	(they) praise ;

#### PASSIVE VOICE.

amātur,	(he) is loved.
amantur,	(they) are loved.
dēlectātur,	(he) is pleased.
dēlectantur,	(they) are pleased.
exspectātur,	(he) is expected.
exspectantur,	(they) are expected.
laudātur,	(he) is praised.
laudantur,	(they) are praised.

In the Latin of this vocabulary compare the *passive* forms with the *active*, and observe that they may be obtained by simply adding **ur** to the active. Thus :

<sup>1</sup> In the English, the subject of any of these verbs in the singular may be *he*, *she*, or *it*, according as the sense requires.

<sup>2</sup> In the English the verb in the active voice may take any one of the three forms mentioned in 46, Note 1, for each number, singular and plural : *amat*, 'he loves,' 'is loving,' or 'does love' ; *amant*, 'they love,' 'are loving,' or 'do love.' So in each of the other verbs.

<sup>3</sup> *Pleases* or *delights*, as in previous vocabulary ; see 30.

<sup>4</sup> *Expects*, *awaits*, or *waits for* ; see 47.

amat,	amāt- <b>ur</b> .	expectat,	expectāt- <b>ur</b> .
amant,	amant- <b>ur</b> .	expectant,	expectant- <b>ur</b> .
dēlectat,	dēlectāt- <b>ur</b> .	laudat,	laudāt- <b>ur</b> .
dēlectant,	dēlectant- <b>ur</b> .	laudant,	laudant- <b>ur</b> .

**Note 1.**—In the English—‘*is loving*’ and ‘*is loved*,’ ‘*are loving*’ and ‘*are loved*’—note carefully the difference in MEANING, and be not misled by the resemblance in FORM. ‘*He is loving*’ and ‘*they are loving*’ are *active* forms to be rendered by *amat* and *amant*, while ‘*he is loved*’ and ‘*they are loved*’ are *passive* forms to be rendered by *amātur* and *amantur*.

### 53. Translate into English.

1. Quis saepe laudātur?
2. Poēta semper laudātur.
3. Poētae semper laudantur.
4. Iūlia, fīlia poētae, semper laudātur.
5. Nōn-ne rēgīnae saepe laudantur?
6. Vīctōria rēgīna semper laudātur.
7. Quis expectātur? Poēta expectātur.
8. Nōn-ne Tullia expectātur? Expectātur.
9. Nōn-ne epistolae expectantur? Expectantur.
10. Nōn-ne nauta dēlectātur? Nōn dēlectātur.
11. Nōn-ne nautae amantur? Nōn amantur.
12. Quis dēlectātur? Tullia, fīlia rēgīnae, semper dēlectātur.
13. Quis agricolam nunc laudat? Agricola saepe laudātur.
14. Quis nautam amat? Nauta non amātur. Nautae nōn semper amantur.
15. Nōn-ne epistolās expectant? Epistolae expectantur.
16. Nōn-ne Iūlia amātur? Tullia Iūliam fīliam poētae amat.

### 54. Translate into Latin.

1. Who is always pleased?
2. Julia, the daughter of the poet, is always pleased.
3. Who is always praised?
4. The daughter of the queen is often praised.

5. Is not the poet expected? He is expected.
6. Are not the daughters of the poet expected? They are expected.
7. Who now praises Greece, the native land of poets?
8. Greece, the native land of poets, is often praised.
9. Does not the garland delight the daughter of the sailor?
10. The daughter of the sailor is delighted.
11. Who is now praising the diligence of the girls?
12. The diligence of the girls is often praised.
13. The letter delights the daughter of the queen.
14. The daughter of the queen is delighted.
15. The stories delight the daughters of the queen.
16. The daughters of the queen are delighted.

## LESSON VII.

## NOUNS.—SECOND DECLENSION.

**55.** Most nouns of the second declension end in **er**, **ir**, **us**, and **um**. Those in **er**, **ir**, and **us** are masculine, and those in **um** are neuter.

**Note.**—For this lesson, learn only the declension of **dominus**.

Nouns in **us** and **um** are declined as follows:

Dominus, *master*.      Templum, *temple*.

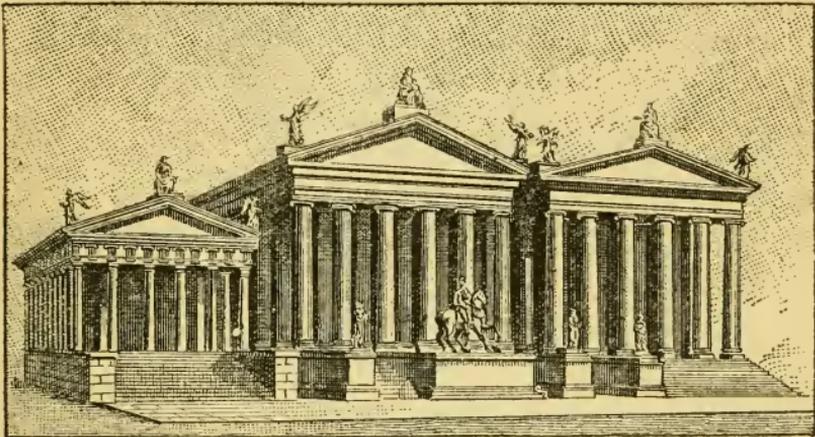
SINGULAR.		CASE-ENDINGS. <sup>1</sup>	
<i>Nom.</i> domin <b>us</b>	templ <b>um</b>	<b>us</b>	<b>um</b>
<i>Gen.</i> domin <b>ī</b>	templ <b>ī</b>	<b>ī</b>	<b>ī</b>
<i>Dat.</i> domin <b>ō</b>	templ <b>ō</b>	<b>ō</b>	<b>ō</b>
<i>Acc.</i> domin <b>um</b>	templ <b>um</b>	<b>um</b>	<b>um</b>
<i>Voc.</i> domine	templ <b>um</b>	<b>e</b>	<b>um</b>
<i>Abl.</i> domin <b>ō</b>	templ <b>ō</b>	<b>ō</b>	<b>ō</b>

<sup>1</sup> Notice carefully the *Case-Endings*. Those in the first column are the regular endings of all nouns in *us* of this declension; those in the second column, of all nouns in *um*.

	PLURAL.		CASE-ENDINGS.	
<i>Nom.</i> dominī	templā		<b>ī</b>	<b>a</b>
<i>Gen.</i> dominōrum	templōrum		<b>ōrum</b>	<b>ōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i> dominīs	templīs		<b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>
<i>Acc.</i> dominōs	templā		<b>ōs</b>	<b>a</b>
<i>Voc.</i> dominī	templā		<b>ī</b>	<b>a</b>
<i>Abl.</i> dominīs	templīs		<b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>

**Note 1.**—The ablative of nouns denoting persons is generally used with a preposition: **ā dominō**, by or from a master; **cum dominō**, with a master.

**Note 2.**—Give the meaning of **dominus** in the different cases, using **ā** or **cum** with the ablative.



Roman temples.<sup>1</sup>

### 56. VOCABULARY.

amīcus, ī, <i>m.</i> <sup>2</sup>	friend.	amic-able.
dominus, ī, <i>m.</i>	master, owner.	domin-ion.
lūdus, ī, <i>m.</i>	game, play.	
medicus, ī, <i>m.</i>	physician.	medic-al.
servus, ī, <i>m.</i>	slave, servant.	serv-ant.

#### PROPER NAMES.

Albertus, ī, <i>m.</i>	Albert.	Albert.
Mārcus, ī, <i>m.</i>	Marcus.	Marcus.
Phīdippus, ī, <i>m.</i>	Phidippus.	Phidippus.
Titus, ī, <i>m.</i>	Titus.	Titus.

<sup>1</sup> From Zeigler's Ancient Rome.

<sup>2</sup> The letter **ī** is the CASE-ENDING of the GENITIVE: *amīcus*; Genitive, *amīcī*.

		VERBS.		
ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.		DERIVATIVE
<b>accūsāt,</b>	(he) accuses;	<b>accūsātur,</b>	(he) is accused.	<i>accuse.</i>
<b>accūsant,</b>	(they) accuse;	<b>accūsantur,</b>	(they) are accused.	

57. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis Titum agricolam amat?
2. Albertus Titum amicum amat.
3. Nōn-ne servus dominum amat?
4. Servi dominum saepe amant.
5. Quis medicum nunc exspectat?
6. Titus agricola medicum exspectat.
7. Albertus medicus exspectātur.
8. Medicī rēgīnae exspectantur.
9. Medicī rēgīnae exspectant epistulās.
10. Filiae medicī exspectant amīcōs.
11. Quis Phīdippum servum accūsāt?
12. Servi Albertī Phīdippum accūsant.
13. Servi saepe accūsantur.
14. Nōn-ne servus Albertī medicī<sup>1</sup> accūsātur?
15. Servus Albertī nōn accūsātur.

58. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Does not the game delight the girl?
2. Games often delight girls.
3. Does not Titus often praise his servants?
4. Titus is always praising the diligence of his servants.
5. The diligence of servants is not always praised.
6. Is not Marcus expecting friends?
7. Marcus is expecting his friend Titus.
8. The friends of Cornelia are now expected.
9. Who now expects letters?
10. The friends of Tullia expect letters.

---

<sup>1</sup> The learner will observe that *Albertī* and *medicī* are in the Genitive for different reasons: *Albertī* because it limits *servus* denoting a *different* person according to 50, Rule XVI; but *medicī* because it is an *Appositive* to another Genitive, viz., *Albertī*, according to 50, Rule II.

11. The letter of the physician delights Titus.
12. Who praises the daughter of the physician?
13. The queen praises the daughters of Albert, the physician.
14. The daughters of the physician are often praised.

## LESSON VIII.

SECOND DECLENSION.—NOUNS IN **UM**.—INDIRECT OBJECT.  
—DATIVE.

**Note.**—For this lesson learn the declension of **templum**, and compare it carefully with **dominus**<sup>1</sup>; see 55, Lesson VII.

**59.** Examine the following sentences :

1. Titus **medicō** ūvam dat. *Titus gives a cluster of grapes to  
THE PHYSICIAN.*
2. Ūva **medicō** datur. *A cluster of grapes is given to  
THE PHYSICIAN.*

In these examples observe—

1) That **medicō** designates the person to whom the grapes are given. A word thus used to designate the person TO or FOR WHOM anything is done is called an INDIRECT OBJECT, and is always in the DATIVE.

2) That the verb **dat** takes the Direct Object **ūvam** and the Indirect Object **medicō**.

3) That the passive verb **datur** retains the Indirect Object **medicō**.

From these and similar facts is derived the following rule :

**RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.**

The INDIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Dative.

**60. VOCABULARY.**

<b>dōnum, ī, n.</b>	gift, present.	<i>don-ation.</i>
<b>oppidum, ī, n.</b>	town, city.	
<b>perīculum, ī, n.</b>	danger, peril.	<i>peril.</i>
<b>pirum, ī, n.</b>	pear.	<i>pear.</i>
<b>praemium, īī, n.</b>	reward, premium, prize.	<i>premium.</i>

<sup>1</sup> You will observe—

1. That in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative, *templum* ends in **UM** in the singular and in **A** in the plural.

2. That in the other cases it is declined precisely like *dominus*.

templum, ī, <i>n.</i>	temple.	<i>temple.</i>
incola, ae, <i>f.</i>	inhabitant.	
via, ae, <i>f.</i>	way, road, street.	<i>way.</i> <sup>1</sup>

## VERBS.

dat,	(he) <sup>2</sup> gives;	<b>datur,</b>	(it) <sup>2</sup> is given.
dant,	(they) give;	<b>dantur,</b>	(they) are given.
mōnstrat,	(he) shows, points out;	<b>mōnstrātur,</b>	(he) is shown.
mōnstrant,	(they) show, point out;	<b>mōnstrantur,</b>	(they) are shown. <sup>3</sup>
vītat,	(he) avoids, shuns;	<b>vītātur,</b>	(he) is avoided. <sup>4</sup>
vītant,	(they) avoid, shun;	<b>vītantur,</b>	(they) are avoided. <sup>4</sup>

61. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis Mārcō praemium dat?
2. Rēgīna Mārcō praemia dat.
3. Rēgīna Albertō medicō praemium dat.
4. Nōn-ne Titō praemium datur?
5. Titō praemia saepe dantur.
6. Nōn-ne Titus agricola servō dōnum dat?
7. Titus servīs dōna saepe dat.
8. Dōna servīs saepe dantur.
9. Quis Mārcō viam mōnstrat?
10. Servus Titī Mārcō viam mōnstrat.
11. Servus dominō viam mōnstrat.
12. Servī dominīs viam saepe mōnstrant.
13. Titus agricola perīculum semper vītāt.
14. Nautae perīcula nōn semper vītant.
15. Perīcula nōn semper vītantur.
16. Nōn-ne Titus agricola puellae pirum dat?
17. Agricolae puellīs pira saepe dant.
18. Dōna puellās dēlectant.
19. Templum incolās oppidī dēlectat.
20. Incolae oppidī saepe dēlectantur.

<sup>1</sup> Latin, *via*, pronounced *wea*, English *way*.

<sup>2</sup> Remember that the subject in English is to be *he*, *she*, or *it*, as the sense shall require.

<sup>3</sup> Or *is pointed out*, *are pointed out*. The passive of course admits of meanings corresponding to all those found in the active, though for want of room only one is here given.

<sup>4</sup> Or *is shunned*, *are shunned*.

62. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who gives a present to Titus?
2. Marcus gives a present to his friend Titus.
3. Who gives pears to the slaves?
4. Tullia often gives pears to the slaves.
5. Does not the gift delight the slaves?
6. Gifts always delight slaves.
7. The poet gives a present to his friend Marcus.
8. Does not the queen give presents to her friends?
9. Queens often give presents to their friends.
10. Are not presents often given to the poet?
11. Presents are often given to poets.
12. Julia is pointing out the road to her friend Marcus.
13. Danger is not always avoided.
14. The inhabitants of the town praise the temple.
15. The temple is often praised.

LESSON IX.

NOUNS IN **A**, **US**, AND **UM**, CONTINUED.—PREDICATE  
NOMINATIVE.—PREPOSITION **IN**.

63. Examine the following sentences :

1. *Mārcus poēta laudātur.*      *Marcus the poet is praised.*
2. *Mārcus est poēta.*      *Marcus is A POET.*

In the first example, **poēta** is an Appositive; see 50, Rule II. In the second example, however, **poēta** is a Predicate Noun, and is said to be *predicated* or *affirmed* of **Mārcus**; see 23.<sup>1</sup> Observe that it is in the same case as **Mārcus**, i. e., in the *Nominative*. This usage is expressed in the following rule :

**RULE I.—Predicate Nouns.**

A noun predicated of another noun denoting the same person or thing agrees with it in **CASE**.

---

<sup>1</sup> For a clearer understanding of *Predicate Nouns*, the pupil is advised to read very carefully section 23, with the note, in the introduction.

## 64. Examine the following sentences :

- |                                 |                                 |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Ubī est rēgīna ?             | Where is the queen ?            |
| 2. Rēgīna in Italiā est.        | The queen is IN ITALY.          |
| 3. Ubī est Cornēlia ?           | Where is Cornelia ?             |
| 4. Cornēlia est in tem-<br>plō. | Cornelia is IN THE TEM-<br>PLE. |
| 5. Ubī est puer ?               | Where is the boy ?              |
| 6. Puer est in hortō.           | The boy is IN THE GARDEN.       |



Roman statue.

Observe that in these examples the preposition **in** is followed by the *ablative*, and that the *ablative with the preposition* is used precisely like the *English Objective Case with the preposition in* to answer the question **WHERE ? IN WHAT PLACE ?**

## 65. VOCABULARY.

fundus, ī, m.	farm, estate.	fund.
hortus, ī, m.	garden, ground.	horti-culture.
mālum, ī, n.	apple.	
statua, ae, f.	statue.	statue.

## PROPER NAMES.

Henricus, ī, m.	Henry.	Henry.
Ricardus, ī, m.	Richard.	Richard.
Eurōpa, ae, f.	Europe.	Europe.
Virgīnia, ae, f.	Virginia.	Virginia.

ubī, adv.	where ?	
et, conj.	and.	
in, prep. with abl.	in.	in.

## VERBS.

habet,	(he, she, it) has, holds.
habent,	(they) have, hold.
est,	(he, she, it) is.
sunt,	(they) are.

66. *Translate into English.*

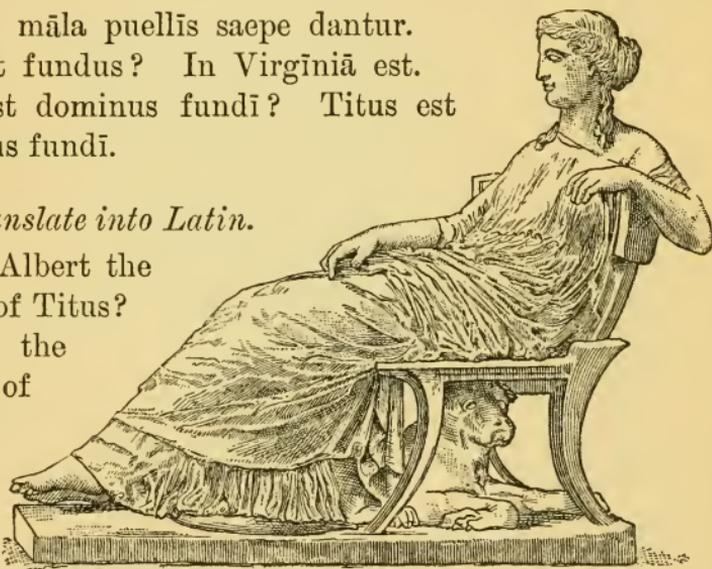
1. Quis est Mārcus? Mārcus est poēta.
2. Ubī est poēta? Poēta Mārcus est in Eurōpā.
3. Nōn-ne Vīctōria est rēgīna? Est rēgīna.
4. Ubī est Cornēlia? Cornēlia in Graeciā est.
5. Quis est medicus? Phīdippus est medicus.
6. Nōn-ne Phīdippus est servus? Phīdippus est medicus et servus.
7. Ubī est medicus? Phīdippus medicus est in oppidō.
8. Ubī sunt statuæ? Statuæ in templīs sunt.
9. Nōn-ne Iūlia est filia poētae? Est filia poētae.
10. Ubī est Iūlia? Iūlia filia poētae in Eurōpā est.
11. Ubī est Ricardus? In hortō est.
12. Quis puellīs māla dat? Ricardus puellīs māla et pira dat.
13. Pira et māla puellīs saepe dantur.
14. Ubī est fundus? In Virgīniā est.
15. Quis est dominus fundī? Titus est dominus fundī.

67. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Is not Albert the friend of Titus?  
He is the friend of Titus.
2. Who is the physician?

Albert is the physician.

3. Is not Tullia the daughter of the queen? She is the daughter of the queen.



*Greek statue.<sup>1</sup>*

<sup>1</sup> Critics claim to have discovered in the two statues given on pages 28 and 29, types of two distinct schools of art, the Greek and the Roman.

4. Who is the poet? The poet is Marcus.
5. Are there not temples in Greece? There are temples in Greece and in Italy.
6. Who is Titus? Titus is a farmer.
7. Is not Italy the native land of poets? Greece is the native land of poets.
8. Where is Tullia? Tullia, the daughter of the queen, is in Italy.
9. Where are the girls? They are in the garden.
10. Is not Richard in the garden? He is in the garden. He is giving pears to the girls.
11. Where is Julia's estate? It is in Italy.
12. Who has an estate in Virginia? Richard has a farm in Virginia.
13. Where is Henry? He is now in Virginia.

## LESSON X.

## A DIALOGUE.—RICHARD AND HENRY.

## 68. VOCABULARY.

colloquium, <i>iī</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>n.</i>	dialogue, conversation.	<i>colloqui-al.</i>
con-discipulus, <i>ī</i> , <i>m.</i>	school-mate. <sup>2</sup>	
īnsula, <i>ae, f.</i>	island.	<i>insula-r.</i>
vīcus, <i>ī, m.</i>	village, ward.	

## PROPER NAMES.

Actna, <i>ae, f.</i>	Ætna, Mount Ætna.	<i>Ætna.</i>
Corinthus, <i>ī, f.</i>	Corinth.	<i>Corinth.</i>
Rōma, <i>ae, f.</i>	Rome.	<i>Rome.</i>
Sicilia, <i>ae, f.</i>	Sicily.	<i>Sicily.</i>
Vesta, <i>ae, f.</i>	Vesta, goddess of the Roman household.	<i>Vesta.</i>
certē, <i>adv.</i>	certainly, surely.	<i>cert-ainly.</i>

<sup>1</sup> The Genitive ends in *iī*: *colloquīī*.

<sup>2</sup> *Discipulus* means 'a pupil,' 'learner,' and *con-discipulus*, 'a fellow-pupil,' 'a school-mate.'

## 69. COLLOQUIUM.

RICARDUS ET HENRĪCUS, CONDISCIPULĪ.

Ricardus.—Ubi est Ītalia?

Henrīcus.—Ītalia in Eurōpā est.

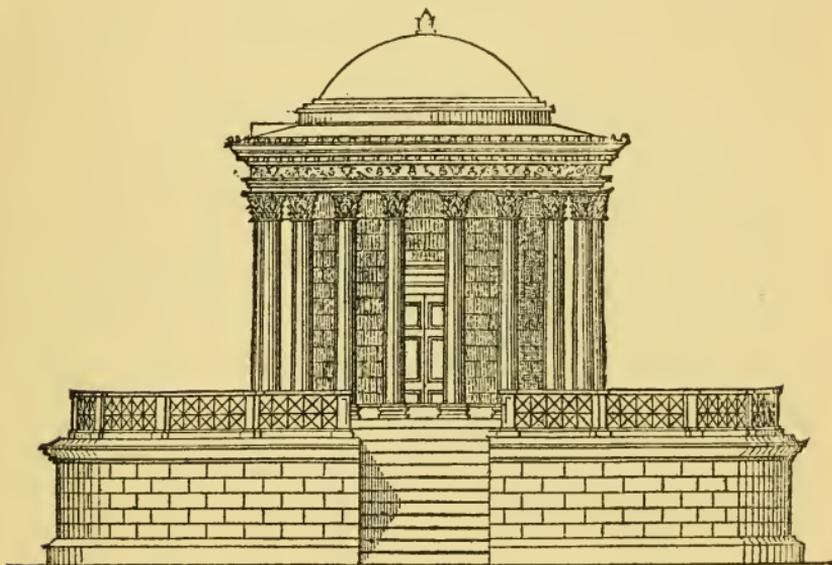
R.—Nōn-ne incolae Ītaliae habent oppida?

H.—Oppida et vicōs habent. Rōma in Ītaliā est.

R.—Nōn-ne habent fundōs?

H.—Habent fundōs et hortōs.

R.—Nōn-ne sunt templa in oppidīs?

H.—Certē. Sunt templa in oppidīs et in templīs statuæ.  
Templum Vestae saepe laudātur.*Temple of Vesta at Rome.*<sup>1</sup>

R.—Nōn-ne Iūlia in Ītaliā fundum habet?

H.—Certē. Iūlia et Cornēlia fundōs in Ītaliā habent.

R.—Ubi est Sicilia?

H.—In Eurōpā est. Sicilia est insula. In Siciliā est Aetna.

R.—Ubi est Graecia?

<sup>1</sup> Taken by permission from Lanciani's Ancient Rome.

H.—Graecia est in Eurōpā. Graecia est patria poētārum.

Incolae Graeciae sunt poētae et agricolae et nautae.

R.—Nōn-ne sunt oppida in Graeciā?

H.—Certē sunt oppida et vicī in Graeciā.

R.—Ubī est Corinthus?

H.—Corinthus est in Graeciā.

**70.** *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Ubī est Rōma? 2. Ubī est fundus Iūliae? 3. Nōn-ne incolae Graeciae habent oppida? 4. Nōn-ne sunt templa in Graeciā? 5. Ubī sunt statuae? 6. Nōn-ne in Italiā sunt oppida?

## LESSON XI.

### ADJECTIVES IN **US**, IN **A**, AND IN **UM**.

**71.** We have now learned the declension and use of three important classes of nouns:

1. Nouns in **us**, generally *masculine*.
2. Nouns in **a**, generally *feminine*.
3. Nouns in **um**, always *neuter*.

**72.** Corresponding to these three classes of nouns are three forms of adjectives:

1. A *masculine* form in **us**, used only with masculine nouns.
2. A *feminine* form in **a**, used only with feminine nouns.
3. A *neuter* form in **um**, used only with neuter nouns.

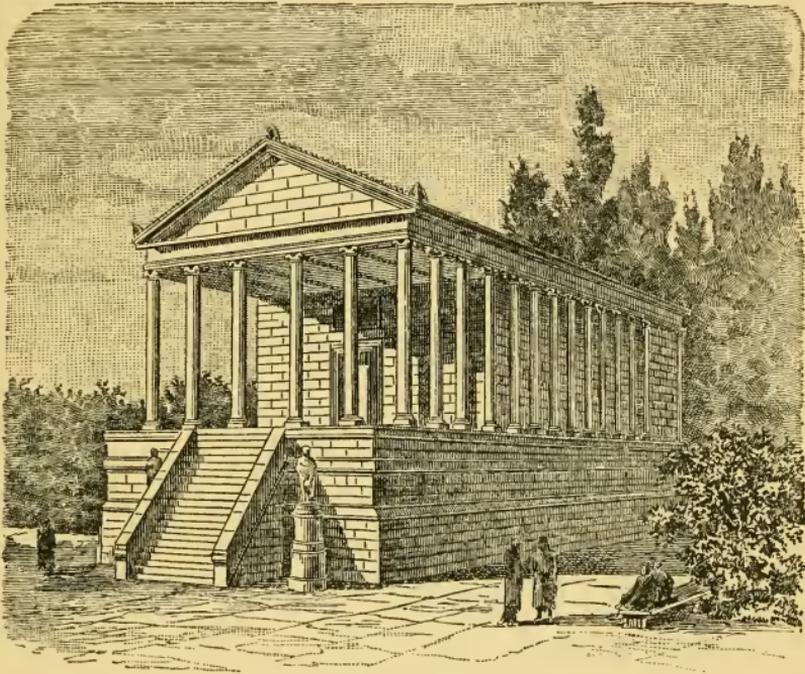
Thus the three forms, **māgnus**, **māgna**, **māgnum**, all mean *great*, *large*, but **māgnus** can be used only with *masculine* nouns, **māgna** with *feminine* nouns, and **māgnum** with *neuter* nouns: **māgnus numerus**, *a large number*; **māgna corōna**, *a large crown*; **māgnum oppidum**, *a large town*.

**73.** These adjectives are declined precisely like nouns of the same endings. Thus—

1. **Bonus**, *good*, is declined through all the cases of both numbers like *dominus*. Decline it in full.

2. **Bona**, *good*, is declined like *mēnsa*. Decline it in full.

3. **Bonum**, *good*, is declined like *templum*. Decline it in full.



*Temple of Saturn, the God of Agriculture and Civilization.*<sup>1</sup>

Decline together the following nouns and adjectives :

1. **dominus bonus**, *the good master* ; 2. **rēgīna bona**, *the good queen* ; 3. **oppidum māgnūm**, *the large town* ; 4. **medicus doctus**, *the learned physician* ; 5. **epistula longa**, *a long letter* ; 6. **templum māgnificūm**, *a magnificent temple*.

<sup>1</sup> Restoration by M. Dutert. For the head of Saturn, see Plate IV, 13. For other celebrated temples, see Plate II.

## 74. Examine the following examples :

- |                       |                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Servus bonus.      | <i>A good slave.</i>        |
| 2. Servus est bonus.  | <i>The slave is good.</i>   |
| 3. Servi boni.        | <i>Good slaves.</i>         |
| 4. Servi sunt boni.   | <i>The slaves are good.</i> |
| 5. Servis bonis.      | <i>For good slaves.</i>     |
| 6. Rēgīna est bona.   | <i>The queen is good.</i>   |
| 7. Oppida sunt magna. | <i>The towns are large.</i> |

In these examples, observe that the adjectives are all in the same *Gender, Number, and Case* as their nouns. This usage is expressed in the following

**RULE XXXIV.—Agreement of Adjectives.**

An adjective agrees with its noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE.

## 75. VOCABULARY.

aureus, aurea, aureum,	golden, of gold.	
beātus, beāta, beātum,	happy.	<i>beat-itude.</i>
bonus, bona, bonum,	good.	
clārus, clāra, clārum,	illustrious, famous.	
doctus, docta, doctum,	learned.	<i>doctor.</i>
fīdus, fīda, fīdum.	faithful, trustworthy.	<i>fid-elity.</i>
ignāvus, ignāva, ignāvum,	indolent, idle, lazy.	
longus, longa, longum,	long.	<i>long.</i>
māgnificus, māgnifica,		
māgnificum,	magnificent, splendid.	<i>magnific-ent.</i>
māgnus, magna, māgnum,	great, large.	<i>magn-itude.</i>
meus, mea, meum, <sup>1</sup>	my, mine.	
multus, multa, multum,	much, many.	<i>mult-itude.</i>
tuus, tua, tuum,	your, yours, thy, thine.	

## 76. Translate into English.

1. Quis tuum amicum laudat?
2. Rēgīna bona meum amicum laudat.
3. Quis est tuus amicus? Mārcus est meus amicus.
4. Nōn-ne amīcī tuī sunt fidī? Meī amīcī semper sunt fidī.

<sup>1</sup> The Vocative Singular masculine is *mī*.

5. Tullia multōs amīcōs habet.
6. Quis epistulās exspectat? Iūlia epistulam longam exspectat.
7. Epistula longa medicum doctum dēlectat.
8. Nōn-ne tua corōna est aurea? Mea corōna nōn est aurea.
9. Nōn-ne medicus est clārus? Est clārus.
10. Medicus doctus praemium māgnūm exspectat.
11. Nōn-ne oppidum est māgnūm? Est māgnūm.
12. Nōn-ne templa sunt māgnifica? Sunt māgnifica.
13. Quis est beātus? Fīlia poētae est beāta.
14. Quis est ignāvus? Meus servus est ignāvus.
15. Bonae puellae semper sunt beātae.

**77.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are your servants faithful? My servants are faithful.
2. Are not the towns large? They are large.
3. Have not the towns large temples? The large towns have magnificent temples.
4. Who is a good master? Titus, the farmer, is a good master.
5. Who is expecting a large present? Julia is expecting large presents.
6. Your friend, the poet, is expecting a large reward.
7. Large rewards are often expected.
8. The farmer gives many pears to your servants.
9. In the large towns are many statues.
10. Where are the large temples? They are in the large towns.
11. Are not your servants idle? They are often idle.
12. The inhabitants of the town are always praising the good queen.
13. The good queen gives many presents to the inhabitants of the town.

## LESSON XII.

SECOND DECLENSION.—WORDS IN **ER** AND **IR**.—  
PREPOSITIONS.

**78.** Nouns in **er** and **ir** of the second declension are declined as follows :

Puer, <i>boy.</i>	Vir, <i>man.</i>	Ager, <i>field.</i>	
SINGULAR.			CASE-ENDINGS.
puer	vir <sup>1</sup>	ager	
puer <b>ī</b>	vir <b>ī</b>	agr <b>ī</b>	<b>ī</b>
puer <b>ō</b>	vir <b>ō</b>	agr <b>ō</b>	<b>ō</b>
puer <b>um</b>	vir <b>um</b>	agr <b>um</b>	<b>um</b>
puer	vir	ager	
puer <b>ō</b>	vir <b>ō</b>	agr <b>ō</b>	<b>ō</b>
PLURAL.			
puer <b>ī</b>	vir <b>ī</b>	agr <b>ī</b>	<b>ī</b>
puer <b>ōrum</b>	vir <b>ōrum</b>	agr <b>ōrum</b>	<b>ōrum</b>
puer <b>īs</b>	vir <b>īs</b>	agr <b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>
puer <b>ōs</b>	vir <b>ōs</b>	agr <b>ōs</b>	<b>ōs</b>
puer <b>ī</b>	vir <b>ī</b>	agr <b>ī</b>	<b>ī</b>
puer <b>īs</b>	vir <b>īs</b>	agr <b>īs</b>	<b>īs</b>

**Note 1.**—Observe that the case-endings are the same as in nouns in *us* (55), but that the endings *us* and *e* are wanting in the nominative and vocative singular.

**Note 2.**—Note carefully the difference in declension between *puer* and *ager*. Most nouns in *er* are declined like *ager*.

**79.** As some masculine nouns of this declension end in **er**, so some adjectives have a masculine form in **er**, while the feminine ends in **a** and the neuter in **um**, as in *bonus* : **liber, libera, liberum, free.**

Decline in full, **liber** like *puer* ; **libera** like *mēnsa* ; and **liberum** like *templum*. The declension will be given in full on page 47.

Decline together **puer liber, a free boy** ; **rēgīna misera, the unhappy queen** ; and **oppidum liberum, a free town**.

<sup>1</sup> For this lesson learn *puer* and *vir*, and observe wherein they differ in declension from *dominus*.

**80.** Examine the following sentences :

1. Rēgīna **ā** (ab) poētā laudātur. *The queen is praised BY the poet.*
2. Rēgīna **in** hortō est. *The queen is IN the garden.*
3. Rēgīna **cum** Tulliā est. *The queen is WITH Tullia.*

Observe that **ā**, **ab**, **in**, and **cum** are prepositions, and that they are here all followed by the ablative. Prepositions are often thus used with the ablative, very much as prepositions are used with the objective case in English. Observe also—

1. That the ablative with **ā** or **ab** answers the question, BY WHOM?
2. That the ablative with **in** answers the question, WHERE? IN WHAT PLACE?
3. That the ablative with **cum** answers the question, WITH WHOM?

**81.** VOCABULARY.

gener, generī, <i>m.</i>	son-in-law.	
puer, puerī, <i>m.</i>	boy.	<i>puer-ile.</i>
socer, socerī, <i>m.</i>	father-in-law.	
vir, virī, <i>m.</i>	man, true man, hero.	<i>vir-ile.</i>

## ADJECTIVES.

asper, aspera, asperum,	rough, hard, harsh.	<i>asper-ity.</i>
liber, libera, liberum,	free.	<i>liber-ty.</i>
miser, misera, miserum,	wretched, unhappy.	<i>miser-y.</i>
tener, tenera, tenerum,	tender, young, delicate.	<i>tender.</i>
avus, avī, <i>m.</i>	grandfather.	
lūcus, lūcī, <i>m.</i>	grove, sacred grove.	

## PREPOSITIONS.

<b>ā</b> , or <b>ab</b> , <i>with ablative.</i>	by, from.
<b>cum</b> , <i>with ablative.</i>	with.

**82.** Translate into English.

1. Ubī est puer miser? Puer miser in hortō est?
2. Puerī nōn saepe sunt miserī.
3. Rēgīna puerum miserum amat. Puer miser ā rēgīnā amātur.
4. Puerī miserī rēgīnam amant. Rēgīna ā puerīs miserīs amātur.
5. Ubī est vir miser? Vir miser in lūcō est.
6. Socer virī miserī est nauta.

7. Nōn-ne Mārcus socerum laudat? Socerum semper laudat.
8. Generī nōn semper ā socerīs laudantur.
9. Nōn-ne generī Mārcī sunt miserī? Nōn sunt miserī.
10. Meī amīcī generōs Mārcī laudant.
11. Tuī servī puerō miserō viam mōnstrant.
12. Nōn-ne poēta generum laudat? Poēta ā generō laudātur.
13. Ubī sunt generī Mārcī? In hortō ambulant.
14. Ubī sunt puerī? In hortō cum avō tuō sunt. Tuus avus ā puerīs amātur.
15. Ubī sunt puellae? In lūcō cum Iūliā sunt.
16. Nōn-ne oppidum est liberum? Est liberum. Multa oppida sunt libera.
17. Ubī est Titus? Ambulat cum amīcō poētā.

**83.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do not the boys expect presents? They always expect presents.
2. Who gives presents to the boys? Tullia gives many presents to boys.
3. Does not Tullia love boys? She loves boys.
4. The boys praise the sailor. The sailor is praised by the boys.
5. The daughter of the poet loves her father-in-law.
6. The daughters of Titus are loved by their father-in-law.
7. Is not the road rough? Many roads are rough.
8. The queen always avoids rough roads.
9. Rough roads are not always avoided by farmers.
10. Is not your daughter delicate? My daughters are delicate.
11. Is not the man unhappy? Men are often unhappy.
12. Titus is always praising his son-in-law.
13. Titus is always praised by his son-in-law.
14. Where is your daughter? She is with her father-in-law in the garden.
15. The queen gives many presents to her sons-in-law.

## LESSON XIII.

## SECOND DECLENSION.—WORDS IN ER.—VOCATIVE.

**Note.**—Learn the declension of **ager**, *field* (78), and observe wherein it differs from *puer*.

**84.** As some masculine nouns in **er** are declined like *ager*, so in some adjectives the masculine in **er** is declined in the same way, while the feminine in **a** is declined like *libera*, *bona*, and *mēnsa*, and the neuter in **um** like *liberum*, *bonum*, and *templum*: **ruber**, **rubra**, **rubrum**, *red*.

Decline in full, **ruber** like *ager*; **rubra** like *mēnsa*; and **rubrum** like *templum*. The declension will be given in full on page 49.

Decline together **ager pulcher**, *a beautiful field*; **rēgīna pulchra**, *the beautiful queen*; and **templum pulchrum**, *the beautiful temple*.

**85.** Examine the following sentences :

1. Epistula tua, **Tite**, rēgīnam dē- *Your letter, TITUS, delights the*  
lectat. *queen.*
2. Epistula tua, **Iūlia**, rēgīnam *Your letter, JULIA, delights the*  
dēlectat. *queen.*

In these examples observe that *Tite* and *Iūlia* designate THE PERSON ADDRESSED, and that they are both in the VOCATIVE. Hence we have the following rule :

**RULE IV.—Case of Address.**

The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative.

**86. VOCABULARY.**

<b>ager</b> , agrī, <i>m.</i>	field.	<i>acre.</i>
<b>liber</b> , librī, <i>m.</i>	book.	<i>libr-ary.</i>
<b>magister</b> , magistrī, <i>m.</i>	master, teacher.	<i>master.</i>

## ADJECTIVES.

<b>aeger</b> , aegra, aegrum,	sick, ill.	
<b>pulcher</b> , pulchra, pulchrum,	beautiful.	
<b>discipulus</b> , discipulī, <i>m.</i>	learner, pupil, scholar.	<i>disciple.</i>
<b>equus</b> , equī, <i>m.</i>	horse.	<i>equine.</i>

## PROPER NAMES.

<b>Carolus, Carolī, m.</b>	Charles.
<b>Frederīcus, Frederīcī, m.</b>	Frederick.
<b>Homērus, Homērī, m.</b>	Homer, the famous Greek poet.

## VERBS.

<b>timet,</b> (he) fears;	<b>timētur,</b> (he) is feared.	<i>timid.</i>
<b>timent,</b> (they) fear;	<b>timentur,</b> (they) are feared.	

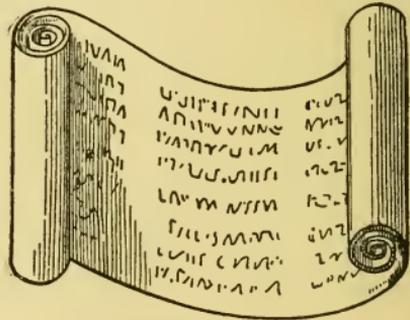
## 87. SYNONYMS.

**Dominus, magister;** *master, teacher.*

- Dominus;** MASTER, OWNER, PROPRIETOR—as of a house, an estate, slaves, etc. See 55.
- Magister;** MASTER, DIRECTOR, TEACHER—especially the master or director of a school, a master of arts or of one or more departments of study, a teacher.

88. *Translate into English.*

- Nōn-ne est liber pulcher?  
Liber est pulcher.
- Librī, Carole, sunt pulchrī.
- Ubi sunt librī pulchrī,  
Iūlia? Carolus librōs pul-  
chrōs habet.
- Ubi, Carole, est magister?  
Magister in hortō ambulat.
- Nōn-ne magister est aeger? Est aeger.
- Magistrī nōn saepe sunt aegrī.
- Discipulī magistrō librum pulchrum dant.
- Nōn-ne pulchrum dōnum magistrum dēlectat? Magis-  
trum dēlectat.
- Pulchra dōna magistrōs semper dēlectant.
- Nōn-ne discipulī magistrum laudant? Magistrum sem-  
per laudant.
- Magister ā bonīs discipulis semper laudātur.



*Roman Book.*<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> From a Pompeian painting. Roman books were anciently in the form of papyrus rolls.

12. Nōn-ne lūdī magistrum dēlectant? Lūdī puerōrum semper magistrōs dēlectant.
13. Tua epistula, Frederīce, puerum miserum dēlectat.
14. Nōn-ne servī dominum timent? Dominum timent.
15. Rēgīna templum māgnificum laudat.
16. Templum māgnificum ā rēgīnā laudātur.
17. Titus agricola multōs equōs semper habet.

**89.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who has the book? The teacher has the beautiful book.
2. Teachers always have beautiful books.
3. Marcus, your daughter loves beautiful books.
4. Titus, where are your daughters? They are now ill.
5. Are your daughters often ill? They are not often ill.
6. Are not the books beautiful? The books of the teacher are beautiful.
7. Titus, the farmer, has beautiful fields.
8. Beautiful fields are often praised by farmers.
9. Your diligence, Charles, is praised by the teachers.
10. Your letters, Julia, are beautiful.
11. The daughters of the queen are beautiful.
12. Homer, the famous poet, praises the beautiful daughters of the queen.
13. The beautiful daughters of the queen are often praised by the poet.
14. Where is Charles? He is in the garden with his teacher.
15. Many slaves fear their masters.
16. The boys are often praised by their teachers.



*Head of Homer.*

## LESSON XIV.

## SECOND DECLENSION.—COMPARATIVE VIEW.

90. Compare the several examples in the following table.

*Comparative View of the Second Declension.*

Dominus, <i>master.</i>	Puer, <i>boy.</i>	Ager, <i>field.</i>	Templum, <i>temple</i>
SINGULAR.			
Nom. domin <b>us</b>	puer	ager	templ <b>um</b>
Gen. domin <b>ī</b>	puer <b>ī</b>	agr <b>ī</b>	templ <b>ī</b>
Dat. domin <b>ō</b>	puer <b>ō</b>	agr <b>ō</b>	templ <b>ō</b>
Acc. domin <b>um</b>	puer <b>um</b>	agr <b>um</b>	templ <b>um</b>
Voc. domine	puer	ager	templ <b>um</b>
Abl. domin <b>ō</b>	puer <b>ō</b>	agr <b>ō</b>	templ <b>ō</b>
PLURAL.			
Nom. domin <b>ī</b>	puer <b>ī</b>	agr <b>ī</b>	templ <b>a</b>
Gen. domin <b>ōrum</b>	puer <b>ōrum</b>	agr <b>ōrum</b>	templ <b>ōrum</b>
Dat. domin <b>īs</b>	puer <b>īs</b>	agr <b>īs</b>	templ <b>īs</b>
Acc. domin <b>ōs</b>	puer <b>ōs</b>	agr <b>ōs</b>	templ <b>a</b>
Voc. domin <b>ī</b>	puer <b>ī</b>	agr <b>ī</b>	templ <b>a</b>
Abl. domin <b>īs</b>	puer <b>īs</b>	agr <b>īs</b>	templ <b>īs</b>

1. STEM.—In nouns of the second declension, the stem ends in *o*.<sup>1</sup>

2. Proper names in *ius* generally contract *ie* in the Vocative Singular into *ī* without change of accent: **Mercūrī** for **Mercúrie**, *Mercury*. **Filius**, *son*, also contracts *filie* into **filī**.

3. LOCATIVE.—Names of towns, and a few other words, have a Locative (40, 4), ending in *ī* in the singular and in *īs* in the plural; **Corinthī**, *at Corinth*; **domī**, *at home*; **Delphis**, *at Delphi*.

91. In the last three lessons observe carefully the endings of the adjectives, and compare them with the endings of the nouns with which these adjectives agree. You will find them absolutely identical, but an adjective of one ending may agree with a noun of a different ending. Thus,

<sup>1</sup> In the PARADIGMS the stems are *domino*, *puero*, *agro*, and *templo*, but the final *o* becomes *u* in the endings *us* and *um*, and *e* in *domine*. It disappears by contraction in the endings *a*, *ī*, and *īs*, and is dropped in the forms *puer* and *ager*.



1. TEMPLE OF ZEUS AT OLYMPIA.  
2. TEMPLE OF JUPITER CAPITOLINUS AT ROME.



any masculine adjective, whether it ends in **us** or **er**, may agree with any masculine noun, whether it ends in **us**, **er**, or **a**: **bonus servus**, a good servant; **miser servus**, an unhappy servant; **bonus puer**, a good boy; **pulcher puer**, a beautiful boy; **bonus agricola**, a good farmer; **miser agricola**, an unhappy farmer.

Decline together **puer bonus**, a good boy; **medicus miser**, an unhappy physician; **clārus poēta**, the renowned poet.

## 92. VOCABULARY.

<b>niger, nigra, nigrum,</b>	black, dark.	
<b>noster, nostra, nostrum,</b>	our, ours.	
<b>ruber, rubra, rubrum,</b>	red.	<i>red.</i>
<b>vester, vestra, vestrum,</b>	your, yours.	
<b>Graecus, Graeca, Graecum,</b>	Greek.	<i>Greek.</i>
<b>Latīnus, Latīna, Latīnum,</b>	Latin.	<i>Latin.</i>
<b>lātus, lāta, lātum,</b>	broad, wide.	
<b>novus, nova, novum,</b>	new.	<i>new.</i>
<b>fossa, ae, f.</b>	ditch, trench.	
<b>lingua, ae, f.</b>	tongue, language.	<i>lingua-l.</i>

## VERB.

<b>erat,</b>	(he, she, it) was.
<b>erant,</b>	(they) were.

## CONJUNCTION.

<b>sed,</b>	but.
-------------	------

## 93. Translate into English.

1. Quis, meī amīcī, est vester medicus? Albertus est noster medicus. Est medicus clārus.
2. Phīdippus est medicus doctus.
3. Nōn-ne est Phīdippus servus? Est servus doctus. Phīdippus est medicus clārus et servus doctus.
4. Quis erat Homērus? Homērus erat poēta clārus.
5. Magistrī nostrī Homērum poētā clārum saepe laudant.

6. Graecia est patria poētārum clārōrum.
7. Nōn-ne est Ītalia vestra patria? Ītalia est nostra patria.
8. In Ītaliā et in Graeciā sunt multī poētae.
9. Noster magister linguam Latīnam amat.
10. Nōn-ne vester magister linguam Graecam laudat? Nostrī magistrī linguam Graecam saepe laudant.
11. Nōn-ne puerī sunt ignāvī? Nostrī puerī nōn sunt ignāvī.
12. Mārcus nōn est medicus doctus, sed poēta clārus.
13. Nōn-ne fossae sunt lātae? Nōn sunt lātae.
14. Carolus librum novum habet.
15. Nōn-ne liber novus Carolum dēlectat? Librī novī puerōs semper dēlectant.

**94.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Does not our teacher love the boys? He loves good boys.
2. Boys, are not your books new? Our books, Charles, are new and beautiful.
3. Julia is a beautiful girl. She is the daughter of a famous poet.
4. Where is our friend Charles? He is with Frederick in the grove.
5. Does not Charles love books? He loves good books. Good boys always love good books.
6. Good stories always delight boys and girls.
7. Boys and girls are always delighted with good stories.
8. My friends, are not the horses of your physician black? Our physician is famous; he has many horses.
9. The farmer's horses are red.
10. Homer, the famous poet, is often praised by teachers.
11. Our teacher often praises Greece.
12. Greece, the native land of poets, is often praised by our teachers.

LESSON XV.

DIALOGUE.—QUESTIONS.

95. Examine the following sentences :

- |                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1. Nōn ambulat.            | <i>He is not walking.</i>               |
| 2. <b>Nōn-ne</b> ambulat ? | <i>Is he NOT walking ?</i> <sup>1</sup> |
| 3. Ambulat.                | <i>He is walking.</i>                   |
| 4. Ambulat- <b>ne</b> ?    | <i>Is he WALKING ?</i> <sup>2</sup>     |
| 5. <b>Num</b> ambulat ?    | <i>Is he walking ?</i>                  |

In these sentences observe—

1) That the negative sentence, *nōn ambulat*, is converted into a QUESTION by simply appending **-ne** to *nōn*, making **nōn-ne**: *nōn-ne ambulat ?* is he NOT walking ?<sup>1</sup>

2) That the affirmative sentence, *ambulat*, is converted into a QUESTION in two different ways: (1) by appending **-ne** to *ambulat*, just as in the negative sentence it is appended to *nōn*: *ambulat-ne ?* is he WALKING ? and (2) by placing **num** before *ambulat*: *num ambulat ?* is he walking ?

**Note 1.**—In these three questions observe carefully the force of the different particles, **-ne**, **nōn-ne**, and **num**. Practically in translation their force may be shown as follows:

- 1) In rendering **nōn-ne** emphasize NOT: *is he NOT walking ?*
- 2) In rendering **-ne** emphasize the participle or the main part of the verb: *is he WALKING, or does he WALK ?*<sup>2</sup>
- 3) In rendering **num** emphasize the auxiliary, IS, DOES, etc.: *is he walk-  
ing, or DOES he walk ?*<sup>3</sup>

96. In the following sentences observe carefully the use and meaning of **suōs**, *his*, *her*, *their*.

- |                                     |                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Carolus <b>suōs</b> amīcōs amat. | <i>Charles loves HIS friends.</i>   |
| 2. Iūlia <b>suōs</b> amīcōs amat.   | <i>Julia loves HER friends.</i>     |
| 3. Puerī <b>suōs</b> amīcōs amant.  | <i>The boys love THEIR friends.</i> |

Observe that, in each of these three sentences, **suōs** refers to the SUBJECT: in the first, to the SUBJECT, **Carolus**, and so means *his*; in

<sup>1</sup> Remember that you have already had abundant illustrations of questions with *nōn-ne*.

<sup>2</sup> Observe that *-ne* has the same effect upon *ambulat* as upon *nōn*, i. e. it changes it to a question.

<sup>3</sup> It may be added that *-ne* simply converts a statement into a question, that *nōn-ne* expects the answer YES, and that *num* expects the answer NO.

the second, to **Iūlia**, and so means *her*; and in the third, to **pueri**, and so means *their*.<sup>1</sup>

### 97. VOCABULARY.

<b>albus, alba, album,</b>	white.	
<b>mē,</b>	me.	<i>me.</i>
<b>-ne</b> (enclitic), <sup>2</sup>	for meaning, see 95, 4.	
<b>num,</b> <sup>2</sup>	for meaning, see 95, 5.	
<b>suus, sua, suum,</b>	his, her, their; see 96.	
<b>valdē,</b>	greatly, very, very much, exceedingly.	
<b>valē,</b>	farewell, good-bye.	<i>vale-dictory.</i>
<b>equitat,</b>	(he, she, it) rides.	
<b>equitant,</b>	(they) ride.	

### 98. COLLOQUIUM.

RICARDUS ET HENRĪCUS, CON-DISCIPULĪ.

Ricardus.—Carolus, amīcus tuus, saepe in agrīs ambulat.

Amat-ne agrōs?

Henrīcus.—Multōs in agrīs habet equōs et equīs<sup>3</sup> valdē dēlectātur.

R.—Mōnstrat-ne equōs suīs amīcīs?

H.—Mōnstrat equōs amīcīs suīs, sed aliīs<sup>4</sup> nōn mōnstrat.

R.—Est-ne Mārcus Carolī amīcus?

H.—Mārcus ā Carolō nōn laudātur.

R.—Num Carolus Mārcō equōs mōnstrat?

H.—Mārcō Carolus nōn mōnstrat equōs suōs.

R.—Nigrī-ne sunt equī?

H.—Sunt nigrī et pulchrī.

<sup>1</sup> Observe also that *suōs*, like any other adjective, agrees with its noun *amīcōs*, and that its form is not affected by the gender or number of the subject to which it refers, but that its meaning is determined in part by the gender and number of that subject. If the subject is masculine and singular, *suus* means *his*, as in the first example; if the subject is feminine and singular, *suus* means *her*, as in the second example; if the subject is plural, *suus* means *their*, as in the third example.

<sup>2</sup> *Num* and *-ne* are interrogative particles, used in questions; *-ne* is an enclitic, i. e., it is always appended to some other word: *ambulat-ne, nōn-ne*.

<sup>3</sup> *Equīs*, with horses; see 114, ABLATIVE OF MEANS.

<sup>4</sup> *Aliīs*, to others; used substantively. For declension, see 378.

R.—Habet-ne Titus agricola multōs equōs?

H.—Habet multōs et<sup>1</sup> rubrōs equōs.

R.—Nōn-ne equī tuī sunt albī?

H.—Sunt albī.

R.—Equitat-ne Carolus in agrīs?

H.—Saepe equitat cum Phīdippō, servō suō.

R.—Nōn-ne niger est Phīdippus?

H.—Est niger, sed valdē amat dominum suum.

R.—Valē, mī<sup>2</sup> amīce; magister mē exspectat.

**99.** *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*<sup>3</sup>

1. Ubī ambulat Carolus? 2.

Ubī habet Carolus equōs? 3.

Habet-ne pulchrōs equōs? 4.

Nōn-ne Carolus Mārcum laudat?

5. Habet-ne Carolus servam? 6. Niger-ne est servus?



*Fortune, with rudder, diadem, and horn of plenty.*

## LESSON XVI.

*FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.—ADJECTIVES.—DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.*

**100.** Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

<sup>1</sup> Omit *et* in translating. Here the Latin requires a connective, but the English does not. **LATIN IDIOM:** *many and red*; **ENGLISH IDIOM:** *many red*. See 119. <sup>2</sup> **MI**, vocative singular masculine of **meus**, *my*.

<sup>3</sup> For the form and substance of the answer, see the colloquium. Put each answer in the form of a sentence. Thus: *Carolus in agrīs ambulat*.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS: A AND O STEMS.<sup>1</sup>101. Bonus, bona, bonum, *good*.<sup>2</sup>

		SINGULAR.		
	MASC.		FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus		bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī		bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō		bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum		bonam	bonum
<i>Voc.</i>	bone		bona	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō		bonā	bonō
		PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	bonī		bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum		bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonīs		bonīs	bonīs
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs		bonās	bona
<i>Voc.</i>	bonī		bonae	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonīs		bonīs	bonīs

102. Liber, libera, liberum, *free*.<sup>3</sup>

		SINGULAR.		
	MASC.		FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	liber		libera	liberum
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī		liberae	liberī
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō		liberae	liberō
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum		liberam	liberum
<i>Voc.</i>	liber		libera	liberum
<i>Abl.</i>	liberō		liberā	liberō
		PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	liberī		liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberōrum		liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberīs		liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberōs		liberās	libera
<i>Voc.</i>	liberī		liberae	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberīs		liberīs	liberīs

<sup>1</sup> These paradigms of adjectives, although precisely like those of nouns, are placed here together for review and for reference.

<sup>2</sup> **Bonus** is declined like *dominus* of Decl. II (55), **bona** like *mēnsa* of Decl. I (40), and **bonum** like *templum* of Decl. II (55). The stems are *bono* in the Masc. and the Neut., and *bonā* in the Fem.

<sup>3</sup> **Liber** is declined like *puer*; **libera** like *bona*; **liberum** like *bonum*.

103. *Ruber, rubra, rubrum, red.*<sup>1</sup>

SINGULAR.			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ruber</i>	<i>rubra</i>	<i>rubrum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rubrī</i>	<i>rubrae</i>	<i>rubrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rubrō</i>	<i>rubrae</i>	<i>rubrō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rubrum</i>	<i>rubram</i>	<i>rubrum</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ruber</i>	<i>rubra</i>	<i>rubrum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rubrō</i>	<i>rubrā</i>	<i>rubrō</i>
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rubrī</i>	<i>rubrae</i>	<i>rubra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rubrōrum</i>	<i>rubrārum</i>	<i>rubrōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rubrīs</i>	<i>rubrīs</i>	<i>rubrīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rubrōs</i>	<i>rubrās</i>	<i>rubra</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>rubrī</i>	<i>rubrae</i>	<i>rubra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rubrīs</i>	<i>rubrīs</i>	<i>rubrīs</i>

104. Examine the following sentences :

1. *Patria Mārcō cāra est. The native land is dear TO MARCUS.*
2. *Dōnum puerō grātum est. The gift is acceptable TO THE BOY.*

In these examples observe that **Mārcō**, TO MARCUS, and **puerō**, TO THE BOY, limit the adjectives, *cāra* and *grātum*, by answering the questions, TO WHOM dear? TO WHOM acceptable? Dear TO MARCUS, acceptable TO THE BOY. A Dative thus limiting an adjective by answering the question TO OR FOR WHOM? or TO OR FOR WHICH? is called an INDIRECT OBJECT; see INDIRECT OBJECT after verbs, 59. For the Dative after adjectives, we have the following rule :

**RULE XIV.—Dative with Adjectives.**

Many adjectives take an INDIRECT OBJECT in the DATIVE.

<sup>1</sup> *Ruber* is declined like *ager*, *rubra* like *bona*, *rubrum* like *bonum*. Most adjectives in *er* of this declension are declined like *ruber*. For adjectives declined like *liber*, see 81.

Note now the difference in declension between *liber* and *ruber*, and observe—

1. That the stem of *liber* is *libero*, and that accordingly the *e* before *r* is carried through all the cases and genders.

2. That the stem of *ruber* is not *rubero* but *rubro*, and that accordingly the *e* before *r* appears only in the nominative and vocative singular masculine, where it has been developed by the *r*, as *rubr* could not be easily pronounced.

## LESSON XVII.

## ADJECTIVES.—DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

## 105. VOCABULARY.

altus, alta, altum,	high, lofty, deep.	<i>alt-itude.</i>
America, ae, f.	America.	<i>America.</i>
Americānus, Americāna,		
Americānum,	American.	<i>American.</i>
Americānī, Americā-		
nōrum, <i>m., plur.</i>	the Americans.	
mūrus, ī, <i>m.</i>	wall.	<i>mur-al.</i>
verbum, ī, <i>n.</i>	word, verb.	<i>verb.</i>

## ADJECTIVES THAT TAKE THE DATIVE.

cārus, cāra, cārum,	dear, precious.	
grātus, grāta, grātum,	acceptable, welcome.	<i>grate-ful.</i>
iūcundus, iūcunda, iūcundum,	pleasing, agreeable, de- lightful, interesting.	
nōtus, nōta, nōtum,	known.	<i>know.</i>

## ADVERBS.

hodiē,	to-day.
interdum,	sometimes.
iam,	already.
nunquam,	never.

## 106. SYNONYMS.

I. Grātus, iūcundus ; *acceptable, agreeable.*

1. Grātus ; ACCEPTABLE, WELCOME—especially because of value or worth.
2. Iūcundus ; PLEASING, AGREEABLE, DELIGHTFUL, INTERESTING.

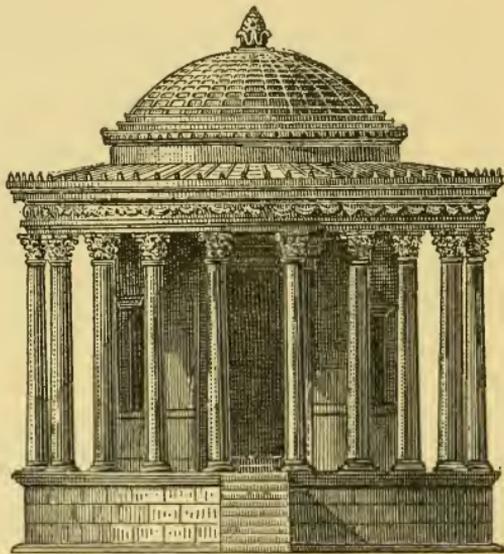
**Note.**—*Grātus* implies that the object to which it is applied is acceptable because of its value, whether agreeable or not ; *iūcundus*, that it is in itself agreeable.

II. Nunc, iam ; *now, already.*

1. Nunc ; NOW, AT THE PRESENT TIME.
2. Iam ; ALREADY, BY THIS TIME, ERE NOW.

107. *Translate into English.*

1. Est-ne Ītalia poētīs cāra? Multīs poētīs est cāra.
2. Graecia, patria poētārum clārōrum, nostrō magistrō cāra est.
3. Tua epistula, Iūlia, puellis miserīs erat grāta.
4. Nōn-ne pericula nautīs interdum sunt grāta? Nunquam sunt iūcunda.
5. Multae fābulae iam sunt discipulīs nostrīs nōtae.
6. Magistrīs nostrīs fābulae poētārum Graecōrum sunt nōtae.
7. Num verba dominī servīs semper sunt iūcunda? Servīs nōn semper sunt iūcunda.
8. Quis magistrō semper est cārus? Discipulī bonī magistrīs semper sunt cārī.
9. Ubī sunt templa pulchra? In oppidō sunt multa templa.
10. Altus-ne est mūrus? Nōn est altus.
11. Est-ne fossa alta? Fossa nōn est alta, sed lāta.
12. Ubī est Carolus? Hodiē in oppidō est.
13. Est-ne vester medicus Americānus? Noster medicus est Americānus. Multī Americānī sunt clārī medicī.



*Temple of Vesta at Tivoli.*

108. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Is not Greece dear to our poet? Greece is dear to many poets.
2. Boys, is not America your native land? It is our native land.

3. America, our native land, is dear to the boys.
4. Is not America the native land of a famous poet? It is the native land of many poets.
5. Your gifts, Tullia, were acceptable to the boys.
6. Was not the gift acceptable to your friend? It was acceptable. Beautiful gifts are always acceptable to friends.
7. Girls, your gifts were acceptable to your grandfather.
8. The words of the teacher were agreeable to the pupils.
9. Beautiful books are always acceptable to teachers.
10. Were the pears acceptable to the boy? Pears and apples are always acceptable to boys and girls.
11. The diligence of the pupils is pleasing to the teachers.
12. Are not stories pleasing to the pupils? Good stories are always pleasing to our pupils.

## LESSON XVIII.

## A SHORT STORY.

## 109. VOCABULARY.

aqua, ae, f.	water.	aqua-tic.
fuga, ae, f.	flight.	fug-itive.
taurus, ī, m.	bull, bullock.	

## VERBS.

īnstat,	(he) is at hand, pursues.	instant.
īntrat,	(he) enters.	enter.
līberat,	(he) liberates, frees.	liberate.
mandat,	(he) commits, intrusts.	
spectat,	(he) looks at, watches.	specta-cle.
tentat,	(he) tries, attempts.	tenta-tive.
terminat,	(he) bounds, limits.	terminate.
videt,	(he) sees.	pro-vide.
forte, adv.	by chance, accidentally.	
sē (accusative),	himself.	

## 110. STORY ABOUT AN IDLE BOY.

Albertus, ignāvus puer, linguam Latīnam nōn amat. Ā magistrō nōn laudātur; ā discipulīs nōn amātur. Magistrum suum saepe vītāt et in agrīs ambulat. Est nunc in agrīs avī. Māgnus taurus iam puerum videt. Albertus fugam tentat; taurus īnstat.

Forte lāta fossa agrum terminat. Miser puer sē aquae mandat.<sup>1</sup> Aqua nōn est alta,<sup>2</sup> sed taurus perīculum aquae timet. Spectat<sup>3</sup> Albertum, sed agricola agrum forte intrat et puerum miserum liberat.

111. *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Num Albertus est bonus puer? 2. Num magister Albertum laudat? 3. Amant-ne discipulī Albertum? 4. Ubī saepe ambulat Albertus? 5. Nōn-ne Albertus māgnum taurum timet? 6. Num lingua Latīna ab Albertō saepe laudātur? 7. Num ignāvī discipulī ā magistrīs saepe laudantur?

## LESSON XIX.

THIRD DECLENSION.—STEMS IN **L**, **R**, **N**.

112. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:

- I. Nouns whose stem ends in a *Consonant*.<sup>4</sup>
- II. Nouns whose stem ends in **I**.

<sup>1</sup> *Sē aquae mandat*, commits himself to the water, i. e., throws himself into the water. *Sē*, accusative, direct object of *mandat*; *aquae*, dative, indirect object of *mandat*. See 59.

<sup>2</sup> What is the meaning of *alta* in this sentence? What other meaning has this word? See 105.

<sup>3</sup> Note the difference in meaning between *videt* and *spectat*.

<sup>4</sup> The stems of all other nouns in Latin end in a vowel.

## CLASS I.—CONSONANT STEMS.

113. STEMS IN **L, R, N.**

Cōnsul, m., <i>consul.</i>	Pāstor, m., <i>shepherd.</i>	Passer, m., <i>sparrow.</i>	Pater, m., <i>father.</i>
SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i> cōnsul	pāstor	passer	pater
<i>Gen.</i> cōnsul <b>is</b>	pāstō <b>ris</b>	passer <b>is</b>	patr <b>is</b>
<i>Dat.</i> cōnsul <b>ī</b>	pāstō <b>ī</b>	passer <b>ī</b>	patr <b>ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i> cōnsul <b>em</b>	pāstō <b>em</b>	passer <b>em</b>	patr <b>em</b>
<i>Voc.</i> cōnsul	pāstor	passer	pater
<i>Abl.</i> cōnsule	pāstō <b>e</b>	passer <b>e</b>	patr <b>e</b>
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i> cōnsul <b>ēs</b>	pāstō <b>ēs</b>	passer <b>ēs</b>	patr <b>ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i> cōnsul <b>um</b>	pāstō <b>rum</b>	passer <b>um</b>	patr <b>um</b>
<i>Dat.</i> cōnsul <b>ibus</b>	pāstō <b>ribus</b>	passer <b>ibus</b>	patr <b>ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i> cōnsul <b>ēs</b>	pāstō <b>rēz</b>	passer <b>ēs</b>	patr <b>ēs</b>
<i>Voc.</i> cōnsul <b>ēs</b>	pāstō <b>rēs</b>	passer <b>ēs</b>	patr <b>ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i> cōnsul <b>ibus</b>	pāstō <b>ribus</b>	passer <b>ibus</b>	patr <b>ibus</b>

Leō, m., <i>lion.</i>	Virgō, f., <i>maiden.</i>	Carmen, n., <i>song, poem.</i>	CASE-SUFFIXES.	
			M. and F.	Neut.
SINGULAR.				
<i>Nom.</i> leō	virgō	carmen	—	— <sup>1</sup>
<i>Gen.</i> leō <b>nis</b>	virgin <b>is</b>	carmin <b>is</b>	<b>is</b>	<b>is</b>
<i>Dat.</i> leō <b>nī</b>	virgin <b>ī</b>	carmin <b>ī</b>	<b>ī</b>	<b>ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i> leō <b>nem</b>	virgin <b>em</b>	carmen	<b>em</b>	— <sup>1</sup>
<i>Voc.</i> leō	virgō	carmen	—	—
<i>Abl.</i> leō <b>ne</b>	virgin <b>e</b>	carmin <b>e</b>	<b>e</b>	<b>e</b>
PLURAL.				
<i>Nom.</i> leō <b>nēs</b>	virgin <b>ēs</b>	carmin <b>a</b>	<b>ēs</b>	<b>a</b>
<i>Gen.</i> leō <b>num</b>	virgin <b>um</b>	carmin <b>um</b>	<b>um</b>	<b>um</b>
<i>Dat.</i> leō <b>nibus</b>	virgin <b>ibus</b>	carmin <b>ibus</b>	<b>ibus</b>	<b>ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i> leō <b>nēs</b>	virgin <b>ēs</b>	carmin <b>a</b>	<b>ēs</b>	<b>a</b>
<i>Voc.</i> leō <b>nēs</b>	virgin <b>ēs</b>	carmin <b>a</b>	<b>ēs</b>	<b>a</b>
<i>Abl.</i> leō <b>nibus</b>	virgin <b>ibus</b>	carmin <b>ibus</b>	<b>ibus</b>	<b>ibus</b>

<sup>1</sup> The dash implies that *suffix* is wanting.

In the Paradigms observe—

1) That the stems are *cōsul*, *pāstōr*, *passer*, *pater*, *patr*, *leōn*, *virgon*, *virgin*, and *carmen*, *carmin*.<sup>1</sup>

2) That in the Nominative and Vocative Singular the stem *pāstōr* shortens **o**, while *leōn* and *virgon* drop **n**.

## LESSON XX.

### THIRD DECLENSION.—STEMS IN **L** AND **R**.—ABLATIVE OF MEANS.

**114.** Examine the following sentences :

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Puerī puellās terrent.             | <i>The boys are frightening the girls.</i>     |
| 2. Puellae <b>ā puerīs</b> terrentur. | <i>The girls are frightened BY THE BOYS.</i>   |
| 3. Dōna puellās dēlectant.            | <i>The gifts delight the girls.</i>            |
| 4. Puellae <b>dōnīs</b> dēlectantur.  | <i>The girls are delighted WITH THE GIFTS.</i> |

In these examples observe—

1. That in passing from the ACTIVE to the PASSIVE construction—

1) That which is the OBJECT of the active, **puellās**, changed to the NOMINATIVE, **puellae**, becomes the SUBJECT of the passive.

2) That which is the SUBJECT of the active, **puerī**, **dōna**, is put in the ABLATIVE, with the preposition **ā** or **ab** if it denotes persons, **ā puerīs** ; but without a preposition if it denotes things, **dōnīs**.

2. That **ā puerīs** answers the question BY WHOM? (see 80, 1), and denotes the AGENT of the action; while **dōnīs** answers the question BY WHAT? WITH WHAT? and denotes the MEANS or INSTRUMENT. Hence the following rule :

#### **RULE XXV.**—Ablative—Agent and Means.

1. The AGENT of an action is denoted by the Ablative with **ā** or **ab**.

2. The INSTRUMENT and MEANS are denoted by the Ablative without the preposition.

<sup>1</sup> That is, the stems of *pater*, *virgō*, and *carmen* appear in two forms : *pater*, *patr* ; *virgon*, *virgin* ; *carmen*, *carmin*.

## 115. VOCABULARY.

Caesar, Caesaris, <i>m.</i>	Caesar. <sup>1</sup>	
Hannibal, Hannibalis, <i>m.</i>	Hannibal. <sup>2</sup>	
elāmor, elāmōris, <i>m.</i>	shout, shouting, cry.	<i>clamor.</i>
imperātor, imperātōris, <i>m.</i>	commander, general.	<i>emperor.</i>
mercātor, mercātōris, <i>m.</i>	merchant, trader.	<i>merchant</i>
ōrātor, ōrātōris, <i>m.</i>	orator.	<i>orator.</i>
praeceptor, praeceptōris, <i>m.</i>	instructor, preceptor.	<i>preceptor.</i>
soror, sorōris, <i>f.</i>	sister.	
vīctor, vīctōris, <i>m.</i>	conqueror, victor.	<i>victor.</i>
frāter, frātris, <i>m.</i>	brother.	<i>frater-nal.</i>
māter, matrīs, <i>f.</i>	mother.	<i>mater-nal.</i>
mulier, mulieris, <i>f.</i>	woman.	

## VERBS.

fuit, (he) was.		
fuērunt, (they) were.		
terret, (he) frightens,	terrētur, (he) is frightened,	
terrifies;	is terrified.	<i>terrify.</i>
terrent, (they) frighten,	terrentur, (they) are frightened,	
terrify;	are terrified.	

## 116. SYNONYMS.

**Magister, praeceptor**; *master, teacher, instructor.*

- 1. Magister**; MASTER, DIRECTOR, TEACHER—especially the master or director of a school, a master of arts or of one or more departments of knowledge, a teacher.
- 2. Praeceptor**; TEACHER, INSTRUCTOR, PRECEPTOR, GUIDE—especially one who by *precept* and *counsel* instructs and trains the young for future usefulness, an INSTRUCTOR or PRECEPTOR.<sup>3</sup>

117. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis fuit Caesar? Nōn-ne fuit imperātor? Caesar clārus imperātor fuit.
2. Nōn-ne praeceptor vester Caesarem interdum laudat? Caesar ā praeceptōre nostrō saepe laudātur.

<sup>1</sup> The famous author, general, and statesman.    <sup>2</sup> The Carthaginian general.

<sup>3</sup> Any efficient teacher may be designated by either or both of these terms.

3. Nōn-ne librī pulchrī ōrātōrem dēlectant? Ōrātor librīs<sup>1</sup> pulchrīs dēlectātur.
4. Quis Hannibalem, clārum imperatōrem, hodiē laudat? Hannibal, clārus imperātor, interdum ab ōrātōribus laudātur.
5. Nōn-ne verba ōrātōris mercātōrēs dēlectant? Mercātōrēs verbīs<sup>2</sup> ōrātōris dēlectantur.
6. Terrent-ne nautae mulierem clāmōribus? Mulier clāmōribus nautārum terrētur.
7. Nōn-ne poētae victōrēs semper laudant? Victōrēs clārī ā poētīs semper laudantur.
8. Nōn-ne lūdī puerōrum interdum praeceptōrēs dēlectant? Praeceptōrēs saepe lūdīs puerōrum dēlectantur.
9. Fuērunt-ne ōrātōrēs in Graeciā? In Graeciā fuērunt clārī ōrātōrēs.
10. Fuit-ne epistula mea frātrī tuō grāta? Epistula tua frātrī meō grāta fuit.
11. Quis fuit Homērus? Fuit-ne ōrātor? Homērus fuit clārus poēta.
12. Nōn-ne Iūlia ā mātrem amātur? Amātur. Mātrēs filiās semper amant.



Julius Caesar.

118. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are the merchant's stories interesting? They are very interesting to our boys.
2. Do your sisters love books? They are always delighted with books<sup>3</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> *Librīs*, ABLATIVE OF MEANS; see 114.

<sup>2</sup> *Verbīs*, why in the *Ablative*? See 114.

<sup>3</sup> In what case will you put the Latin word? See 114.

3. Does not Julia sometimes give books to your sister? She often gives books to my sister.
4. Who was the conqueror? Caesar, the famous general, was the conqueror.
5. Do not the conquerors by their shouts, sometimes terrify the women? Women are often terrified by the shouts of the conquerors.
6. Do not the games of the boys sometimes please their sisters? The girls are often pleased with the games of their brothers.
7. Are your brothers merchants? They are not merchants, but teachers.
8. Were there merchants in Italy? There were famous merchants in Italy.
9. Presents are often given to the daughter of the general.
10. The daughters of the orator are delighted with their presents.

## LESSON XXI.

THIRD DECLENSION.—STEMS IN **N**.

119. Observe the following **IDIOMATIC USE** of **multi** in combination with other adjectives :

- |                                     |                                |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Multi <b>et</b> māgnī labōrēs.   | <i>Many great labors.</i>      |
| 2. Multae <b>et</b> māgnae īnsulae. | <i>Many large islands.</i>     |
| 3. Multa <b>et</b> pulchra templa.  | <i>Many beautiful temples.</i> |

LATIN IDIOM.

Many and great.

Many and beautiful.

ENGLISH IDIOM.

Many great.

Many beautiful.

**Note.**—To this general usage there are numerous exceptions ; especially when the noun stands between the two adjectives :

- |                        |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Multi cīvēs Rōmānī. | <i>Many Roman citizens.</i> |
| 2. Multi virī fortēs.  | <i>Many brave men.</i>      |
| 3. Multi virī bonī.    | <i>Many good men.</i>       |

## 120. VOCABULARY.

<b>Cicerō, Cicerōnis, m.</b>	Cicero, the Roman orator.	
<b>ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, f.</b>	oration.	<i>oration.</i>
<b>sermō, sermōnis, m.</b>	discourse, conversation.	<i>sermon.</i>
<b>homō, hominis, m.<sup>1</sup></b>	man, a human being; see 121.	<i>human.</i>
<b>facētus, facēta, facētum,</b>	witty, facetious.	<i>facet-ious.</i>
<b>Rōmānus, Rōmāna,</b>		
<b>Rōmānum,</b>	Roman.	
<b>Vergilius, Vergiliī, m.</b>	Vergil, the Roman poet.	
<b>quem ? m.<sup>2</sup></b>	whom ?	
<b>quid ? n.<sup>2</sup></b>	what ?	

## VERBS.

<b>legit,</b> (he) reads ;	<b>legitur,</b> (he) is read.	<i>legi-ble.</i>
<b>legunt,</b> (they) read ;	<b>leguntur,</b> (they) are read.	

## 121. SYNONYMS.

**Homō, vir ;** *man, hero.*

1. **Homō ;** MAN, A HUMAN BEING—the ordinary word for man.
2. **Vir ;** MAN, A TRUE MAN, HERO—a term of respect. See 81.

122. *Translate into English.*

1. Quid legit Carolus? Carolus, noster amīcus, ōrātiōnem Cicerōnis legit.
2. Nōn-ne discipulī librōs Caesaris interdum legunt? Librī Caesaris ā discipulīs saepe leguntur.
3. Multa et māgna oppida puerīs sunt nōta.
4. Praeceptor multōs et bonōs librōs habet.
5. In Graeciā sunt multa et pulchra templa.
6. Quis fuit Cicerō? Cicerō fuit clārus ōrātor Rōmānus.



*Cicero, the Roman orator.*

<sup>1</sup> It is not deemed necessary to repeat in the vocabularies the words used in the paradigms except for special reasons. *Carmen* is accordingly here omitted.

<sup>2</sup> *Quem* and *quid* are in the accusative singular, masculine and neuter of *quis, who?* See 47.

7. Quem laudant vestri praeceptōrēs? Cicerōnem orātōrem Rōmānum interdum laudant.
8. Fuit-ne Vergilius poēta? Vergilius clārus poēta Rōmānus fuit.
9. Nōn-ne puellae carmina Vergiliī interdum legunt? Carmina Vergiliī ā puellis saepe leguntur.
10. Nōn-ne puellae carminibus Vergiliī dēlectantur? Valdē dēlectantur.
11. Quid hodiē legit Iūlia? Carmina Homēri poētae legit. Carminibus Homēri dēlectātur.
12. Num hominēs doctī orātiōnēs Cicerōnis legunt? Orātiōnēs clārī orātōris Rōmāni ā multīs virīs doctīs leguntur.
13. Nōn-ne multī hominēs perīcula timent? Perīcula ā multīs hominibus timentur.
14. Quem dēlectat sermō factus? Poētae sermōne factō semper dēlectantur.
15. Doctī hominēs sermōnibus factīs saepe dēlectantur.

**123.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are the poems of Vergil interesting? They are very interesting to boys and girls.
2. Charles, what is your sister reading to-day? She is reading a Latin poem.
3. Do not the songs of Homer delight our poets? Our poets are delighted with the songs of Homer.
4. Do learned men often praise the poems of Homer? The poems of Homer are always praised by learned men.



*Vergil, the Roman poet.*

5. Do your pupils read the orations of Cicero, the famous Roman orator? The orations of Cicero are always read by our pupils.
3. What always pleases your instructors? Our instructors are always pleased with the diligence of their pupils.
7. Does not Cicero the orator often praise good men? Good men are often praised by the famous orator.
8. Are learned men always witty? They are sometimes witty.
9. Was not the great poet's conversation often witty? It was often witty.
10. Julia is always delighted with witty conversations.

## LESSON XXII.

## A FATHER'S LETTER.

## 124. VOCABULARY.

<b>annus, annī, m.</b>	year.	<i>annu-al.</i>
<b>decem,</b>	ten.	<i>decim-al.</i>
<b>filius, filiī, m.</b>	son; see 90, 2.	<i>fili-al.</i>
<b>industrius, a, um,<sup>1</sup></b>	diligent, industrious.	<i>industrious.</i>
<b>nam,</b>	for.	
<b>studiōsē,</b>	studiously, zealously.	<i>studious-ly.</i>
<b>tē,</b>	thee, you (as object).	<i>thee.</i>

## VERBS.

<b>scrībit,</b> (he) writes;	<b>scrībitur,</b> (it) is written.	<i>scribe.</i>
<b>scrībunt,</b> (they) write;	<b>scrībuntur,</b> (they) are written.	
<b>valet,</b> (he) is well, is strong.		<i>val-iant.</i>
<b>valent,</b> (they) are well, are strong.		
<b>valē,</b> farewell, be well.		

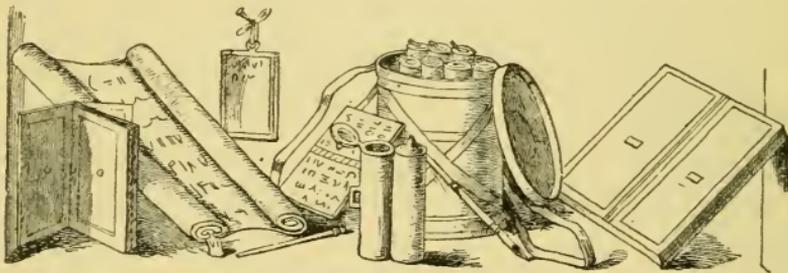
<sup>1</sup> Here *a* and *um* are the Nominative endings of the Feminine and Neuter forms. Thus, *industrius, industria, industrium*. In subsequent vocabularies the Feminine and Neuter forms in adjectives of this class will thus be indicated by the endings.

## 125. A FATHER'S LETTER TO HIS BOY AT SCHOOL.

Epistula magistrī tuī, Carole, mī fili, mē valdē dēlectat: nam dīligentiam tuam laudat. Magister scrībit: "Tuus filiū Carolus est bonus puer et industrius discipulus. Linguam Latīnam amat; fābulīs Latīnīs dēlectātur. Ā puerīs amātur et ā praeceptōribus laudātur. Praeceptōrēs Carolō praemia saepe dant. Carolus semper est beātus. Valē."

Tuus avus hodiē est aeger. Tē amat et tuās epistulās semper laudat. Tua soror Iūlia hodiē beāta est; nam decem annōs habet<sup>1</sup>; suam mātrem cāram amat. Tē exspectat. Tuī frātrēs valent; Mārcus librīs dēlectātur, equīs Frederīcus. Mārcus multōs librōs habet; carmina Vergiliī semper laudat. Nunc ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis studiōsē legit.

Māter tē amat.<sup>2</sup> Valē.



Writing materials.<sup>3</sup>

126. Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.

1. Quis dīligentiam Carolī laudat? 2. Nōn-ne discipulī Carolum amant? 3. Nōn-ne fābulae Latīnae Carolum dēlectant? 4. Dēlectant-ne tē fābulae Latīnae? 5. Quem dēlectant equī? 6. Nōn-ne librī Mārcum dēlectant? 7. Quis est Mārcus?

<sup>1</sup> Literally, *she has ten years*, i. e., is ten years old.

<sup>2</sup> Literally, *loves you* = sends love.

<sup>3</sup> Notice the rolls, tablets, receptacle for manuscripts, inkstand and pen.

## LESSON XXIII.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

## 127. STEMS ENDING IN S.

	Flōs, M., <i>flower.</i>	Iūs, N., <i>right.</i>	Opus, N., <i>work.</i>	Corpus, N., <i>body.</i>
	SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i>	flōs	iūs	opus	corpus
<i>Gen.</i>	flōris	iūris	operis	corporis
<i>Dat.</i>	flōrī	iūrī	operī	corporī
<i>Acc.</i>	flōrem	iūs	opus	corpus
<i>Voc.</i>	flōs	iūs	opus	corpus
<i>Abl.</i>	flōre	iūre	opere	corpore

	PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	flōrēs	iūra	opera	corpora
<i>Gen.</i>	flōrum	iūrum	operum	corporum
<i>Dat.</i>	flōribus	iūribus	operibus	corporibus
<i>Acc.</i>	flōrēs	iūra	opera	corpora
<i>Voc.</i>	flōrēs	iūra	opera	corpora
<i>Abl.</i>	flōribus	iūribus	operibus	corporibus

In the Paradigms observe that the stems are *flōs*, *iūs*, *opus*, *oper*,<sup>1</sup> and *corpus*, *corpor*.<sup>1</sup>

## 128. VOCABULARY.

genus, generis, <i>n.</i> <sup>2</sup>	race, kind, class.	<i>gener</i> -al.
mōs, mōris, <i>m.</i>	custom.	<i>mor</i> -als.
mōrēs, <i>plur.</i>	customs, manners, character.	
tempus, temporis, <i>n.</i>	time, season.	<i>tempor</i> -al.
tempora, <i>plur.</i>	the times, times.	
color, colōris, <i>m.</i>	color.	<i>color</i> .
odor, odōris, <i>m.</i>	odor, perfume.	<i>odor</i> .
scrīptor, scrīptōris, <i>m.</i>	writer, author.	<i>script</i> -ure.
Germānī, Germānō-		
rum, <i>m., plur.</i>	the Germans.	
Tacitus, Tacitī, <i>m.</i>	Tacitus, Roman historian.	

<sup>1</sup> That is, the stems of *opus* and *corpus* appear in the form of *opus* and *corvus* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular, and in the form of *oper* and *corpor* in the other cases.

<sup>2</sup> For the omission of *opus* and *flōs* in this vocabulary, see foot-note to 120.

<b>antīquus, a, um,</b> <sup>1</sup>	ancient, old.	<i>antique.</i>
<b>ēgregius, a, um,</b>	remarkable, excellent.	<i>egregious.</i>
<b>varius, a, um,</b>	various, different.	<i>various.</i>

## VERBS.

<b>ōrnat,</b> (he) adorns, decorates, furnishes;	<b>ōrnātur,</b> (he) is adorned, is decorated, is furnished.	<i>orna-ment.</i>
<b>ōrnant,</b> (they) adorn, decorate, furnish;	<b>ōrnantur,</b> (they) are adorned, are decorated, are furnished.	

129. *Translate into English.*

1. Ubī sunt, puerī, vestrī flōrēs pulchrī? In nostrō hortō sunt multī flōrēs pulchrī.
2. Tuī flōrēs, mī filī, mātrem tuam dēlectant. Māter tua flōribus pulchrīs semper dēlectātur.
3. Est-ne odor flōrum iūcundus? Variī sunt odōrēs flōrum; multī flōrēs iūcundum odōrem habent.
4. Flōrēs pulchrī sorōrī tuae, Alberte, semper sunt grātī.
5. Quis bonōs puerī mōrēs laudat? Mōrēs puerī ā praeceptōribus semper laudantur.
6. Bonī mōrēs ab hominibus bonīs semper laudantur.
7. Mōrēs discipulōrum praeceptōribus sunt nōtī.
8. Nōn-ne multī hominēs mōrēs antīquōs amant? Mōrēs antīquī ā multīs scrīptōribus laudantur.
9. Quis fuit Tacitus? Tacitus fuit doctus scrīptor Rōmānus.
10. Nōn-ne Tacitus antīquōs Germānōs laudat? Mōrēs antīquōrum Germānōrum ā Tacitō valdē laudantur.
11. Num puerī opera Tacitī legunt? Opera Tacitī nōn ā puerīs sed ab hominibus doctīs leguntur.
12. Carolus sorōrī suae corōnam flōrum dat.
13. Nōn-ne puellae flōribus templum ōrnant? Tempła flōribus saepe ōrnantur.

---

<sup>1</sup> For *antīquus, antīqua, antīquum*, see foot-note to 123.

**130.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who is reading the works of Cicero? My brother is now reading the orations of Cicero.
2. Do many men praise the works of Tacitus? The works of Tacitus are greatly praised by many famous authors.
3. Who loves flowers? Cornelia is always delighted with beautiful flowers.
4. Are not flowers always acceptable gifts? They are always acceptable to girls.
5. Are there many flowers in your garden? Our garden is often adorned with flowers.
6. Is not Julia pleased with the color of flowers? The colors of flowers are various.
7. Are there many kinds of flowers? There are many kinds in the gardens and fields.
8. What are your pupils now reading? They are now reading the works of Vergil.
9. Many men are always praising ancient times and ancient customs.
10. Our poets are delighted with the remarkable works of Homer.

## LESSON XXIV.

*THIRD DECLENSION.***131.** STEMS ENDING IN **B** OR **P**, **D** OR **T**.

Prīnceps, *m.*, a chief. Lapis, *m.*, stone. Aetās, *f.*, age.

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i> prīnceps	lapis	aetās
<i>Gen.</i> prīncipis	lapidis	aetātis
<i>Dat.</i> prīncipi	lapidi	aetātī
<i>Acc.</i> prīncipem	lapidem	aetātem
<i>Voc.</i> prīnceps	lapis	aetās
<i>Abl.</i> prīncipe	lapide	aetāte

	PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i> prīncipēs	lapidēs	aetātēs	
<i>Gen.</i> prīncipum	lapidum	aetātum	
<i>Dat.</i> prīncipibus	lapidibus	aetātibus	
<i>Acc.</i> prīncipēs	lapidēs	aetātēs	
<i>Voc.</i> prīncipēs	lapidēs	aetātēs	
<i>Abl.</i> prīncipibus	lapidibus	aetātibus	
Miles, <i>m.</i> , soldier.	Virtūs, <i>f.</i> , virtue.	Caput, <i>n.</i> , head.	

	SINGULAR.		
<i>Nom.</i> miles	virtūs	caput	
<i>Gen.</i> militis	virtūtis	capitis	
<i>Dat.</i> militi	virtūti	capiti	
<i>Acc.</i> militem	virtutem	caput	
<i>Voc.</i> miles	virtūs	caput	
<i>Abl.</i> milite	virtute	capite	

	PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i> milites	virtutes	capita	
<i>Gen.</i> militum	virtutum	capitum	
<i>Dat.</i> militibus	virtutibus	capitibus	
<i>Acc.</i> milites	virtutes	capita	
<i>Voc.</i> milites	virtutes	capita	
<i>Abl.</i> militibus	virtutibus	capitibus	

In these Paradigms observe—

1) That the stems are *prīncep*, *prīncip*,<sup>1</sup> *lapid*, *aetāt*, *mīlet*,<sup>1</sup> *mīlit*, *nepōt*, *virtūt*, and *caput*, *capit*.<sup>1</sup>

2) That with the exception of the *neuter caput*<sup>1</sup> they all take the suffix *s* in the nominative and vocative singular: *prīncep*, *prīncep-s*; *lapid*, *lapid-s*, *lapis*<sup>2</sup>; and that in all the other cases they are declined like *cōnsul*, *passer*, etc., already learned.<sup>3</sup>

3) That the *neuter caput* is declined like the *neuter carmen*.<sup>3</sup>

### 132. VOCABULARY.

<i>cīvitās</i> , <i>cīvitātis</i> , <i>f.</i>	state.	
<i>libertās</i> , <i>libertātis</i> , <i>f.</i>	freedom, liberty.	<i>liberty</i> .
<i>eques</i> , <i>equitis</i> , <i>m.</i>	horseman, trooper, knight.	<i>eques-trian</i> .
<i>equitēs</i> , <i>plur.</i>	horsemen, cavalry, knights.	
<i>hospes</i> , <i>hospitis</i> , <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	guest, visitor.	<i>hospit-able</i> .

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note to 127.

<sup>2</sup> The dental—*d* or *t*—is dropped before *s* for the sake of euphony: *lapis* for *lapids*, *aetās* for *aetās*, *mīles* for *mīlets*, *virtūs* for *virtūs*.

<sup>3</sup> The learner should carefully note these facts.

<b>prīnceps, prīncipis, m.</b>	chieftain, leader, prince.	<i>prince.</i>
<b>cūstōs, cūstōdis, m.</b>	keeper, guard, guardian.	<i>custod-ian.</i>
<b>nepōs, nepōtis, m.</b>	grandson.	
<b>laus, laudis, f.</b>	praise, commendation.	<i>laud.</i>
<b>salūs, salūtis, f.</b>	safety.	<i>salut-ary.</i>
<b>virtūs, virtūtis, f.</b>	virtue, valor, bravery.	<i>virtue.</i>
<b>bellum, ī, n.</b>	war.	
<b>fortiter, adv.</b>	bravely, valiantly.	<i>forti-tude.</i>
	VERBS.	
<b>pūgnat,</b>	(he, she, it) fights.	<i>pugna-cious.</i>
<b>pūgnant,</b>	(they) fight.	

### 133. Translate into English.

1. Quid legunt tuī nepōtēs? Ēgregia Homēri carmina nunc legunt.
2. Praeceptōrēs dīligentiam nepōtum tuōrum laudant.
3. Praemia nepōtibus tuīs ā praeceptōribus saepe dantur.
4. Ēgregia virtūs vestra, mīlītēs, ab imperātōre saepe laudātur.<sup>1</sup>
5. Laudat-ne imperātor virtūtem nostrōrum equitum? Ēgregiam equitum virtūtem semper laudat.
6. Nōn-ne laudēs hominibus grātae sunt? Multī hominēs laudibus dēlectantur.
7. Nōn-ne Cicerō saepe mīlītēs Rōmānōs laudat? Mīlītēs Rōmānī ā Cicerōne saepe laudantur.
8. Nōn-ne mīlītēs Rōmānī fortiter pūgnant? Nostrī mīlītēs fortiter pūgnant.
9. Bellum mīlitibus vestrīs grātum est.
10. Habet-ne prīnceps multōs equōs? Habet equōs multōs et pulchrōs. Prīncipēs semper pulchrōs equōs habent.
11. Nōn-ne liberāe sunt nostrae civitātēs? Liberāe sunt; nam Americānī libertātem amant.
12. Habet-ne rēgīna hodiē multōs hospitēs? Habet. Rēgīna semper hospitēs habet.

<sup>1</sup> For the arms and dress of the officers and soldiers of the Roman legion, see Plate I, frontispiece, and Plate III, page 74.

134. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not my father your guest? Your brothers were my guests.
2. Does not the queen sometimes give beautiful presents to her guests? Magnificent presents are sometimes given to the guests of the queen.
3. Are the keepers of your gardens always faithful? They are always faithful.
4. Where are your grandsons? They are in the garden. They are delighted with the flowers.
5. Is your state free? Our states are free and happy.
6. Are the guardians of our liberties faithful? They are good and faithful, for they love liberty.
7. The safety of the state was dear to Cicero, the famous orator.
8. Is not war sometimes acceptable to your soldiers? War is often acceptable to our cavalry.
9. Father, who was Vergil? Vergil, my son, was the prince of Roman poets.
10. Does not Vergil often praise the bravery of soldiers? The remarkable bravery of soldiers is often praised by the poet.

## LESSON XXV.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

## 135. STEMS ENDING IN C OR G.

	Rēx, M., <i>king.</i>	Iūdex, M. & F., <i>judge.</i>	Rādīx, F., <i>root.</i>	Dux, M. & F., <i>leader.</i>
	SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i>	rēx	iūdex	rādīx	dux
<i>Gen.</i>	rēgis	iūdicis	rādīcis	ducis
<i>Dat.</i>	rēgī	iūdicī	rādīcī	ducī
<i>Acc.</i>	rēgem	iūdicem	rādīcem	ducem
<i>Voc.</i>	rēx	iūdex	rādīx	dux
<i>Abl.</i>	rēge	iūdice	rādīce	duce

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> rēgēs	iūdicēs	rādīcēs	ducēs
<i>Gen.</i> rēgum	iūdicum	rādīcum	ducum
<i>Dat.</i> rēgibus	iūdicibus	rādīcibus	ducibus
<i>Acc.</i> rēgēs	iūdicēs	rādīcēs	ducēs
<i>Voc.</i> rēgēs	iūdicēs	rādīcēs	ducēs
<i>Abl.</i> rēgibus	iūdicibus	rādīcibus	ducibus

In the Paradigms observe—

- 1) That the stems are *rēg*, *iūdec*, *iūdic*, *rādīc*, and *duc*.
- 2) That **s** in the Nominative and Vocative Singular unites with *e* or *g* of the stem, and forms **z**.<sup>1</sup>
- 3) That in all the other cases these examples are declined like the paradigms already learned in this declension.

## 136. VOCABULARY.

<b>dux, ducis, m.</b>	leader, commander.	<i>duke.</i>
<b>lēx, lēgis, f.</b>	law.	<i>leg-al.</i>
<b>pāx, pācis, f.</b>	peace.	<i>pac-ific.</i>
<b>Ancus Mārtius, Ancī Mār-tiī, m.</b>	Ancus Martius, reputed king of Rome.	
<b>Apollō, Apollinis, m.</b>	Apollo, the sun-god.	
<b>auctōritās, auctōritātis, f.</b>	authority, influence.	<i>authority.</i>
<b>Dracō, Dracōnis, m.</b>	Draco, Athenian lawgiver.	
<b>Numa Pompilius, Numae Pompiliī, m.</b>	Numa Pompilius, reputed king of Rome.	
<b>vulnus, vulneris, n.</b>	wound.	<i>vulner-able.</i>
<b>aequus, a, um,</b>	fair, impartial, equitable.	<i>equa-l.</i>
<b>perīculōsus, a, um,</b>	perilous, dangerous.	<i>perilous.</i>
<b>sevērus, a, um,</b>	severe, strict, stern.	<i>severe.</i>

## 137. Translate into English.

1. Quis fuit bonus Rōmānōrum rēx? Numa Pompilius fuit bonus rēx.
2. Nōn-ne scrīptōrēs Rōmānī rēgēs interdum laudant? Bonī rēgēs ā scrīptōribus Rōmānīs saepe laudantur.
3. Carmina Homēri ā doctīs rēgibus saepe leguntur.
4. Rēx Ancus Mārtius fuit nepōs Numae rēgis.

<sup>1</sup> Rēx is for rēg-s, iūdex for iūdec-s, rādīx for rādīc-s, dux for duc-s.

5. Quid rēgī dant mīlitēs? Rēgī corōnam auream dant.
6. Quid ducī dant mīlitēs? Ducī corōnam flōrum dant.
7. Nōn-ne iūdex sevērus fuit? Fuit sevērus sed aequus.
8. Nōn-ne iūdicēs aequī ab ōrātōribus laudantur? Ōrātōrēs iūdicēs aequōs semper laudant.
9. Nōn-ne lēgēs Draconis fuērunt sevērae? Fuērunt sevērae. Multae et antiquae lēgēs fuērunt sevērae.
10. Nōn-ne multī hominēs lēgēs antiquās laudant? Lēgēs antiquae ā multīs et doctīs iūdicibus laudantur.
11. Iūdicēs sevērī et aequī sunt cūstōdēs lēgum.
12. Agricolae pācem, mīlitēs bellum amant.
13. Cīvitātēs nostrae lēgēs ēgregiās habent.
14. Nōn-ne templum Apollinis fuit pulchrum? Māgnificum fuit.



*Apollo, the god of the sun.*

### 138. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Is not the judge sometimes severe? He is always fair.
2. Impartial judges are always the faithful guardians of good laws.
3. Are our laws severe? They are not severe; they are excellent.

4. The influence of an impartial judge is always great.
5. Peace is always welcome to farmers, but war is sometimes welcome to soldiers.
6. Are the wounds of the king dangerous? They are not dangerous.
7. The wounds of the soldiers are many and dangerous.
8. Good men do not fear severe judges.
9. Do good men fear the laws? Good men are never terrified by severe laws.
10. Many men are always praising ancient customs and ancient laws.
11. Are the severe laws of Draco often praised? They are not often praised by learned judges.

## LESSON XXVI.

## THIRD DECLENSION.—DIALOGUE.

## 139. VOCABULARY.

<i>causa</i> , ae, <i>f.</i>	cause.	<i>cause.</i>
<i>contentiō</i> , <i>contentiōnis</i> , <i>f.</i>	strife, quarrel.	<i>contention.</i>
<i>fūrtum</i> , <i>fūrtī</i> , <i>n.</i>	theft, stealing.	<i>furt-ive.</i>
<i>grāmen</i> , <i>grāminis</i> , <i>n.</i>	grass.	<i>gra-ss.</i>
<i>multitūdō</i> , <i>multitūdinis</i> , <i>f.</i>	multitude, great number.	<i>multitude.</i>
<i>poena</i> , ae, <i>f.</i>	satisfaction, punishment.	<i>pena-l.</i>
<i>poenam dat</i> ,	(he) suffers punishment. <sup>1</sup>	
<i>quae</i> ,	what?	
<i>tergum</i> , <i>tergī</i> , <i>n.</i>	back.	
<i>tergum dat</i> ,	(he) flees. <sup>2</sup>	
	<b>VERBS.</b>	
<i>appropīnquant</i> ,	(they) approach, draw near.	
<i>circumdant</i> ,	(they) surround, collect about.	
<i>dabunt</i> ,	(they) will give.	

<sup>1</sup> Literally, *he gives satisfaction*, i. e., by being punished.

<sup>2</sup> Literally, *he gives or turns his back*.

iacet,	(he, she, it) is lying, lies.	
petunt,	(they) seek.	
surgit,	(he, she, it) rises.	<i>surge.</i>
tacent,	(they) are silent.	
vulnerātus est,	(he, she, it) is wounded.	<i>vulner-able.</i>
duo, <i>m. plur. nom.</i>	two.	

## 140. COLLOQUIUM.

DUO PUERĪ, ALBERTUS ET HENRĪCUS.

Albertus.—Māgnus in lūcō est clāmōr.

Henrīcus.—Puerī cum pāstōre pūgnant.

A.—Nōn-ne pāstor multītūdinem tīmet?

H.—Americānus est. Americāni nōn terrentur multītūdine.

A.—Ducem-ne habent puerī?

H.—Habent ducem ēgregium, Carolum nostrum.

A.—Quae est causa contentiōnis?

H.—Pāstor puerōs accūsāt fūrtī flōrum.<sup>1</sup>

A.—Puerī tacent. Num terrentur? Habent-ne pācem?

H.—Vulnerātus est homō; in grāmine iacet. Puerī hominem circumdant.

A.—Est pāstor. Poenam dabunt<sup>2</sup> puerī.

H.—Vulnus nōn est periculōsum; nam surgit homō et ambulat.

A.—Puerī vulnere pāstōris terrentur et terga dant.<sup>3</sup> Nōn-ne equitēs appropīnquant?

H.—Sunt cūstōdēs lūcī. Puerī salūtem in fugā petunt.

141. *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Quae est causa māgnī clāmōris? 2. Num multī in lūcō sunt puerī? 3. Nōn-ne puerī timent cūstōdēs lūcī? 4. Est-ne noster Carolus dux puerōrum? 5. Nōn-ne est Carolus dux ēgregius? 6. Num pāstor in grāmine iacet?

<sup>1</sup> Fūrtī flōrum, *of stealing flowers*; literally, *of the theft of flowers*. Verbs of ACCUSING take the *Genitive of the crime*.

<sup>2</sup> Poenam dabunt, *will suffer punishment, will be punished*; literally, *will give satisfaction*. <sup>3</sup> Terga dant, *flee*; literally, *give or turn their backs*.

## LESSON XXVII.

## THIRD DECLENSION.—CLASS II.—I-STEMS.

## CLASS II.—I-STEMS.

142. STEMS ENDING IN **I**.—*Nouns in is and ēs*, not increasing in the Genitive.<sup>1</sup>

	Turris, F., <i>tower.</i>	Īgnīs, M., <i>fire.</i>	Hostis, M. & F., <i>enemy.</i>	Nūbēs, F., <i>cloud.</i>	
			SINGULAR.		
					CASE-ENDING. <sup>2</sup>
<i>Nom.</i>	turr <b>is</b>	īgn <b>is</b>	host <b>is</b>	nūb <b>ēs</b>	<b>is, ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	turr <b>is</b>	īgn <b>is</b>	host <b>is</b>	nūb <b>is</b>	<b>is</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	turr <b>ī</b>	īgn <b>ī</b>	host <b>ī</b>	nūb <b>ī</b>	<b>ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	turr <b>im, em</b>	īgn <b>em</b>	host <b>em</b>	nūb <b>em</b>	<b>im, em</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	turr <b>is</b>	īgn <b>is</b>	host <b>is</b>	nūb <b>ēs</b>	<b>is</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	turr <b>ī, e</b>	īgn <b>ī, e</b>	host <b>e</b>	nūb <b>e</b>	<b>ī, e</b>
			PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	turr <b>ēs</b>	īgn <b>ēs</b>	host <b>ēs</b>	nūb <b>ēs</b>	<b>ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	turr <b>ium</b>	īgn <b>ium</b>	host <b>ium</b>	nūb <b>ium</b>	<b>ium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	turr <b>ibus</b>	īgn <b>ibus</b>	host <b>ibus</b>	nūb <b>ibus</b>	<b>ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	turr <b>ēs, is</b>	īgn <b>ēs, is</b>	host <b>ēs, is</b>	nūb <b>ēs, is</b>	<b>ēs, is</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	turr <b>ēs</b>	īgn <b>ēs</b>	host <b>ēs</b>	nūb <b>ēs</b>	<b>ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	turr <b>ibus</b>	īgn <b>ibus</b>	host <b>ibus</b>	nūb <b>ibus</b>	<b>ibus</b>

## 143. VOCABULARY.

avis, avis, f. <sup>3</sup>	bird.	
cīvis, cīvis, m. and f.	citizen.	<i>civi-l.</i>
clāssis, clāssis, f.	class, fleet, navy.	<i>class.</i>
collis, collis, m.	hill.	
nāvis, nāvis, f. <sup>4</sup>	ship.	<i>navy.</i>
nāvis longa, nāvis longae, f.	ship of war, long ship. <sup>5</sup>	

<sup>1</sup> That is, having as many syllables in the Nominative Singular as in the Genitive Singular.

<sup>2</sup> In the PARADIGMS observe that the stems are *turri*, *īgni*, *hosti*, and *nūbi*, but that the final *i* is changed to *e* in *em* and *e*, and disappears by contraction in *ēs*.

<sup>3</sup> Decline *avis*, *cīvis*, *clāssis*, and *collis* like *īgnis*.

<sup>4</sup> Decline *nāvis* like *turris*.

<sup>5</sup> For the form and appearance of ancient ships of war, see Plate III, page 74.

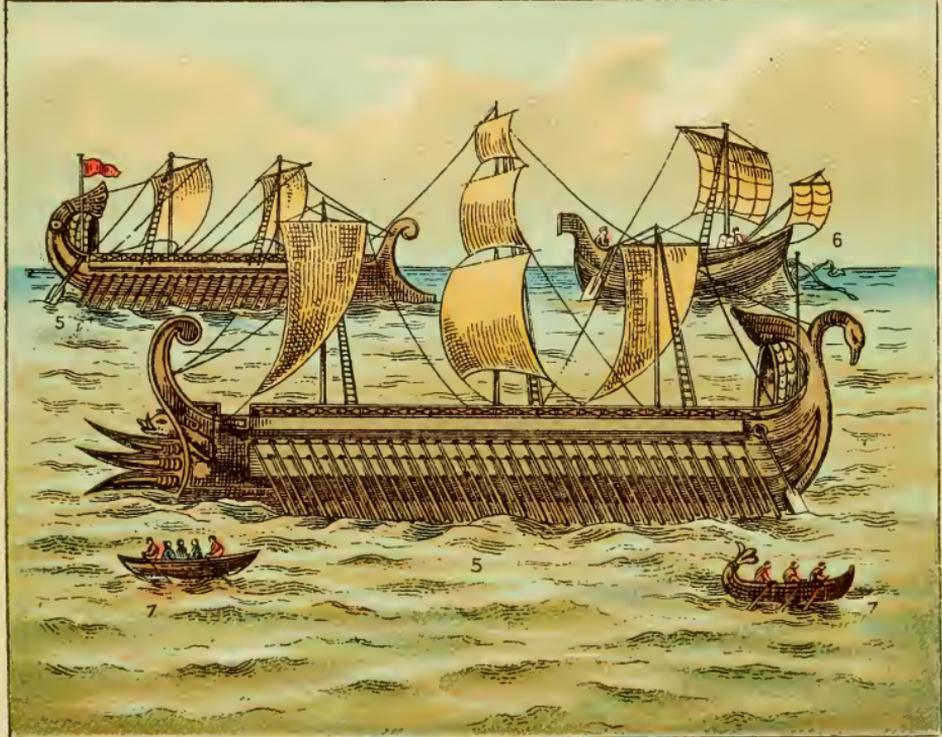
caedēs, caedis, <i>f.</i>	slaughter.	
clādēs, clādis, <i>f.</i>	disaster, defeat.	
nūbēs, nūbis, <i>f.</i>	cloud.	
altitūdō, altitūdinis, <i>f.</i>	height, altitude.	<i>altitude.</i>
comes, comitis, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i>	companion, associate.	
malus, a, um,	bad, vicious.	<i>mal-ice.</i>
numerus, ī, <i>m.</i>	number.	<i>number.</i>

144. *Translate into English.*

1. Ubī est turris pulchra? In oppidō sunt turrēs altae et pulchrae.
2. Hostēs nostrī multās turrēs habent.
3. In turribus altīs sunt multī militēs.
4. Est-ne altitūdō turrium māgna? Nōn est māgna.
5. Pūgnant-ne fortiter vestrī hostēs? Hostium nostrōrum numerus est māgnus. Fortiter pūgnant.
6. Nōn-ne vestrī cīvēs māgnam hostium multitudinem timent? Nostrī cīvēs nunquam timent hostēs.
7. Nōn-ne pāx vestris cīvibus est iūcunda? Nostrīs cīvibus pāx semper est iūcunda.
8. Habent-ne hostēs multās navēs? Multās navēs longās habent.
9. Ubī est dux hostium? Est in turri altā.
10. Bellum cīvibus nostrīs nōn est grātum.
11. Ducēs hostium militēs nostrōs laudant.
12. Ubī sunt avēs pulchrae? In hortō nostrō sunt multae et pulchrae avēs.
13. Nūbēs nautīs nōn sunt iūcundae.
14. Sunt-ne in Graeciā multī collēs? Multī et altī collēs in Graeciā sunt.

145. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who is the leader of the enemy? The king is the leader of the enemy.
2. Has the leader of the enemy many ships? He has a large number of ships. Kings often have large navies.



1. COMMANDER. 2. LIEUTENANT, 3. CENTURION, 4. LICTOR,  
5. WAR VESSELS, 6. MERCHANT VESSEL, 7. BOATS.



3. Is your fleet large? It is not large.
4. The number of our ships of war is known to the enemy.
5. Was not the slaughter great? The slaughter of the cavalry was great.
6. The enemy are terrified by the defeat of their cavalry.
7. Good citizens always love their country.
8. The judge is always praising our citizens.
9. Good judges are always praised by our citizens.
10. Do not our enemies praise the valor of our soldiers? The valor of our soldiers is praised by our enemies.
11. Bad citizens often have bad associates.
12. Are not clouds often beautiful? Clouds are often praised by famous poets.
13. There are magnificent temples and lofty towers in the large towns.

## LESSON XXVIII.

## THIRD DECLENSION.—CLASS II.—I-STEMS.—NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

146. STEMS ENDING IN **I**.—Neuters in **e, al, and ar**.Cubile, *couch*. Animal, *animal*. Calcar, *spur*.

	SINGULAR.			CASE-ENDINGS.
<i>Nom.</i> cubile	animal	calcar		<b>e</b> <sup>1</sup>
<i>Gen.</i> cubilis	animālis	calcāris		<b>is</b>
<i>Dat.</i> cubilī	animālī	calcārī		<b>ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i> cubile	animal	calcar		<b>e</b> —
<i>Voc.</i> cubile	animal	calcar		<b>e</b> —
<i>Abl.</i> cubilī	animālī	calcārī		<b>ī</b>
	PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i> cubilia	animālia	calcāria		<b>ia</b>
<i>Gen.</i> cubilium	animālium	calcārium		<b>ium</b>
<i>Dat.</i> cubilibus	animālibus	calcāribus		<b>ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i> cubilia	animālia	calcāria		<b>ia</b>
<i>Voc.</i> cubilia	animālia	calcāria		<b>ia</b>
<i>Abl.</i> cubilibus	animālibus	calcāribus		<b>ibus</b>

<sup>1</sup> The dash here means that the case-ending is sometimes wanting.

1. In the Paradigms observe—

1) That the stem-ending **i** is changed to **e** in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Singular of *cubile*, and dropped in the same cases of *animal* (for *animāle*) and *calcar* (for *calcāre*).

2) That the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative are alike, and end in the plural in *ia*.

**147.** As some nouns in **is**, as **hostis**, are both masculine and feminine, so some adjectives in **is** are both masculine and feminine; as, **trīstis**, *saul*, **ūtilis**, *useful*.

**148.** These adjectives in **is** are declined like **hostis**, except in the ablative singular, where they take **ī**, not **e**; as, **trīstī**.

Write out the declension of **ūtilis**, masculine and feminine, in full. See 142 and 175.

**149.** As neuter nouns in **e** are declined like **cubile**, so neuter adjectives in **e** are declined in the same way.

1. Like **cubile** decline the neuter adjective **ūtile**, *useful*. See 146 and 175.

2. Decline together **ūtilis civis**, *a useful citizen*; **ūtilis lōx**, *a useful law*; **ūtile animal**, *a useful animal*.

## LESSON XXIX.

### THIRD DECLENSION.—I-STEMS.—NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

#### 150. VOCABULARY.

<b>animal</b> , <i>animālis</i> , <i>n.</i>	animal.	<i>animal.</i>
<b>calcar</b> , <i>calcāris</i> , <i>n.</i>	spur.	
<b>mare</b> , <i>maris</i> , <i>n.</i>	sea.	<i>mari-time.</i>
<b>Athēnae</b> , <i>ārum</i> , <i>f. pl.</i>	Athens, a famous city of Greece.	
<b>Minerva</b> , <i>ae</i> , <i>f.</i>	Minerva, goddess of wisdom.	
<b>fertilis</b> , <i>fertile</i> ,	fertile.	<i>fertile.</i>
<b>fortis</b> , <i>forte</i> ,	brave, valiant.	<i>forti-tude.</i>
<b>omnis</b> , <i>omne</i> ,	all, every.	<i>omnibus.</i>
<b>ūtilis</b> , <i>ūtile</i> ,	useful.	<i>utili-ty.</i>
<b>vāstus</b> , <i>vāsta</i> , <i>vāstum</i> ,	vast, immense.	<i>vast.</i>

151. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis nunc mare timet? Multī cīvēs mare nostrum timent.
2. Nōn-ne omnia maria interdum sunt nautīs periculōsa? Periculōsa sunt.
3. Nōn-ne vāstum est mare? Multa maria sunt vāsta.
4. Habet-ne prīnceps calcāria aurea? Calcāria prīncipis nōn sunt aurea.
5. Nōn-ne calcāria rēgis vestrī aurea sunt? Aurea sunt. Rēgēs interdum aurea calcāria habent.
6. Nōn-ne animālia sunt māgna? Multa animālia sunt māgna et pulchra.
7. Ubī sunt animālia? In agrīs est māgna animālium multitudō.
8. Multa et māgna animālia hominibus sunt ūtilia.
9. Animālium varia sunt genera.
10. In maribus multa et varia sunt genera animālium.
11. Nōn-ne lēgēs sunt ūtilēs? Lēgēs bonae hominibus omnibus sunt ūtilēs.
12. Librī puerīs omnibus sunt ūtilēs.
13. Nōn-ne vestrī agrī sunt fertilēs? Nostrī agrī sunt fertilēs.
14. Nōn-ne agricolae agrīs fertilibus dēlectantur? Agrīs fertilibus semper dēlectantur.
15. Nōn-ne militēs vestrī sunt fortēs? Semper sunt fortēs.
16. Minerva fuit cūstōs Athēnārum.



*Minerva, the goddess of wisdom.*

**152.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who has golden spurs? The cavalry of the enemy have beautiful spurs.
2. Are there many animals in Europe? There are in Europe many kinds of animals.
3. Were many animals known to the ancient inhabitants of Europe? Many kinds of animals were known to the Romans.
4. Are not many kinds of animals useful to farmers? Many animals are useful to all men.
5. Is not the sea often praised by brave sailors? Many sailors are always praising the sea.
6. Are many seas known to our sailors? Many seas are known to all sailors.
7. Are not our brave soldiers praised by poets? Poets always praise brave soldiers.
8. The wounds of our brave soldiers are many and dangerous.
9. Brave soldiers always love brave commanders.
10. Have your instructors many books? Our instructors have many useful books.
11. Are not games pleasing to all boys? All boys are delighted with games.
12. Is not the country dear to all the citizens? All good citizens love their country.

**153.** VOCABULARY.

<b>Gallia, Galliae, f.</b>	Gaul, the province of Gaul.
<b>Gallī, Gallōrum, m.</b>	Gauls, the inhabitants of Gaul.
<b>Gallicus, a, um,</b>	Gallic, belonging to Gaul.
<b>Rhēnus, Rhēnī, m.</b>	Rhine, the river Rhine.
<b>igitur, conj.</b>	therefore, accordingly.
<b>trāns, prep. with acc.</b>	across, on the other side.
<b>trāns Rhēnum,</b>	across the Rhine, on the other side of the Rhine.

## VERBS.

<b>occupat,</b>	(he) seizes, takes possession of.	<i>occupy.</i>
<b>occupant,</b>	(they) seize, take possession of.	
<b>videt,</b>	(he) sees.	<i>pro-vidē.</i>
<b>vident,</b>	(they) see.	
<b>trāns-eunt,</b>	(they) cross, go over.	

## 154. THE GAULS AND THE GERMANS.

In Galliā sunt agricolae multī. Agrōs fertilēs habent. Germānī, Gallōrum hostēs, oppida trāns Rhēnum habent, sed agrōs fertilēs nōn habent. Germānī Rhēnum trānseunt et agrōs Gallōrum vident; fertilibus Gallōrum agrīs dēlectantur. Cum Gallīs igitur pūgnant et agrōs Gallicōs occupant. Nunc Germānī agrōs fertilēs habent.

## LESSON XXX.

## THIRD DECLENSION.—CLASS II.—I-STEMS.

155. STEMS ENDING IN I.—*Nouns in s and x generally preceded by a consonant.*

	Cliēns, M. <i>client.</i>	Urbs, F., <i>city.</i>	Arx, F., <i>citadel.</i>	Mūs, M. <i>mouse.</i>
	SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i>	cliēns	urbs	arx	mūs
<i>Gen.</i>	clientis	urbis	arcis	mūris
<i>Dat.</i>	clientī	urbī	arcī	mūrī
<i>Acc.</i>	clientem	urbem	arcem	mūrem
<i>Voc.</i>	cliēns	urbs	arx	mūs
<i>Abl.</i>	cliente	urbe	arce	mūre
	PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	clientēs	urbēs	arcēs	mūrēs
<i>Gen.</i>	clientium	urbium	arcium	mūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	mūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	clientēs, is	urbēs, is	arcēs, is	mūrēs, is
<i>Voc.</i>	clientēs	urbēs	arcēs	mūrēs
<i>Abl.</i>	clientibus	urbibus	arcibus	mūribus

1. Observe that these nouns are declined in the singular precisely like consonant-stems, and in the plural precisely like all other masculine and feminine *i*-stems.<sup>1</sup>

### 156. SUMMARY OF I-STEMS.—To I-stems belong—

1. All nouns in **is** and **ēs** which do not increase in the Genitive.

2. Neuters in **e**, **al** (for **ālis**), and **ar** (for **āris**).

3. Many nouns in **s** and **x** preceded by a consonant.

**Note.**—Many names of towns have a Locative (40, 4) ending in **i** or **e** in the singular and in **ibus** in the plural: **Tīburi** or **Tībure**, at *Tibur*, **Curibus**, at *Cures*.

### 157. VOCABULARY.

<b>fōns, fontis, m.</b>	fountain.	<i>fount-ain.</i>
<b>mōns, montis, m.</b>	mountain.	<i>mount-ain.</i>
<b>pōns, pontis, m.</b>	bridge.	<i>pont-oon.</i>
<b>ars, artis, f.</b>	skill, art.	<i>art.</i>
<b>mors, mortis, f.</b>	death.	<i>mort-al.</i>
<b>pars, partis, f.</b>	part.	<i>part.</i>
<b>urbs, urbis, f.</b>	city.	<i>sub-urbs.</i>
<b>arx, arcis, f.</b>	citadel.	
<b>aqua, aquae, f.</b>	water.	<i>aqua-tic.</i>
<b>frīgidus, a, um,</b>	cold.	<i>frigid.</i>
<b>ōlim,</b>	formerly, once upon a time.	

#### VERBS.

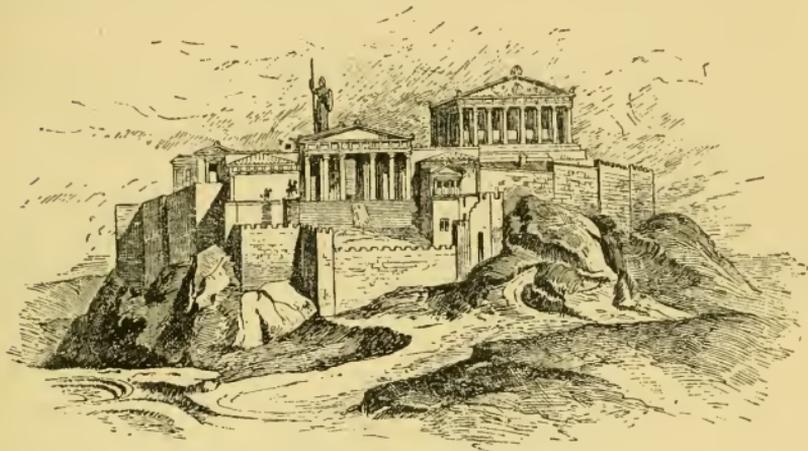
<b>aedificat,</b>	(he) builds.	<i>edifice.</i>
<b>aedificant,</b>	(they) build.	
<b>habitat,</b>	(he) dwells, lives.	<i>habita-tion.</i>
<b>habitant,</b>	(they) dwell, live.	

### 158. Translate into English.

1. **Ubi habitat medicus vester? In urbe nostrā habitat.**
2. **Est-ne pulchra urbs vestra? Urbs nostra saepe laudatur.**
3. **Sunt-ne multae urbēs in Americā? Americānī urbēs semper aedificant.**
4. **Ubi sunt statuae? Sunt in multis urbis partibus.**

<sup>1</sup> The stems are *clienti, client; urbi, urb; arci, arc; mūri, mūs.*

5. Sunt-ne montēs in Americā? Sunt montēs multī et altī.
6. In montibus sunt multī fontēs.
7. Fontēs aquae frīgidae animālibus grātī et ūtilēs sunt.
8. Ubī est Corinthus? In Graeciā est. Ōlim māgna et pulchra urbs fuit.
9. Ōlim fuērunt in Graeciā multae et pulchrae urbēs.



*The Acropolis, or citadel of Athens.*<sup>1</sup>

10. Germānī turribus altīs urbēs interdum ōrnant.
11. Omnēs artēs bonās doctī hominēs amant.
12. Multae artēs Graecīs et Rōmānīs nōtae fuērunt.
13. Arx Athēnārum alta et māgna fuit.
14. Ubī fuit templum Minervae? Nōn-ne in Graeciā fuit?  
In arce Athēnārum fuit.
15. Nostrī militēs fortēs māgnam urbis partem occupant.  
Occupant-ne pontem? Pontēs omnēs occupant.

**159.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Is not our fountain beautiful? Your fountain is large and beautiful.
2. There are ten large and beautiful fountains in our city.

<sup>1</sup> Crowned with temples and works of art. Notice especially the Parthenon, the temple on the right, and the statue of the goddess in front.

3. Is not our fountain often praised by the citizens? All the citizens praise your beautiful fountain.
4. The citizens are now adorning many parts of our city with fountains.
5. There were famous fountains in Greece.
6. Famous poets often praise beautiful fountains.
7. Our soldiers are seizing the citadel of the enemy.
8. Do not our brave soldiers fear death? They never fear the enemy.
9. The citizens are adorning their bridge with a large fountain.
10. The Germans adorn their large cities with statues and fountains.
11. The names of many famous cities are known to Henry.
12. Are many arts known to the Germans? All good arts are known to the Germans.

## LESSON XXXI.

## AN INTERESTING ANECDOTE.—THE PRINCE AND THE JUDGE.

## 160. VOCABULARY.

<i>apud, prep. with acc.</i>	before, in presence of, among.	
<b>Britannī, Britannō-</b> <b>rum, m. plur.</b>	the Britons, inhabitants of Great Britain.	
<b>catēna, ae, f.</b>	chain.	
<b>dēlic̄tum, i, n.</b>	fault, offense.	
<b>Gāius, iī, m.</b>	Gaius.	
<b>gladius, iī, m.</b>	sword.	<i>gladi-ator.</i>
<b>iūvenis, is, m.</b>	youth, young man.	<i>juveni-le.</i>
<b>post, prep. with acc.</b>	after, behind.	<i>post-script.</i>
<b>quārtus, a, um,</b>	fourth.	<i>quart.</i>
<b>quīntus, a, um,</b>	fifth.	
<b>tum, adv.</b>	then, at that time.	
<b>venia, ae, f.</b>	pardon, grace.	

## VERBS.

amāvit,	(he) loved.	
habuit,	(he) had.	
negat,	(he) denies, refuses.	<i>nega-tive.</i>
negant,	(they) deny, refuse.	
postulat,	(he) asks, demands.	
postulant,	(they) ask, demand.	
stringit,	(he) draws, unsheathes.	
vincit,	(he) binds.	

## 161. PRINCE HENRY AND JUDGE GASCOIGNE.

Henricus Quārtus, rēx Britannōrum, filium Henricum habuit.<sup>1</sup> Iuvenis ignāvus fuit et malōs comitēs amāvit.

Forte cīvēs Gāium amicum principis apud iūdicem fūrti<sup>2</sup> accūsant. Princeps Henricus veniam dēlictī<sup>3</sup> postulat, sed iūdex, vir fortis et bonus, veniam negat. Princeps igitur gladium stringit. Tum iūdex fortis iuvenem catēnīs vincit.

Post mortem patris, iuvenis Henricus, iam rēx creātus,<sup>4</sup> dat iūdicī māgna praemia. Nunc princeps Henricus et iūdex bonus ab omnibus cīvibus laudantur.

162. *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Quis fuit pater principis Henricī? 2. Nōn-ne fuit rēx clārus? 3. Nōn-ne rēx, Henricus Quārtus, ā poētā māgnō<sup>5</sup> laudātur? 4. Quis fuit Gāius? 5. Num rēx malōs principis comitēs amāvit? 6. Quis post mortem Henricī Quārtī fuit rēx Britannōrum? 7. Quis ab omnibus cīvibus nunc laudātur?

<sup>1</sup> Henricum, i. e., *prince Henry*, afterward *Henry Fifth*, King of England.

<sup>2</sup> Fūrtī; see foot-note on *fūrtī flōrum*, 140.

<sup>3</sup> Veniam dēlictī, *the pardon of the offense*, i. e., of the offense of his friend Gaius.

<sup>4</sup> Iam rēx creātus, *who was already king*; literally, *having already been made king*.

<sup>5</sup> Ā poētā māgnō; see Shakspeare's *King Henry the Fourth*.

## LESSON XXXII,

## THIRD DECLENSION.—GENDER.—PREPOSITIONS.

GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION.<sup>1</sup>

163. MASCULINES.—Nouns ending in **ō**, **or**, **ōs**, **er**, **es**, and in **ēs** increasing in the Genitive.

164. FEMININES.—Nouns ending in **ās**, **is**, **z**; in **ēs** not increasing in the Genitive, and in **s** preceded by a consonant.

165. NEUTERS.—Nouns ending in **a**, **e**, **c**, **l**, **n**, **t**, **ar**, **ur**, **us**.



*A Roman school.*

## 166. Examine the following sentences :

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Mārcus <b>ad</b> Carolum scrībit.  | <i>Marcus is writing TO Charles.</i>                |
| 2. <b>Apud</b> iūdicēs accūsātur.     | <i>He is accused BEFORE the judges.</i>             |
| 3. Puer <b>dē</b> virtūte scrībit.    | <i>The boy is writing ABOUT virtue.</i>             |
| 4. Militēs <b>prō</b> patriā pūgnant. | <i>The soldiers are fighting FOR their country.</i> |

In these examples observe—

1. That **ad**, *to*, **apud**, *before*, **dē**, *about*, and **prō**, *for*, are PREPOSITIONS.

<sup>1</sup> Nouns whose gender is determined by *Signification* (27) may be exceptions to these rules for gender as determined by *Endings*.

2. That the nouns after the prepositions **ad** and **apud** are in the *Accusative*, while those after **dē** and **prō** are in the *Ablative*. From these and other examples we derive the following rule:

**RULE XXXIII.—Cases with Prepositions.**

The *Accusative* and *Ablative* may be used with prepositions.<sup>1</sup>

**167. VOCABULARY.**

PREPOSITIONS WITH ACCUSATIVE.

<b>ad,</b>	to, toward, near, at.	<i>at.</i>
<b>ante,</b>	before, in front of.	<i>ante-room.</i>
<b>inter,</b>	between, among.	<i>inter-twine.</i>

PREPOSITIONS WITH ABLATIVE.

<b>dē,</b>	in regard to, concerning, about, from.	
<b>prō,</b>	for, in behalf of.	<i>pro-noun.</i>
<b>aquila, ae, f.</b>	eagle.	
<b>caput, capitis, n.</b>	head, capital.	<i>capit-al.</i>
<b>facilis, e,</b>	easy.	<i>facili-ty.</i>
<b>flūmen, flūminis,</b>	river, stream.	<i>flume.</i>
<b>Germānia, ae, f.</b>	Germany.	
<b>orbis, is, m.</b>	ring, circle, circuit.	<i>orb.</i>
<b>orbis terrārum,</b>	circle of the lands, the world.	
<b>schola, ae, f.</b>	school.	<i>school.</i>
<b>silva, ae, f.</b>	wood, forest.	<i>sylva-n.</i>
<b>terra, ae, f.</b>	land, earth.	

VERBS.

<b>dīcit,</b>	(he) speaks, talks, says.
<b>dīcunt,</b>	(they) speak, talk, say.

**168. Translate into English.**

1. Carolus, frāter tuus, dē leōnibus scrībit.
2. Quis dē avibus scrībit? Iūlia, tua soror, dē passeribus scrībit et multī puerī dē aquilā Americānā scribunt.
3. Nōn-ne tuus frāter ad tuam mātrem scrībit? Ad meam mātrem dē scholā scrībit.

<sup>1</sup> In the Vocabulary, each preposition, as it occurs, will be marked as such; and the case which may be used with it will be specified.

4. Praeceptor epistolam ad tuum patrem scribit.
5. Ubi est flumen Rhēnus? Rhēnus est inter Galliam et Germāniam.
6. Militēs fortēs semper pro patriā<sup>1</sup> fortiter pugnāt.
7. Nostrī mercātōrēs ante bellum erant beātī.
8. Ubi sunt hostēs? Sunt post silvam.
9. Virtūs militum ab orātōribus saepe laudātur.
10. Ubi est Mārcus? Est cum nostrō praeceptōre.
11. Vestrum opus, puerī, est facile.
12. Urbs Rōma caput orbis terrārum fuit.



Statue of Rome, mistress of the world.<sup>2</sup>

### 169. Translate into Latin.

1. Who is writing a letter to my father? Your teacher is writing a letter to your mother.
2. Who is fighting for liberty?<sup>3</sup> The slaves are fighting for liberty.
3. Is not the girl writing a letter to her mother? She is writing a letter to her sisters. She is writing about her many friends.
4. The sailors are talking about the ships.
5. The citizens are talking about the war.
6. Phidippus was a slave before the war.
7. The soldiers were happy after the victory.

<sup>1</sup> *Prō* with the ablative means *for, in behalf of, in defense of, etc.* Note the difference in meaning between *prō* with the ablative and the *simple dative*, denoting the *Indirect Object*; see 59.

<sup>2</sup> Seated upon the Capitoline Rock.

<sup>3</sup> Use *prō* with the Ablative.

8. All the citizens are talking about the bravery of our soldiers.
9. Who is accused before<sup>1</sup> the judge? A sailor is accused.
10. Where is your brother? He is in school.
11. What is your brother reading in school? He is reading the works of Caesar.

## LESSON XXXIII.

## SOMETHING ABOUT ANIMALS.

## 170. VOCABULARY.

<i>Āfrica, ae, f.</i>	Africa.	
<i>Asia, ae, f.</i>	Asia.	
<i>bēstia, ae, f.</i>	beast, animal.	<i>beast.</i>
<i>elephantus, ī, m.</i>	elephant.	<i>elephant.</i>
<i>India, ae, f.</i>	India.	
<i>onus, oneris, n.</i>	burden, load.	<i>oner-ous.</i>
<i>piscis, piscis, m.</i>	fish.	
<i>docilis, docile,</i>	docile, teachable.	<i>docile.</i>
<i>gravis, grave,</i>	heavy, weighty.	<i>gravi-ty.</i>

## VERBS

<i>arat,</i>	(he) plows.	<i>ara-ble.</i>
<i>arant,</i>	(they) plow.	
<i>portat,</i>	(he) bears, carries.	<i>porta-ble.</i>
<i>portant,</i>	(they) bear, carry.	

## 171. SOMETHING ABOUT ANIMALS.

Animālium genera varia sunt. Hominēs et bēstiae et avēs et piscēs sunt animālia. Rēx animālium est homō. Hominēs oppida, urbēs, nāvēs aedificant. Multī hominēs in urbibus habitant. Multī hominēs agricolae sunt; multī sunt militēs. Agricolae agrōs arant; militēs prō patriā pūgnant.

<sup>1</sup> Use *apud*; see 160. *Ante* is the ordinary word in the sense of *before* in time or place, while *apud* means *before, in the presence of, etc.*

Leō est rēx bēstiārum. In Asiā sunt multī leōnēs. In Āfricā et in Asiā multa sunt bēstiārum genera. Leōnēs in multīs Asiae partibus agricolās saepe terrent. In librīs poētārum multae sunt fābulae dē leōnibus. Multae dē leōnibus fābulae puerīs nostrīs nōtae sunt.

In silvīs Āfricae et Indiae sunt multī elephantī. Omnibus puerīs elephantī sunt nōtī. Multī elephantī sunt docilēs et ūtilēs. Onera gravia saepe portant.

Rēx avium est aquila. Multa sunt avium genera in multīs partibus Asiae et Āfricae et Eurōpae. In omnibus Americāe partibus sunt multae avēs. Puerī et puellae avēs pulchrās semper amant. Aquila Americāna omnibus puerīs Americānīs est nōta.

**172.** *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Sunt-ne multa animālium genera puerīs nōta? 2. Quid aedificant hominēs? 3. Ubī habitant agricolae? 4. Sunt-ne hominēs animālia? 5. Num omnia animālia sunt hominēs? 6. Num puerī fābulās dē leōnibus saepe legunt? 7. Nōn-ne discipulī dē avibus saepe scribunt? 8. Sunt-ne multae avēs in vestrīs hortīs?

## LESSON XXXIV.

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

**173.** Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes:

I. Those which have in the Nominative Singular three different forms—one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms—the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form—the same for all genders.

174. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS in this declension have the stem in **i**, and are declined as follows :

*Ācer, sharp.*

	SINGULAR.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>
	PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>	<i>ācrium</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ācrēs, īs</i>	<i>ācrēs, īs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

175. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS are declined as follows :

*Trīstis, sad.*<sup>1</sup>

*Trīstior, sadder.*<sup>1</sup>

	SINGULAR.			
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>trīstis</i>	<i>trīste</i>	<i>trīstior</i>	<i>trīstius</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>trīstis</i>	<i>trīstis</i>	<i>trīstiōris</i>	<i>trīstiōris</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>trīstī</i>	<i>trīstī</i>	<i>trīstiōrī</i>	<i>trīstiōrī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>trīstem</i>	<i>trīste</i>	<i>trīstiōrem</i>	<i>trīstius</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>trīstis</i>	<i>trīste</i>	<i>trīstior</i>	<i>trīstius</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>trīstī</i>	<i>trīstī</i>	<i>trīstiōre (ī)</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>trīstiōre (ī)</i>
	PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>trīstēs</i>	<i>trīstia</i>	<i>trīstiōrēs</i>	<i>trīstiōra</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>trīstium</i>	<i>trīstium</i>	<i>trīstiōrum</i>	<i>trīstiōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>trīstibus</i>	<i>trīstibus</i>	<i>trīstiōribus</i>	<i>trīstiōribus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>trīstēs, īs</i>	<i>trīstia</i>	<i>trīstiōrēs (īs)</i>	<i>trīstiōra</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>trīstēs</i>	<i>trīstia</i>	<i>trīstiōrēs</i>	<i>trīstiōra</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>trīstibus</i>	<i>trīstibus</i>	<i>trīstiōribus</i>	<i>trīstiōribus</i>

<sup>1</sup> *Trīstis* and *trīste* are declined like *ācris* and *ācre*. *Trīstior* is the comparative of *trīstis*.

<sup>2</sup> Inclosed endings are rare.

## LESSON XXXV.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

## 176. VOCABULARY.

<i>ācer, ācris, ācre,</i>	active, spirited, fierce.	
<i>celeber, celebris,</i>		
<i>celebre,</i>	frequented, populous, celebrated.	<i>celebri-ty.</i>
<i>celer, celeris, celere,</i>	quick, swift, fast, speedy.	<i>celeri-ty.</i>
<i>equester, equestris,</i>		
<i>equestre,</i>	of cavalry, equestrian.	<i>equestri-an.</i>
<i>pedester, pedestris,</i>		
<i>pedestre,</i>	of infantry, pedestrian.	<i>pedestri-an.</i>
<i>auxilium, iī, n.</i>	help, aid.	<i>auxilia-ry.</i>
<i>auxilia, plur.</i>	auxiliaries.	
<i>cōpia, ae, f.</i>	abundance, plenty.	<i>copi-ous.</i>
<i>cōpiae, plur.</i>	forces, troops.	
<i>Diāna, ae, f.</i>	Diana, the goddess of the moon.	
<i>Ephesius, a, um,</i>	of Ephesus, Ephesian.	
<i>nōmen, nōminis, n.</i>	name, title.	<i>nomin-ate.</i>

## VERBS.

<i>natat,</i>	(he) swims, is swimming.
<i>natant,</i>	(they) swim, are swimming.

## 177. SYNONYMS.

**Fortis, ācer ;** *brave, spirited.*

1. **Fortis ;** MANLY, STEADFAST, BRAVE, VALIANT—in character.
2. **Ācer ;** SPIRITED, FIERCE, BRAVE—in spirit and feeling.

178. *Translate into English.*

1. Nōn-ne Rōma est urbs celebris? Rōma antīqua fuit urbs celebris.
2. Corinthus fuit celebris Graeciae urbs.
3. In Ītaliā et Graeciā fuērunt urbēs multae et celebrēs.
4. Est-ne nōmen Caesaris celebre? Celebria sunt nōmina Caesaris et Cicerōnis.
5. Nōn-ne ducēs hostium sunt ācrēs? Sunt ācrēs.
6. Nostrī militēs sunt ācrēs et fortēs.

7. Sunt in nostrā urbe multae statuæ equestrēs.
8. Cīvēs equestribus statuīs dēlectantur.
9. Puerī dē equestribus statuīs saepe scrībunt.
10. In Eurōpā sunt multae urbēs pulchrae et celebrēs.
11. Rōma, celebris Ītaliae urbs, virōrum fortium patria fuit.
12. Equī celerēs dēlectant fortēs equitēs.
13. Equitēs ācrēs equīs celeribus dēlectantur.
14. Nāvēs clāssis Rōmānae celerēs fuērunt.
15. Clārum et celebre fuit templum Diānae Ephesiae.
16. Ubī est Carolus? In flūmine natat.
17. Puerī saepe in flūmine natant.

**179.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Where is the equestrian statue of the king? It is in our city.
2. Is not the king pleased with his equestrian statue? Kings are always pleased with equestrian statues.
3. Are there many equestrian statues in Europe? There are equestrian statues in many parts of Europe.
4. Do the enemy's cavalry (equestrian forces) fight bravely? They always fight bravely. They are brave and spirited.
5. The enemy praise our cavalry.
6. All the soldiers are speaking about the equestrian statue of the king.
7. The boys are writing about the temple of Diana.



*Diana, the goddess of the moon and of the chase.*

8. Our soldiers were brave and spirited.  
 9. Our brave soldiers are waiting for<sup>1</sup> your help.  
 10. Our brave and spirited leaders expect a speedy victory.  
 11. Are your horses fast? They are not fast, but they are large and spirited.  
 12. Was not Diana the sister of Apollo? She was the sister of Apollo.

## LESSON XXXVI.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

180. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING<sup>2</sup> generally end in *s* or *x*, but sometimes in *l* or *r*.

181. Audāx, *audacious*.<sup>3</sup>

Fēlix, *happy*.<sup>3</sup>

		SINGULAR.			
	M. AND F.	NEUT.		M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	audāx	audāx		fēlix	fēlix
<i>Gen.</i>	audāc <b>is</b>	audāc <b>is</b>		fēlic <b>is</b>	fēlic <b>is</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	audāc <b>ī</b>	audāc <b>ī</b>		fēlic <b>ī</b>	fēlic <b>ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	audāc <b>em</b>	audāx		fēlic <b>em</b>	fēlix
<i>Voc.</i>	audāx	audāx		fēlix	fēlix
<i>Abl.</i>	audāc <b>ī</b> (e)	audāc <b>ī</b> (e)		fēlic <b>ī</b> (e)	fēlic <b>ī</b> (e)
		PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	audāc <b>ēs</b>	audāc <b>ia</b>		fēlic <b>ēs</b>	fēlic <b>ia</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	audāc <b>ium</b>	audāc <b>ium</b>		fēlic <b>ium</b>	fēlic <b>ium</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	audāc <b>ibus</b>	audāc <b>ibus</b>		fēlic <b>ibus</b>	fēlic <b>ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	audāc <b>ēs</b> (is)	audāc <b>ia</b>		fēlic <b>ēs</b> (is)	fēlic <b>ia</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	audāc <b>ēs</b>	audāc <b>ia</b>		fēlic <b>ēs</b>	fēlic <b>ia</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	audāc <b>ibus</b>	audāc <b>ibus</b>		fēlic <b>ibus</b>	fēlic <b>ibus</b>

<sup>1</sup> Remember that *are waiting for* is to be rendered by a single Latin verb, and that the verb governs the Accusative.

<sup>2</sup> These are called adjectives of one ending because in the *Nominative Singular* they have only *one* form—the same for all genders. Thus, *audāx* may be *masculine*, *feminine*, or *neuter*; see 173.

<sup>3</sup> Observe that *ī* in the Ablative Singular, and *ia*, *ium*, and *īs* in the Plural, are the regular case-endings for *i*-stems. See 142 and 146.

182. *Amāns, loving.*

*Prūdēns, prudent.*

		SINGULAR.	
M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i> amāns	amāns	prūdēns	prūdēns
<i>Gen.</i> amant <b>is</b>	amant <b>is</b>	prūdēt <b>is</b>	prūdēt <b>is</b>
<i>Dat.</i> amant <b>ī</b>	amant <b>ī</b>	prūdēt <b>ī</b>	prūdēt <b>ī</b>
<i>Acc.</i> amant <b>em</b>	amāns	prūdēt <b>em</b>	prūdēns
<i>Voc.</i> amāns	amāns	prūdēns	prūdēns
<i>Abl.</i> amante ( <b>ī</b> )	amante ( <b>ī</b> )	prūdēt <b>ī</b> ( <b>e</b> )	prūdēt <b>ī</b> ( <b>e</b> )
		PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i> amant <b>ēs</b>	amant <b>ia</b>	prūdēt <b>ēs</b>	prūdēt <b>ia</b>
<i>Gen.</i> amant <b>ium</b>	amant <b>ium</b>	prūdēt <b>ium</b>	prūdēt <b>ium</b>
<i>Dat.</i> amant <b>ibus</b>	amant <b>ibus</b>	prūdēt <b>ibus</b>	prūdēt <b>ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i> amant <b>ēs</b> ( <b>īs</b> )	amant <b>ia</b>	prūdēt <b>ēs</b> ( <b>īs</b> )	prūdēt <b>ia</b>
<i>Voc.</i> amant <b>ēs</b>	amant <b>ia</b>	prūdēt <b>ēs</b>	prūdēt <b>ia</b>
<i>Abl.</i> amant <b>ibus</b>	amant <b>ibus</b>	prūdēt <b>ibus</b>	prūdēt <b>ibus</b>

**Note.**—The participle *amāns* differs in declension from the adjective *prūdēns* only in the Ablative Singular, where the participle usually has the ending **e**, and the adjective, **ī**.

LESSON XXXVII.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

183. VOCABULARY.

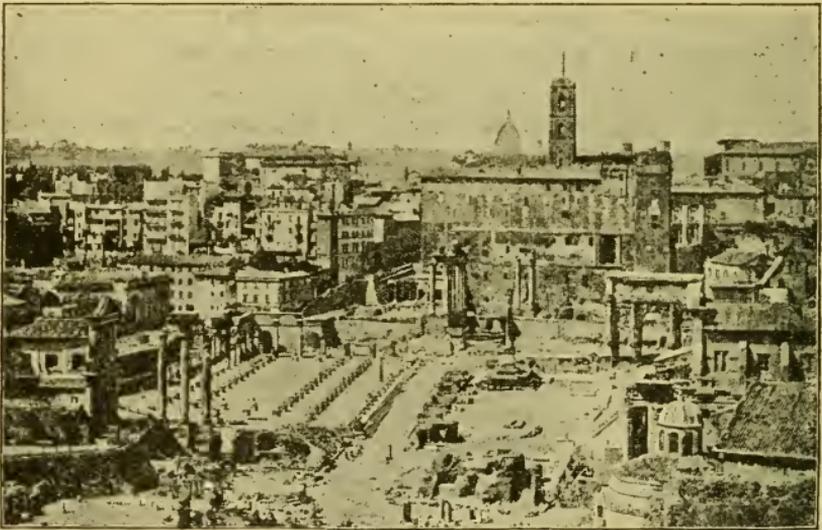
atrōx, atrōcis,	savage, fierce, cruel.	atroc-ious.
audāx, audācis,	bold, daring.	audac-ious.
īnfēlix, īnfēlicis,	unhappy, unfortunate.	
dīligēns, dīligentis,	diligent, industrious.	diligent.
ingēns, ingentis,	great, huge, vast.	
sapiēns, sapientis,	wise.	sapient.
campus, ī, m.	plain.	camp.
cōsul, cōsulis, m.	consul, a chief magistrate of the Roman Republic.	consul.
dea, ae, f.	goddess.	
dīvitiae, ārum, f.	riches, wealth.	
forum, ī, n.	forum, market-place.	forum.
improbus, a, um,	wicked, unjust.	
iūstitia, ae, f.	justice.	justice.
plērumque, adv.	generally, for the most part.	
pūgna, ae, f.	battle, fight.	pugna-cicus

**Marathōnius, a, um,**  
**Persae, Persārum, m. plur.**

of Marathon.  
 the Persians.

**184. Translate into English.**

1. Quis fēlix est? Hominēs boni plērumque sunt fēlicēs.
2. Hominēs improbi saepe infēlicēs sunt.
3. Quis discipulōs diligentēs laudat? Magistrī sapientēs discipulōs diligentēs saepe laudant.
4. Discipulī diligentēs ā magistrīs sapientibus laudantur.
5. Cōsul fuit sapiēns.
6. Apud Rōmānōs Minerva fuit dea sapientiae.



*The Forum, looking west.*

7. In fābulis poētārum Minerva est sapiēns et omnēs virōs sapientēs amat et laudat.
8. Habet-ne rēx multās nāvēs? Rēx Persārum ingentem nāvium numerum habet.
9. Atrōx fuit pūgna Graecōrum et Persārum in campō Marathōniō.
10. Ingēns fuit numerus Persārum in pūgnā Marathōniā.
11. Bella Graecōrum et Persārum fuērunt ācria.
12. Nōn-ne bella saepe sunt ācria? Plērumque sunt ācria.

13. Nōn-ne tempora nostra fēlicia sunt? Sunt fēlicia.  
 14. Ubī, Carole, est frāter tuus? Est in forō. Multī hominēs in forō sunt. Cōnsulem exspectant.

**185.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who was consul? Marcus, a good and wise man, was consul.
2. Does Marcus love his country? He loves his country greatly. Good and wise men always love their country.
3. Have the leaders of the enemy many soldiers? They have a vast number of soldiers.
4. Are the ships of the enemy large? The enemy have huge ships.
5. In the huge ships of the enemy are many daring sailors.
6. Do wise men often fear justice? Good and wise men do not fear justice.
7. Do not fathers often praise their diligent sons? Wise fathers often give rewards to their diligent sons.
8. Good and wise men are often praised by orators.
9. Where was the battle of Marathon? It was on (in) the plain of Marathon.
10. Where is the plain of Marathon? It is a celebrated plain in Greece.

LESSON XXXVIII.

*A DIALOGUE.*

**186.** VOCABULARY.

difficultās, difficultātis, <i>f.</i>	difficulty.	<i>difficulty.</i>
discrīmen, discrīminis, <i>n.</i>	distance, interval.	<i>discriminate.</i>
perturbātiō, perturbātiōnis, <i>f.</i>	confusion, disturbance.	<i>perturbation.</i>
prōmiscuē, <i>adv.</i>	confusedly, in confusion.	<i>promiscuously.</i>
remōtus, <i>a, um,</i>	separate, apart.	<i>remote.</i>
vīta, <i>ae, f.</i>	life.	<i>vitality.</i>

## VERBS.

<b>dēbet,</b>	(he) owes, ought.	<i>debt.</i>
<b>dēbent,</b>	(they) owe, ought.	
<b>tenet,</b>	(he) holds.	<i>tenet.</i>
<b>tenētur,</b>	(he, it) is held.	
<b>audiō,</b>	I hear.	<i>audi-ence.</i>
<b>lavantur,</b>	(they) are bathing. <sup>1</sup>	<i>lave.</i>
<b>sēparantur,</b>	(they) are separated.	<i>separate.</i>
<b>submergitur,</b>	(he) is sinking. <sup>1</sup>	<i>submerge.</i>
<b>sūperantur,</b>	(they) are overcome, conquered.	
<b>duae, fem. plural,<sup>2</sup></b>	two.	
<b>nūlla, fem. singular,</b>	not any, no.	
<b>quae, fem. singular,</b>	what?	

## 187. COLLOQUIUM.

RICARDUS ET HENRĪCUS, CONDĪSCĪPULĪ.

Ricardus.—Multitūdō hominum in flūmine est.

Henrīcus.—Sunt militēs et cīvēs. In flūmine lavantur.

R.—Partēs sunt duae<sup>3</sup>; nam māgnō discrīmine sēparantur.H.—Cīvēs ā militibus remōtī lavantur; nam nōn amantur  
militēs ā cīvibus. Ācrēs saepe habent contentiōnēs.R.—Clāmōrem audiō. Natat prōmiscuē militum et cīvium  
multitūdō. Quae<sup>4</sup> est causa perturbātiōnis?H.—Nūlla<sup>5</sup> est contentiō. Puer in aquā submergitur.R.—Iam puerī corpus ā militibus tenētur. Virtūtī militum  
et celerī auxiliō puer dēbet vītā suā.

H.—Nōn facile erat opus militibus.

R.—Virtūte difficultātēs omnēs facile sūperantur. Militēs  
mortem nōn timent.<sup>1</sup> Literally, *lavantur*, 'they are washed' or 'wash themselves'; *submergitur*, 'he is submerged.'<sup>2</sup> *Duae*, *nūlla*, and *quae* are here introduced simply as vocabulary words for present use. Their declension will be given later.<sup>3</sup> *Duae*, two, is an adjective in the nominative plural, agreeing with *partēs*.<sup>4</sup> *Quae*, what? is an interrogative adjective in the nominative singular, agreeing with *causa*.<sup>5</sup> *Nūlla*, not any, no, is an adjective in the nominative singular, agreeing with *contentiō*.

H.—Iam puer in insulā est. Militēs ā cīvibus laudantur.

R.—Multī urbis incolae iam circumdant puerum et militum virtūtem laudant.

**188.** Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.

1. Ubī sunt militēs? 2. Nōn-ne in aquā sunt? 3. Nōn-ne militēs cum cīvibus lavantur? 4. Num cīvēs militēs timent? 5. Nōn-ne cīvēs cum militibus contentiōnēs habent? 6. Nōn-ne contentiōnēs saepe sunt ācrēs?

## LESSON XXXIX.

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

**189.** The Latin, like the English, has three degrees of comparison—the POSITIVE, the COMPARATIVE, and the SUPERLATIVE—denoting different degrees of the quality expressed by the adjective:

altus,	altior,	altissimus,	<i>high, higher, highest.</i>
cārus,	cārior,	cārissimus,	<i>dear, dearer, dearest.</i>
levis,	levior,	levissimus,	<i>light, lighter, lightest.</i>
sapiēns,	sapientior,	sapientissimus,	<i>wise, wiser, wisest.</i>

**Note.**—The comparatives are all declined like *trīstior, trīstius*, see 175; *altior, altius, altiōris*, etc.; the superlatives, like *bonus, bona, bonum*, see 101.

**190.** From the examples given above, observe that adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings: <sup>1</sup>

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
ior	ior	ius	issimus	issima	issimum

**Note.**—The superlative is sometimes best rendered by VERY:

altissimus, *highest* or VERY *high*.  
cārissimus, *dearest* or VERY *dear*.

<sup>1</sup> But Vowel Stems lose their final vowel before these endings: *alto, altior, altissimus*.

Compare the following adjectives, and decline the comparative and the superlative :

doctus, <i>learned.</i>	audāx, <i>bold.</i>
fidus, <i>faithful.</i>	fēlix, <i>happy.</i>
fortis, <i>brave.</i>	prūdēns, <i>prudent.</i>

### 191. Adjectives in **er** are compared as follows :

ācer, ācrior, ācerrimus, <i>sharp, sharper, sharpest.</i>
celer, celerior, celerrimus, <i>swift, swifter, swiftest.</i>
liber, liberior, liberrimus, <i>free, freer, freest.</i>

**Note.**—In these examples observe that the comparative is formed regularly, as in *altus, cārus*, etc., but that the superlative is formed by adding *rimus* to the positive.

Compare **miser**, *wretched* ; **piger**, *indolent* ; **pulcher**, *beautiful*.

### 192. SPECIAL IRREGULARITIES OF COMPARISON.

bonus, melior, optimus, <i>good, better, best.</i>
malus, pēior, pessimus, <i>bad, worse, worst.</i>
māgnus, māior, māximus, <i>great, greater, greatest.</i>
parvus, minor, minimus, <i>small, smaller, smallest.</i>

### 193. Examine the following sentences :

1. Mārcus est melior **quam Caro-** *Marcus is better THAN CHARLES.*  
**lus.**
2. Mārcus est melior **Carolō.** *Marcus is better THAN CHARLES.*

In these sentences observe—

1) That in the first example the Latin construction is the same as the English, and that the two nouns compared, *Mārcus* and *Carolus*, are both in the same case.

2) That in the second example *quam*, meaning *than*, is omitted, and that the second noun is put in the *Ablative*. This Latin idiom is expressed in the following rule :

#### **RULE XXIII.—Case with Comparatives.**

I. Comparatives **with quam** are followed by the case of the corresponding noun before them.

II. Comparatives **without quam** are followed by the *Ablative*.

## LESSON XL.

## REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

194. Examine the following sentences :

1. Omnium **Gallōrum** fortissimī Of all THE GAULS the bravest are  
sunt Belgae. the Belgae.
2. Platō **Graecōrum** doctissimus Plato was the most learned OF THE  
fuit. GREEKS.

**Note.**—In these examples *Gallōrum* and *Graecōrum* are called PARTITIVE GENITIVES. *Gallōrum* depends upon *fortissimī*, used substantively,<sup>1</sup> the bravest, just as any Genitive depends upon the noun which it limits, according to Rule XVI; see 51. In the same way *Graecōrum* depends upon *doctissimus*. The Partitive Genitive always designates the WHOLE of which a PART is specified.<sup>2</sup>

## 195. VOCABULARY.

aurum, ī, n.	gold.	
nēmō, nēminī, nēmī- nem, m. and f. <sup>3</sup>	no one, nobody.	
praeda, ae, f.	booty, plunder.	preda-tory.
difficilis, difficile, <sup>4</sup>	difficult.	difficul-t.
praesēs, praesentis, <sup>5</sup>	present, at hand.	present.
pretiōsus, a, um,	valuable, precious.	precious.
Athēniēnsis, is, m.	an Athenian.	
Croesus, ī, m.	Croesus, king of Lydia.	
Sōcratēs, is, m.	Socrates, Athenian philosopher.	
Solōn, Solōnis, m.	Solon, Athenian lawgiver.	
autem, conj.	but, moreover.	
quam,	than.	
	VERBS.	
facit,	(he) does, makes, performs, celebrates.	
faciunt,	(they) do, make, perform, celebrate.	

<sup>1</sup> We shall soon see that *Adjectives* are often thus used *substantively*.

<sup>2</sup> Thus, *fortissimī*, 'the bravest,' form a part of the whole designated by *Gallōrum*; and *doctissimus*, 'the most learned,' a part of the whole designated by *Graecōrum*.

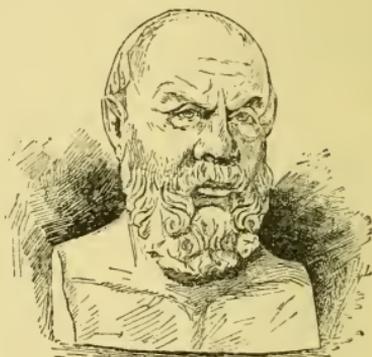
<sup>3</sup> *Nēmō* has only these three forms in use, the nominative, dative, and accusative singular.

<sup>4</sup> *Difficile* is the neuter; see 175.

<sup>5</sup> *Praesentis* is the genitive of *praesēs*, declined like *prudēs*, 182.

196. *Translate into English.*

1. Mūrus est altus; turris est altior; collis autem est altissimus.
2. Iūdex doctior est quam Titus.
3. Multī iūdicēs doctiōrēs sunt quam agricolae.
4. Nōn-ne doctus iūdex est sapientior quam rēx? Iūdex est rēge sapientior.
5. Rōmānī fuērunt fortiōrēs quam Graeci.
6. Graeci doctiōrēs fuērunt quam Rōmānī.
7. Sōcratēs fuit sapiēns.
8. Quis sapientior fuit quam Sōcratēs? Nēmō fuit sapientior. Sōcratēs omnium Graecōrum fuit sapientissimus.
9. Nostrī militēs hostibus fortiōrēs sunt.
10. Est-ne turris altior quam mūrus? Turris est altior mūrō.
11. Est-ne Mārcus sapientior quam Titus? Titō sapientior est.
12. Quid est pretiōsius quam aurum? Virtūs est aurō pretiōsior.
13. Nōn-ne libertās cīvibus cāra est? Est cārissima omnibus cīvibus.
14. Nōn-ne Vergilius fuit poēta clārus? Fuit clārissimus poētārum Rōmānōrum.
15. Omnium Ītaliae urbium clārissima est Rōma.
16. Militēs nostrī māgnū et difficile opus nunc faciunt.
17. Ingēns fuit praeda Graecōrum in pūgnā Marathōniā.
18. Tempora praesentia sunt fēlicia.
19. Solōn, vir sapiēns, ingentēs Croesī dīvitiās non laudat.



*Socrates, the Athenian philosopher.<sup>1</sup>*

<sup>1</sup> Socrates was one of the most remarkable men of his age, famous alike for his ugly physiognomy, his great originality, his intellectual power, and his upright life.

197. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Is the hill higher than the tower? It is higher than the lofty tower.
2. Who is more learned than the king? Many men are more learned than the king.
3. The Gauls were brave, but the Romans were braver than the Gauls.
4. Soldiers are sometimes braver than their generals.
5. Cicero was more learned than Caesar, but Caesar was braver than Cicero.
6. Was not Rome a beautiful city? It was a very beautiful city. It was the most beautiful of all the cities of Italy.
7. There were very beautiful cities in Greece. The cities, Athens and Corinth, were very beautiful.
8. There are very high mountains in Europe.
9. Where are the highest mountains? The highest mountains are in Asia and America.
10. Who was the most famous of Roman orators? Cicero was the most famous of all the Roman orators.
11. Our citizens are doing a difficult work.
12. Your work, boys, is easy and agreeable.
13. Who was Solon? He was an Athenian, a good and wise man.

## LESSON XLI.

*IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—ADVERBS.*

198. Most adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison.

1. The POSITIVE is formed—

1) From adjectives of the first and second declension by changing the stem ending **o** into **ē** :

**cārus**, dear, stem **cāro** ;

**cārē**, dearly.<sup>1</sup>

**lātus**, wide, stem **lāto** ;

**lātē**, widely.

---

<sup>1</sup> Here *o* of the stem *cāro* is changed into *ē*.

2) From adjectives of the third declension by adding **ter** to the stem :

**fēlix**, happy, stem **fēlici**;                   **fēlici-ter**, happily.<sup>1</sup>  
**prūdēns**, prudent, stem **prūdent**;   **prūden-ter**, prudently.<sup>2</sup>

2. The **COMPARATIVE** is the accusative neuter singular of the adjective :<sup>3</sup>

**lātior, lātius**, wider;                   **lātius**, more widely.  
**fēlicior, fēlicius**, happier;           **fēlicius**, more happily.

3. The **SUPERLATIVE** is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing the stem ending **o** into **ē** :

**lātissimus**, widest;                   **lātissimē**, most widely.  
**fēlicissimus**, most happy;           **fēlicissimē**, most happily.

4. Examine the following illustrations :

altus,	altior,	altissimus,	<i>lofty.</i>
altē,	altius	altissimē,	<i>loftily.</i>
pulcher,	pulehrior,	pulcherrimus,	<i>beautiful.</i>
pulchrē,	pulchrīus,	pulcherrimē,	<i>beautifully.</i>
fortis,	fortior,	fortissimus,	<i>brave.</i>
fortiter,	fortius,	fortissimē,	<i>bravely.</i>
prūdēns,	prūdentior,	prūdentissimus,	<i>prudent.</i>
prūdentē,	prūdentius,	prūdentissimē,	<i>prudently.</i>

**Note.**—The superlative of adverbs, like the superlative of adjectives, is sometimes best rendered by *very*: *fortissimē*, ‘most bravely’ or ‘VERY bravely.’

## 199. VOCABULARY.

<b>bene, melius, optimē,</b>	well, better, best.
<b>liberē,</b>	freely.
<b>studiōsē,</b>	eagerly, studiously.
<b>ācritē,</b>	sharply, vigorously.
<b>audācter</b>	boldly, desperately.
<b>breviter,</b>	briefly.
<b>dīligenter,</b>	diligently, industriously.
<b>sapienter,</b>	wisely.

<sup>1</sup> Here *ter* is added to the stem *fēlici*.

<sup>2</sup> For *prūdent-ter*.

<sup>3</sup> Thus the *neuter singular of the comparative* may be used either as an *adjective* or as an *adverb*.

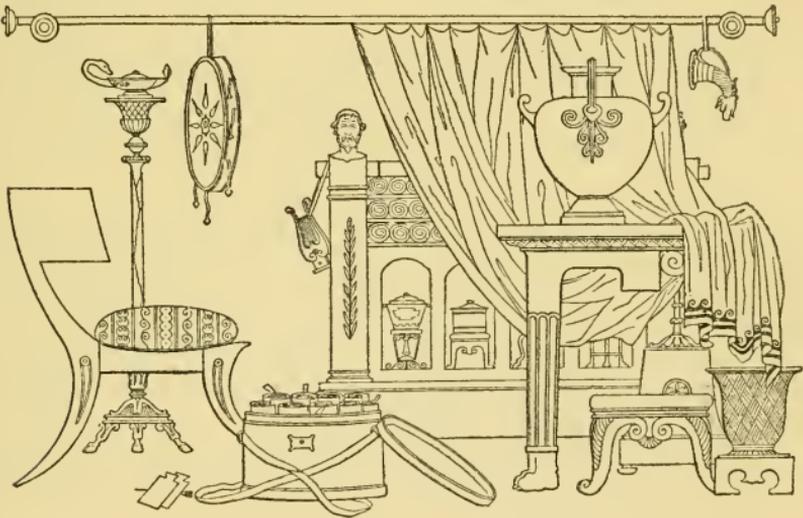
honestus, a, um,  
 nihil, *nom.* and *acc. sing.*  
 parvus, a, um,  
 sōl, sōlis, *m.*  
 que, *conj.*, enclitic,<sup>1</sup>

honorable.  
 nothing.  
 small.  
 sun.  
 and.

**Note.**—*Et* and *que* both mean *and*. *Et* is the ordinary connective in this sense, see 65; *que* connects words that are closely related in thought or use.

200. *Translate into English.*

1. Nōn-ne pāx est melior quam bellum? Pāx honesta est bellō melior.
2. Quid est melius quam aurum? Sapientia aurō melior est.
3. Quid melius est quam virtūs? Nihil est virtūte melius.



*A Roman study.*<sup>2</sup>

4. Est-ne māior terra quam sōl? Terra minor est quam sōl.
5. Rōma fuit urbs māxima et pulcherrima.

<sup>1</sup> That is, it is always appended to some other word: *virtūs-que*, 'and virtue.'

<sup>2</sup> Notice the rolls of papyrus, tablets, stilus or pen, receptacle for rolls, book-case, table, chair, lamp, etc.

6. Americānī optimās lēgēs habent.
7. Nostrī mīlitēs prō patriā fortiter pūgnant.
8. Rōmānī fortius quam Gallī semper pūgnant.
9. Multī mīlitēs prō patriā fortissimē ācerrimē-que<sup>1</sup> pūgnant.
10. Hominēs doctī dē librīs optimīs sapienter dīcunt.
11. Puerī epistolās studiōsē dīligerter-que legunt.
12. Epistolae ab omnibus puerīs dīligerter-que leguntur.
13. Multī discipulī dē orātōribus Graecīs et Rōmānīs optimē scribunt.
14. Omnēs mīlitēs dē ducibus audācter liberē-que dīcunt.

### 201. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The judge is a better man than his brother.<sup>2</sup>
2. Is war better than peace? War is never better than an honorable peace.
3. Were the Gauls better soldiers than the Romans? The Romans were always better soldiers than the Gauls.
4. Is Europe larger than America? It is smaller than America.
5. Are the ships of the enemy very large? The enemy have many very large ships.
6. Was not the city of Athens<sup>3</sup> very large? It was very large and very beautiful.
7. What is Charles now reading? He is very industriously reading the works of the best poets.
8. The poems of Homer and Vergil are most eagerly read by our best poets.
9. The general speaks very briefly about the battle of the cavalry.
10. The pupils write briefly about the works of Caesar.

---

<sup>1</sup> Notice the use of the conjunction *que*, meaning *and*, appended as an *enclitic* to *ācerrimē*, the superlative of the adverb, *ācriter*; see 199, note.

<sup>2</sup> Translate (1) with *quam* and (2) without *quam*.

<sup>3</sup> Latin idiom, *the city Athens*, not *the city of Athens*; see 45 and 51 with Rule II.

## LESSON XLII.

## THE FARMER AND HIS CHILDREN.

202. Examine the following sentences :

1. Sex filiī **cōnsulī** sunt. THE CONSUL *has six sons.*<sup>1</sup>
2. Multae nāvēs **hostibus** sunt. THE ENEMY *have many ships.*<sup>1</sup>

In these examples observe that the Possessor, **cōnsulī**, **hostibus**, is in the DATIVE. This construction is sometimes used in Latin when the English idiom would lead us to expect **habet**, **habent**, with the *Nominative* of the *Possessor*. In these and similar instances, the Latin admits of two constructions, the English of only one. Thus :

## LATIN IDIOM.

1. Sex filiī **cōnsulī** sunt.
2. **Cōnsul** sex filiōs habet.

## ENGLISH IDIOM.

- THE CONSUL *has six sons.*<sup>1</sup>  
 THE CONSUL *has six sons.*

**Note.**—The Dative, when used as in these examples, is called the DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR. It is only a modification of the INDIRECT OBJECT, with which the learner is already familiar.

## 203. VOCABULARY.

arma, armōrum, <i>n. plur.</i>	arms, weapons, armor.	<i>arms.</i>
benīgnus, a, um,	kind, obliging.	<i>benignant.</i>
liberī, liberōrum, <i>m. plur.</i>	children.	
paucī, paucae, pauca, <i>plur.</i>	few.	<i>pauci-ty.</i>
quattuor,	four.	
quīnque,	five.	
quot ?	how many ?	
sex,	six.	<i>six.</i>
et—et,	both—and.	

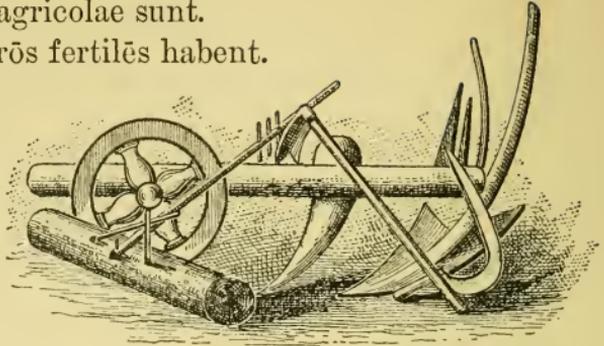
## VERBS.

nārrat, (he) tells, relates ;	nārrātur, (it) is told, related.	<i>narrate.</i>
nārrant, (they) tell, relate ;	nārrantur, (they) are told, related.	

<sup>1</sup> Literally, *six sons are to the consul ; many ships are to the enemy.*

204. *Translate into English.*

1. Agrī fertilēs Titō agricolae sunt.
2. Multī agricolae agrōs fertilēs habent.
3. Equī māgnī multīs agricolīs sunt.
4. Equī pulcherrimī multīs rēgibus sunt.
5. Multī rēgēs equōs pulcherrimōs habent.

*Agricultural implements.<sup>1</sup>*

6. Quot filiī sunt iūdicī? Iūdex quīnque filiōs habet.
7. Quot librī sunt praeceptōrī vestrō? Praeceptor noster multōs librōs habet.
8. Rōmānīs fuērunt lēgēs multae et ūtilēs.

205. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Our States have excellent laws.<sup>2</sup>
2. How many daughters has the queen? She has four daughters.<sup>2</sup>
3. How many sons has the farmer? He has six sons.<sup>3</sup>
4. Has your friend great wealth? He has not. Few men have great wealth.<sup>3</sup>
5. How many books have the boys? The boys have few books.
6. The learned judge has a great number of books.
7. Our soldiers have beautiful arms.
8. Hannibal had a large number of elephants in Italy.

## 206. THE FARMER AND HIS CHILDREN.

Mārcus est agricola. Homō bonus est et cīvis ēgregius. Sunt Mārcō duo liberī, Gāius et Iūlia. Liberī patrī suō cārissimī sunt. Gāius est poēta et agricola; agrōs arat et

<sup>1</sup> Notice the four implements combined in this group, the plow, the roller, the hoe, and the sickle. Notice also the three principal parts of the plow, the plowshare, the beam, and the wheel.

<sup>2</sup> Use Dative of Possessor.

<sup>3</sup> In these sentences use both constructions; see 202.

carmina Vergiliī studiōsē legit. Fābulās poētārum Graecōrum patrī suō nārrat, nam lingua Graeca Mārcō agricolae nōn est nōta. Carmina Homērī Gāium valdē dēlectant.

Paucī agricolae sunt doctī; paucī sunt poētae. Bonī poētae saepe sunt malī agricolae. Gāius autem et doctus poēta et industrius agricola est.

Iūlia, fīlia agricolae, pulcherrima est. Patrem suum amat. Mārcus suam fīliam semper laudat. Puellae pulchrae nōn sunt semper benīgnae. Puellae benīgnae nōn semper sunt pulchrae. Iūlia autem et benīgna et pulchra est.

**207.** *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Quis est Gāius? 2. Quis Iūliam semper laudat? 3. Num multī agricolae sunt poētae doctī? 4. Num multī agricolae carminibus Homērī dēlectantur? 5. Quis carminibus Homērī valdē dēlectātur? 6. Est-ne Iūlia puella pulcherrima?

### LESSON XLIII.

#### NOUNS.—FOURTH DECLENSION.

#### FOURTH DECLENSION: U NOUNS.

**208.** Nouns of the fourth declension end in

**us**—*masculine*; **ū**—*neuter*.

They are declined as follows:

Frūctus, *fruit*.      Cornū, *horn*.

	SINGULAR.	CASE-ENDINGS.	
<i>Nom.</i>	frūct <b>us</b> corn <b>ū</b>	<b>us</b>	<b>ū</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	frūct <b>ūs</b> corn <b>ūs</b>	<b>ūs</b>	<b>ūs</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	frūct <b>uī</b> , <b>ū</b> <sup>1</sup>	<b>uī</b> , <b>ū</b> <sup>1</sup>	<b>ū</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	frūct <b>um</b> corn <b>ū</b>	<b>um</b>	<b>ū</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	frūct <b>us</b> corn <b>ū</b>	<b>us</b>	<b>ū</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	frūct <b>ū</b> corn <b>ū</b>	<b>ū</b>	<b>ū</b>

<sup>1</sup> Thus *uī* is contracted into *ū*: *frūctuī*, *frūctū*.

	PLURAL.		CASE-ENDINGS.	
<i>Nom.</i>	frūct <b>ūs</b>	corn <b>ua</b>	<b>ūs</b>	<b>ua</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	frūct <b>uum</b>	corn <b>uum</b>	<b>uum</b>	<b>uum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	frūct <b>ibus</b>	corn <b>ibus</b>	<b>ibus (ubus)</b> <sup>1</sup>	<b>ibus (ubus)</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	frūct <b>ūs</b>	corn <b>ua</b>	<b>ūs</b>	<b>ua</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	frūct <b>ūs</b>	corn <b>ua</b>	<b>ūs</b>	<b>ua</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	frūct <b>ibus</b>	corn <b>ibus</b>	<b>ibus (ubus)</b>	<b>ibus (ubus)</b>

1. The STEM in nouns of the fourth declension ends in **u**: *frūctu*, *cornu*.

2. The CASE-ENDINGS here given contain the characteristic **u**, weakened to *i* in *ibus*, but retained in *ubus*.

**209.** SECOND AND FOURTH DECLENSIONS.—Some nouns are partly of the fourth declension and partly of the second.

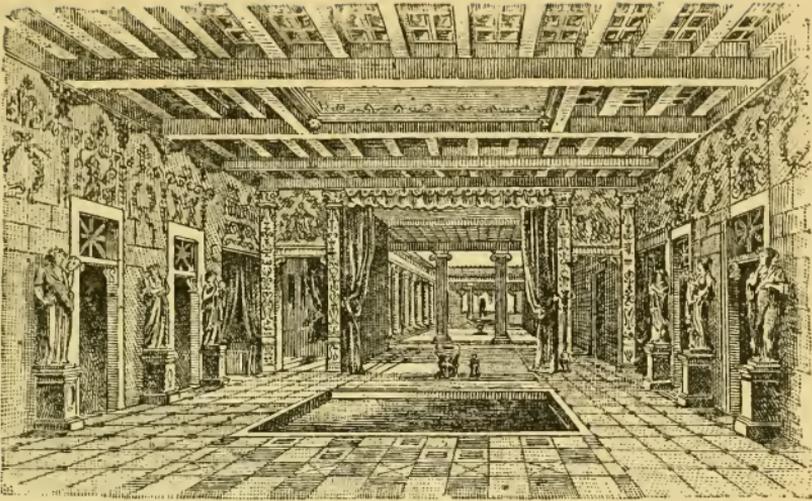
**Domus**, *F.*, *house*, has a Locative form **domī**, *at home*, and is otherwise declined as follows:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	dom <b>us</b>	dom <b>ūs</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	dom <b>ūs</b>	dom <b>uum</b> , dom <b>ōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	dom <b>uī</b> (dom <b>ō</b> )	dom <b>ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	dom <b>um</b>	dom <b>ōs</b> , dom <b>ūs</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	dom <b>us</b>	dom <b>ūs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	dom <b>ō</b> (dom <b>ū</b> )	dom <b>ibus</b>

## 210. VOCABULARY.

adventus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	approach, arrival.	<i>advent.</i>
cantus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	singing, song.	<i>chant.</i>
cōnspectus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	sight.	
domus, ūs, <i>f.</i>	house, home.	<i>dom-icile.</i>
exercitus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	army.	
lacus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	lake, pond.	<i>lake.</i>
manus, ūs, <i>f.</i>	hand, band, company.	<i>manu-al.</i>
portus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	harbor.	<i>port.</i>
prōgressus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	progress.	<i>progress.</i>
senātus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	senate.	<i>senate.</i>
ūsus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	use, experience.	<i>use.</i>
dulcis, <i>e.</i>	sweet, pleasant.	<i>dulce-t.</i>
ferē, <i>adv.</i>	almost, nearly.	
studium, īī, <i>n.</i>	desire, pursuit, study.	<i>study.</i>

<sup>1</sup> The inclosed endings occur in a few words.



Roman house.<sup>1</sup>

211. *Translate into English.*

1. Exercitus Rōmānus ā Gallīs timētur.
2. Hostēs nostrum exercitum, māximum et fortissimum, valdē timent.
3. In exercitū Caesaris fuērunt multī militēs fortissimī.
4. Adventus Caesaris exercituī semper fuit iūcundus.
5. Quis est optimus magister? Ūsus est optimus magister.
6. Discipulī in suīs studiīs prōgressūs faciunt.
7. Prōgressūs discipulōrum praeceptōrēs dēlectant.
8. In portū Athēniēnsium fuērunt multae nāvēs longae.
9. Ubī est tua domus, Mārce? In cōspectū urbis domus est mea.
10. Henrīcus, frāter meus, domum māgnam pulchram-que in urbe aedificat.

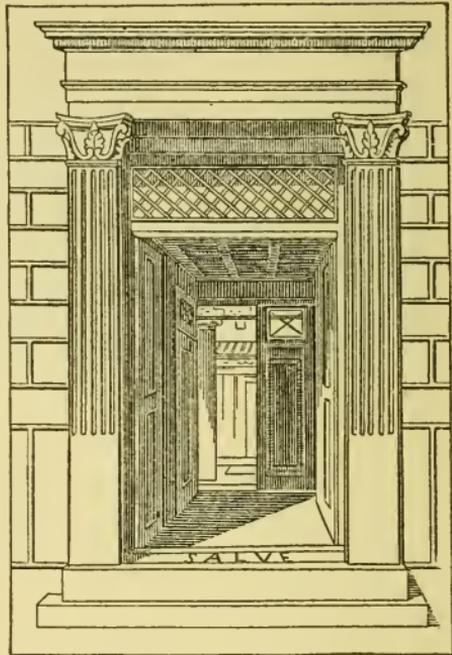
---

<sup>1</sup> Restoration of the interior of the house of Pansa at Pompeii. The various rooms of an ordinary Roman house were arranged around two courts or halls, partially open to the sky. The front court, called *ātrium*, forms the foreground of our picture and is also represented in 215. From the *ātrium* a smaller room or hall led to the second court, called *peristylum*, peristyle, which forms the background of our picture and is also represented in 216.

11. Ubi habitat frāter Titī? In urbe habitat. Est-ne domī? Est domī.
12. Rēx epistulam ad iūdicem manū suā scribit.
13. Avēs dulcē cantū hominēs dēlectant.
14. In Ītalīae montibus multī sunt lacūs.

**212.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Is not the house of the consul beautiful? It is very beautiful. There are many beautiful houses in our city.
2. The leaders of our army were very brave.
3. There were many very brave soldiers in our great army.
4. The use of elephants in battle was known to the ancient Romans.
5. The Romans are expecting the arrival of the enemy.
6. Is not the teacher delighted with the progress of his pupils? He is greatly delighted. All teachers are delighted with the progress of their pupils.
7. All our generals have very large experience.
8. Are there many harbors in Europe? There is a large number of excellent harbors in Europe.
9. In the large harbors of Europe there are always many ships of war.
10. Nearly all men are pleased with the singing of birds.
11. In the Roman senate were many wise men.
12. Charles, where are your brothers? They are at home to-day.



*Vestibule of a Roman house.*

## LESSON XLIV.

## NOUNS.—FIFTH DECLENSION.

## FIFTH DECLENSION: E NOUNS.

**213.** Nouns of the fifth declension end in **ēs**—*feminine*, and are declined as follows :

	Diēs, <i>day</i> . <sup>1</sup>	Rēs, <i>thing</i> .	
	SINGULAR.		CASE-ENDINGS.
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī or diē	reī or rē	ēī, ē
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī or diē	reī or rē	ēī, ē
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	rem	em
<i>Voc.</i>	diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	rē	ē
	PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diērum	rērum	ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēbus	rēbus	ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	diēs	rēs	ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diēbus	rēbus	ēbus

1. The STEM of nouns of the fifth declension ends in **ē**: *diē, rē*.

2. The CASE-ENDINGS here given contain the characteristic **ē**.<sup>2</sup>

**214.** VOCABULARY.

aciēs, aciēī, <i>f.</i>	line of battle.	
rēs, reī, <i>f.</i>	thing, affair, matter.	
rēs militāris, <sup>3</sup>	military affairs, military system.	
rēs pūblica, <sup>4</sup>	public affairs, republic.	<i>republic.</i>
spēs, speī, <i>f.</i>	hope.	
eottīdiē,	daily, every day.	
dīvīnus, a, um,	divine.	<i>divine.</i>
hūmānus, a, um,	human.	<i>human.</i>
porta, ae, <i>f.</i>	gate.	<i>porta-l.</i>

<sup>1</sup> By exception, *diēs* is usually masculine in the singular, and always in the plural.

<sup>2</sup> It is shortened (1) generally in the ending *ēī* when preceded by a consonant, and (2) regularly in the ending *em*.

<sup>3</sup> Literally, *a military thing or affair*.      <sup>4</sup> Literally, *a public thing or affair*

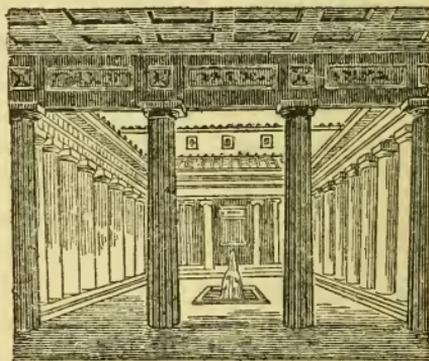
<i>sapientia</i> , ae, f.	wisdom.	
<i>scientia</i> , ae, f.	science, knowledge.	<i>science</i> .

## VERBS.

<i>ēdūcīt</i> ,	(he) leads out.	<i>educē</i> .
<i>ēdūcunt</i> ,	(they) lead out.	
<i>īnstruit</i> ,	(he) draws up, arranges.	
<i>īnstruunt</i> ,	(they) draw up, arrange.	
<i>portat</i> ,	(he) carries, bears.	<i>porta-ble</i>
<i>portant</i> ,	(they) carry, bear.	

215. *Translate into English.*

1. *Rēs pūblica nostra māgnō in periculō erat.*
2. *In virtūte cīvium spēs nostrae erant omnēs.*
3. *Nōn-ne Caesar aciem saepe īnstruit? Acies in cōn-spectū hostium cottīdiē īnstruitur.*
4. *Imperātor hostium omnēs cōpiās pedestrēs in aciem ēdūcit.*
5. *Hostēs spem salutis omnem in pūgnā nunc habent.*
6. *Militēs nostrī semper prō rē pūblicā fortissimē pūgnant.*
7. *Quis māgnum in rē militārī ūsum habet? Omnēs militēs nostrī māgnum in rē militārī ūsum habent.*
8. *Quis māximū in rē militārī ūsum habet? Caesar habet. Quid habet Caesar? Māximū in rē militārī ūsum habet.*
9. *Omnēs cīvēs dē liberā rē pūblicā nostrā māximam spem habent.*
10. *Virīs doctīs multae rēs nōtae sunt.*
11. *Quid est sapientia? Sapientia est rērum dīvinārum et hūmānarum scientia.*



*Atrium or front court of a Roman house.*

12. Virī doctī rem mīlitārem Rōmānōrum laudant.
13. In rē pūblicā Athēniēnsium fuērunt multī virī clārisimī.<sup>1</sup>
14. Rēs pūblica Rōmānōrum māximō in periculō erat. Hannibal erat ad<sup>2</sup> portās.
15. Nāvēs nostrae multōs mīlitēs portant.

**216.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who praises the military system of the Romans? The military system of the Romans is often praised by very learned men.
2. The general is leading out his army into line of battle.



*Peristyle of a Roman house at Pompeii in ruins.*

3. Do not our soldiers fear the enemy's line of battle? Our brave soldiers are never terrified by the enemy's line of battle.
4. Our hopes of safety are in the remarkable bravery of our soldiers.
5. The ships of the enemy often carry brave soldiers.

<sup>1</sup> See 119.

<sup>2</sup> See *ad*, 167.

6. Our soldiers always fight bravely for the safety of the republic.
7. All Americans have the best hopes of (concerning) the republic.
8. The republic of the Athenians was in the greatest peril. The Persians were at<sup>1</sup> the gates of the city.
9. The teachers all have great hopes of (concerning) their pupils.
10. Was not the king's house beautiful? It was very beautiful. Many kings have beautiful houses.

## LESSON XLV.

## A DIALOGUE.

## 217. VOCABULARY.

<i>cursus, ūs, m.</i>	course, running.	<i>course.</i>
<i>faciēs, faciēī, f.</i>	form, look, face.	<i>face.</i>
<i>fortasse,</i>	perchance, perhaps.	
<i>lēnis, e,</i>	smooth, soft, gentle.	<i>lenient.</i>
<i>mōtus, ūs, m.</i>	motion, movement.	
<i>puppis, is, f.</i>	stern.	
<i>stīpendium, iī, n.</i>	salary, pay.	<i>stipend.</i>
<i>stīpendia merēre,</i>	to serve in the army, be a soldier. <sup>2</sup>	
<i>vēlum, ī, n.</i>	sail.	
<i>meret,</i>	(he) deserves, earns.	<i>merit.</i>
<i>merent,</i>	(they) deserve, earn.	
<i>salūtat,</i>	(he) greets, welcomes, salutes.	<i>salute.</i>
<i>salūtant,</i>	(they) greet, welcome, salute.	
<i>āgnōscō,</i>	I recognize.	
<i>appropīnquat,</i>	(he, she, it) approaches, draws near.	
<i>appellunt,</i>	(they) bring to land.	
<i>dēlectābit,</i>	(he, she, it) will please.	
<i>trānsit,</i>	(he) crosses.	
<i>videō,</i>	I see.	
<i>vidēs,</i>	you see.	

<sup>1</sup> See 167.<sup>2</sup> Literally, to earn pay.

## 218. COLLOQUIUM.

DUO PUERĪ, ALBERTUS ET HENRĪCUS.

Albertus.—Vidēs-ne nāvem in lacū?

Henrīcus.—Videō. Partem exercitūs nostrī portat; nam māgnam mīlitum multītūdinem videō.

A.—Cīvēs adventum exercitūs nostrī exspectant. Nōn-ne Carolī frāter in exercitū est?

H.—Frederīcus, Carolī frāter, in exercitū stīpendia meret. Carolus adventum frātris suī cottīdiē exspectat.

A.—Fortasse in nāvī est.

H.—Adventus Frederīcī Carolum valdē dēlectābit; nam Frederīcus frātrī suō vītā<sup>1</sup> cārīor est.A.—Iam nāvis in portū est. Lēnissimō mōtū<sup>2</sup> appropīnquat.

H.—Faciem ducis āgnōscō. Altior et pulchrior est quam Frederīcus.

A.—Vidēs-ne Frederīcum?

H.—Videō. Frederīcus est in puppī.

A.—Prūdētissimō ūsū vērōrum nāvem appellunt.

H.—Carolus celerrimō cursū<sup>3</sup> pontem trānsit.

A.—Iam frātre in puppī videt et manū salūtat.

219. *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Quid vident Albertus et Henrīcus? 2. Quem exspectat Carolus? 3. Quis Carolō cārīor est quam vītā? 4. Quid portat nāvis? 5. Nōn-ne multōs mīlītēs videt Henrīcus? 6. Ubī sunt mīlītēs? 7. Quis pontem trānsit et Frederīcum salūtat?

<sup>1</sup> What change of case would be necessary if *quam* were here used? See 193.

<sup>2</sup> Lēnissimō mōtū, *with a very gentle motion*. Observe the use of the *Ablative* denoting the MANNER of the action. The Ablative, thus used, is called the ABLATIVE OF MANNER. It is used with *cum* or is modified by an adjective. See 279, Rule XXIV.

<sup>3</sup> Celerrimō cursū; why in the Ablative?

## LESSON XLVI.

*THE VERB SUM.*220. *Sum, I am.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT TENSE. <sup>1</sup>	PLURAL.
<b>sum,</b> <sup>2</sup>	<i>I am,</i>	<b>sumus,</b>	<i>we are,</i>
<b>es,</b>	<i>thou art,</i> <sup>3</sup>	<b>estis,</b>	<i>you are,</i>
<b>est,</b>	<i>he is;</i>	<b>sunt,</b>	<i>they are.</i>
IMPERFECT. <sup>1</sup>			
<b>eram,</b> <sup>2</sup>	<i>I was,</i>	<b>erāmus,</b>	<i>we were,</i>
<b>erās,</b>	<i>thou wast,</i> <sup>3</sup>	<b>erātis,</b>	<i>you were,</i>
<b>erat,</b>	<i>he was;</i>	<b>erant,</b>	<i>they were.</i>
FUTURE. <sup>1</sup>			
<b>erō,</b> <sup>2</sup>	<i>I shall be,</i> <sup>4</sup>	<b>erimus,</b>	<i>we shall be,</i>
<b>eris,</b>	<i>thou wilt be,</i>	<b>eritis,</b>	<i>you will be,</i>
<b>erit,</b>	<i>he will be;</i>	<b>erunt,</b>	<i>they will be.</i>

## 221. VOCABULARY.

<b>erās,</b> <i>adv.</i>	to-morrow.	
<b>erās māne,</b>	to-morrow morning.	
<b>herī,</b> <i>adv.</i>	yesterday.	
<b>herī māne,</b>	yesterday morning.	
<b>hīc,</b> <i>adv.</i>	here, in this place.	
<b>hodiē māne,</b>	this morning.	
<b>hodiē bene māne,</b>	very early this morning.	
<b>māne,</b> <i>adv.</i>	in the morning, early.	
<b>postea,</b>	afterward.	
<b>vehemēns, vehementis,</b>	strong, violent, furious.	<i>vehement.</i>
<b>ventus, ī, m.</b>	wind.	<i>vent-ilate.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Observe that we have in this table three different tenses: the PRESENT, denoting *present* time, the IMPERFECT, *past* time, and the FUTURE, *future* time.

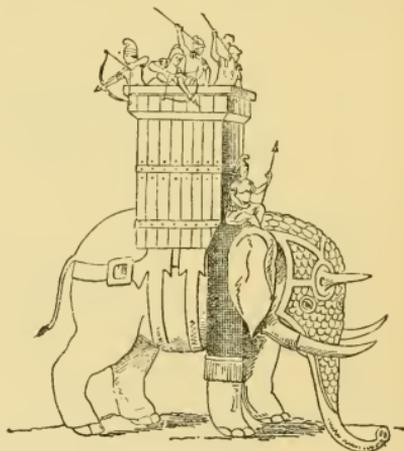
<sup>2</sup> Observe that in each tense there are two numbers, *singular* and *plural*, and three persons, *first*, *second*, and *third*. Thus, *sum* and *sumus* are in the *first* person, *es* and *estis* in the *second*, and *est* and *sunt* in the *third*.

<sup>3</sup> Or, Present, *you are*, Imperfect, *you were*, Future, *you will be*; *thou is* confined mostly to solemn discourse.

<sup>4</sup> Or *I will be*.

**222.** *Translate into English.*

1. Hodiē beātus sum, Carole, beātī sumus, beātus est pater, beātī sunt frātrēs.
2. Ubī herī erās, erātis? Domī herī eram, erāmus.
3. Ubī crās eris, eritis? Crās in scholā erō, erimus.
4. Hodiē, Mārce, dīligēns es. Hodiē, puerī, dīligentēs estis.
5. Ubī, Carole, Frederīcus crās erit? Crās Frederīcus et Titus in urbe erunt.
6. Herī pater meus domī erat. Erant-ne domī tuī frātrēs? Domī erant.
7. Ubī hodiē māne erās, Henrice? In hortō eram cum Fredericō.
8. Herī erāmus in urbe, hodiē sumus in hortīs avī; sed ubī crās erimus? Crās, puerī, in scholā critis.
9. Fābulae poētārum puerīs et puellis semper erunt iūcundae.
10. Opera tua, Caesar, hominibus semper erunt ūtilia.
11. Libertās patriae cīvibus omnibus semper erit cāra.
12. Rōmānīs fābulae poētārum Graecōrum erant nōtae.
13. Ventī herī māne erant vehementēs, sed hodiē vehementiōrēs sunt.
14. In exercitū Hannibalis multī fuērunt elephantī. Fuērunt-ne ūtilēs? Ad bellum elephantī ūtilissimī fuērunt.



*One of Hannibal's elephants.*<sup>1</sup>

**223.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Where are you, Charles? Here I am, in the grove with Henry.

<sup>1</sup> Partially protected by a coat of mail and bearing a tower filled with soldiers.

2. Boys, where were you this morning? Very early this morning we were at home.<sup>1</sup> Afterward we were in school.
3. Where shall you be to-morrow morning? To-morrow we shall be at (in) grandfather's house.<sup>1</sup>
4. Where are you now, boys? We are in the garden, father. The flowers are most beautiful.
5. Henry, shall you be at home to-morrow? I shall not be at home to-morrow; I shall be at my brother's house.
6. There were many brave soldiers in the army of Caesar.
7. There will always be brave soldiers in our army.
8. Were you, judge, in the city yesterday? I was not in the city yesterday, but I shall be in the city to-morrow.
9. You, judges, will always be faithful guardians of the laws.
10. The games of boys will always be interesting to teachers.
11. Our games are always interesting to the teachers.
12. Hannibal's elephants were very useful.

## LESSON XLVII.

THE VERB *SUM*.

224. *Sum, I am.*—STEMS, *es, fu.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT TENSE.	PLURAL.
<b>sum,</b> <sup>2</sup>	<i>I am,</i>	<b>sumus,</b>	<i>we are,</i>
<b>es,</b>	<i>thou art,</i> <sup>3</sup>	<b>estis,</b>	<i>you are,</i>
<b>est,</b>	<i>he is;</i>	<b>sunt,</b>	<i>they are.</i>
IMPERFECT.			
<b>eram,</b> <sup>2</sup>	<i>I was,</i>	<b>erāmus,</b>	<i>we were,</i>
<b>erās,</b>	<i>thou wast,</i> <sup>3</sup>	<b>erātis,</b>	<i>you were,</i>
<b>erat,</b>	<i>he was;</i>	<b>erant,</b>	<i>they were.</i>

<sup>1</sup> At home is *domī*; at or in the house (of any one) is *in domō*; at grandfather's house, *in avi domō*.

<sup>2</sup> *Sum* is for *esum*, *eram* for *esam*, *erō* for *esō*. The pupil will observe that the endings which are added to the stems *es* and *fu* are distinguished by the type.

<sup>3</sup> Or *you are*, and in the Imperfect, *you were*; *thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse.

SINGULAR.		FUTURE.		PLURAL.	
erō, <sup>1</sup>	<i>I shall be,</i> <sup>2</sup>	erimus,	<i>we shall be,</i>	eritis,	<i>you will be,</i>
eris,	<i>thou wilt be,</i>	erunt,	<i>they will be.</i>		
erit,	<i>he will be ;</i>				
PERFECT.					
fuī,	<i>I have been,</i> <sup>2</sup>	fuimus,	<i>we have been,</i>	fuistis,	<i>you have been,</i>
fuisti,	<i>thou hast been,</i>	fuērunt,	} <i>they have been.</i>	fuēre,	
fuīt,	<i>he has been ;</i>				
PLUPERFECT.					
fueram,	<i>I had been,</i>	fuerāmus,	<i>we had been,</i>	fuerātis,	<i>you had been,</i>
fuerās,	<i>thou hadst been,</i>	fuerant,	<i>they had been.</i>		
fuerat,	<i>he had been ;</i>				
FUTURE PERFECT.					
fuerō,	<i>I shall have been,</i>	fuerīmus,	<i>we shall have been,</i>	fuerītis,	<i>you will have been,</i>
fuerīs,	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>	fuerint,	<i>they will have been.</i>		
fuerit,	<i>he will have been ;</i>				
IMPERATIVE.					
Pres. es,	<i>be thou,</i>	este,	<i>be ye.</i>		
Fut. estō,	<i>thou shalt be,</i> <sup>3</sup>	estōte,	<i>ye shall be,</i> <sup>4</sup>		
	<i>estō, he shall be ;</i> <sup>3</sup>	suntō,	<i>they shall be.</i> <sup>4</sup>		
INFINITIVE.			PARTICIPLE.		
Pres. esse,	<i>to be.</i>				
Perf. fuisse,	<i>to have been.</i>				
Fut. futūrus esse, <sup>5</sup>	<i>to be about to be.</i>	Fut. futūrus, <sup>5</sup>	<i>about to be.</i>		

## 225. Examine the following sentences :

- |                              |                                   |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Gallia libera est.        | <i>Gaul is free.</i>              |
| 2. Gallia libera esse dēbet. | <i>Gaul ought to be FREE.</i>     |
| 3. Quintus iūdex est.        | <i>Quintus is judge.</i>          |
| 4. Quintus iūdex esse dēbet. | <i>Quintus ought to be JUDGE.</i> |

**Note.**—Observe that the adjective **libera** in the second example agrees with its noun **Gallia**, just as it does in the first ; see 74, Rule XXXIV ; and that the noun **iūdex** in the fourth example agrees in case with **Quintus**, just as it does in the third ; see 63, Rule I.

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note 2 on page 118.

<sup>2</sup> Or, Future, *I will be ;* Perfect, *I was.*

<sup>3</sup> Or *be thou ; let him be.*

<sup>4</sup> Or *be ye ; let them be.*

<sup>5</sup> *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus*. So in the Infinitive : *futūrus, a, um, esse.*

## LESSON XLVIII.

*THE VERB SUM.*

## 226. VOCABULARY.

anteā,	before, previously.	
currus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	chariot.	
glōria, ae, <i>f.</i>	glory, honor.	<i>glory.</i>
iūstus, a, um,	just.	<i>just.</i>
labor, ōris, <i>m.</i>	labor, toil, exertion.	<i>labor.</i>
praeclārus, a, um,	very renowned, very famous.	
Salamīnius, a, um,	of Salamis.	
sempiternus, a, um,	everlasting, perpetual.	<i>sempitern-al.</i>
unquam,	ever, at any time.	

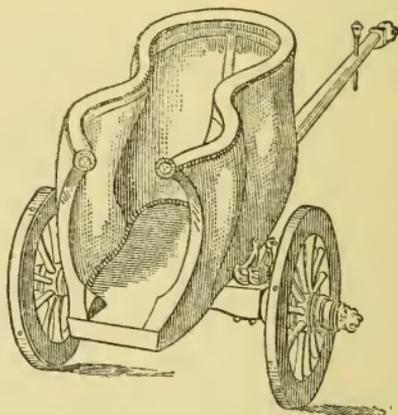
## 227. SYNONYMS.

*Aequus, iūstus ; fair, equitable, just.*

1. *Aequus* ; FAIR, EQUITABLE, IMPARTIAL.
2. *Iūstus* ; JUST, UPRIGHT, RIGHTEOUS.

228. *Translate into English.*

1. Ubī herī fuistī, fuistis? In silvīs fuī, fuimus.
2. Nōn-ne in Italiā fuistī? Saepe fuī in Italiā.
3. Num in Graeciā fuistis?  
Nunquam in Graeciā fuimus.
4. Ubī, Carole, hodiē fuistī?  
Hodiē māne in forō eram.  
Nunquam anteā fueram in forō. In forō hodiē sunt multī militēs.
5. Herī māne in monte altissimō erāmus. Num anteā unquam in monte altissimō fuerātis? Nunquam anteā fuerāmus in monte altissimō, sed saepe anteā in colli-bus altissimīs.



*A Roman chariot.*

6. Dīligēns fuistī, Carole. Tuī fuērunt labōrēs, tuum erit praemium.<sup>1</sup>
7. In pūgnā Salamīniā nāvēs Graecōrum celerēs fuērunt.
8. Glōria vestra, Graeci, māgna fuit, nam victōrēs Persārum fuistis.
9. Praeclārae fuērunt victōriae tuae, Caesar; ēgregia sunt opera tua; sempiterna erit glōria tua.
10. In scholā, mī fili, es dīligēns. Magister puerōs dīligentēs semper laudat.
11. Nōn-ne iūdex est iūstus? Est iūstus. Iūdicēs dēbent esse iūstī.
12. Frāter tuus dīligēns esse dēbet.
13. Este dīligentēs, puerī. Omnēs puerī dīligentēs esse dēbent.
14. Currus imperātōris erat pulcherrimus.

### 229. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Where have you been to-day, boys? We have been in grandfather's grounds. The flowers were very beautiful.
2. Where was your teacher yesterday? He was at home; he was ill. Is he often ill? He had never been ill before.
3. Soldiers, you have always been brave. Be brave to-day.
4. All soldiers ought to be brave.
5. The learned judge was in the forum yesterday. Had he ever before been in the forum? He had never before been in our city.
6. Your father was not at home yesterday; will he be at home to-morrow? He is at home to-day, but he will be in the city to-morrow.
7. You, judge, have always been the faithful guardian of the laws.

---

<sup>1</sup> Translate this sentence in the Latin order and observe that *tuī* and *tuum* are *predicate* adjectives, agreeing the former with *labōrēs*, the latter with *praemium*; see 23.

8. The games of pupils have always been interesting to teachers.
9. Your games, boys, ought to be interesting to your teachers.
10. Was not the king's chariot beautiful? It was very beautiful. Many kings have beautiful chariots.

## LESSON XLIX.

## ABLATIVE OF TIME.

**230.** Examine the following sentences :

1. **Eō tempore** domī fuī.            AT THAT TIME *I was at home.*
2. **Posterō diē** in urbe fuī.        ON THE FOLLOWING DAY *I was in the city.*

Observe that **eō tempore**, at that time, and **posterō diē**, on the following day, answer the question WHEN? and that they are both in the ABLATIVE without a preposition, although in the corresponding English the prepositions **at**, **on**, are used. This Latin usage is expressed in the following rule:

**RULE XXXI.—Time.**

The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative.<sup>1</sup>

**231. VOCABULARY.**

aestās, aestātis, <i>f.</i>	summer.	
brevis, <i>e.</i>	short, brief.	<i>brief.</i>
hiems, hiemis, <i>f.</i>	winter.	
mēnsis, <i>is, m.</i>	month.	
prōximus, <i>a, um,</i>	nearest, next.	<i>ap-proximate.</i>
quandō ?	when ?	

## PROPER NAMES.

Augustus, <i>ī, m.</i>	Augustus, first Roman emperor.	
Carthāgō, Carthāginis, <i>f.</i>	Carthage, city in Africa.	
Flōrida, <i>ae, f.</i>	Florida.	<i>florid.</i>
Perielēs, <i>is, m.</i>	Pericles, famous Athenian.	

<sup>1</sup> That is, by the Ablative *without a preposition*, though *in* is sometimes used with the Ablative to denote the *time* IN or WITHIN which anything is done.

December, Decembris, Decembre, <sup>1</sup>	of December.	<i>December.</i>
Februārius, a, um, <sup>1</sup>	of February.	<i>February.</i>
Iānuārius, a, um, <sup>1</sup>	of January.	<i>January.</i>

**232.** *Translate into English.*

1. Quandō, Frederīce, in Flōridā fuisti? Mēnse Februāriō in Flōridā fuī.
2. Quandō, amīcī, in Virgīniā fuistis? Mēnse Dēcembrī in Virgīniā fuimus.
3. Fuistis-ne in Ītaliā? Nunquam in Ītaliā fuimus, sed prōximō annō in Graeciā erimus.
4. Ubi, Carole, prōximō annō eris? In Flōridā erō mēnse Iānuāriō.
5. Temporibus<sup>2</sup> Augustī Rōma erat caput orbis terrārum.
6. Temporibus Periclis in rē publicā Athēniēnsium erant multī et clārī cīvēs.
7. Antīquīs temporibus multae nāvēs longae in portū Athēniēnsium erant.
8. Antīquīs temporibus māgna erat auctōritās Cicerōnis in senātū Rōmānō.
9. Hieme diēs brevēs, aestāte longī sunt.
10. Carthāgō tempore<sup>2</sup> Hannibalis urbs clārissima fuit.
11. Corinthus antīquīs temporibus urbs pulcherrima fuit.



*Augustus Caesar, the Roman emperor.*

**233.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Julia, when will you be in Italy? I shall be in Italy next year.

<sup>1</sup> Observe that these words are adjectives, and in designating months supply *mēnsis*. Thus the Latin for the English word *December* is *mēnsis December*; for *January* is *mēnsis Iānuārius*.

<sup>2</sup> *Temporibus* may be rendered *in the times*, *in the time*, or *in the age*. The Romans sometimes used the plural where we prefer the singular.

2. Where shall you be next winter? Next winter we shall be in Europe.
3. Where shall you be in February? In February we shall be in Sicily. Ætna is in Sicily.
4. When was your father in Florida? He was in Florida in January.
5. Have you ever been in Europe in the winter? We have often been in Greece in the winter.
6. In Greece are the days short in winter? They are very short in December.
7. In the time<sup>1</sup> of Pericles Athens was a most beautiful city.
8. In the time of Caesar the Germans were very brave.
9. In ancient times there were many beautiful temples in Greece and Italy.
10. The republic of the Athenians was very famous in the time<sup>1</sup> of Pericles.



*Pericles, the Athenian statesman.*

## LESSON L.

### A DIALOGUE.

#### 234. VOCABULARY.

<i>aedificium, ī, n.</i>	building, edifice.	<i>edifice.</i>
<i>circus, ī, m.</i>	circus.	<i>circus.</i>
<i>cūr, adv.</i>	why? for what reason?	
<i>ōrnātus, a, um,</i>	equipped, adorned.	<i>ornate.</i>
<i>pūblius, a, um,</i>	public.	<i>public.</i>
<i>spectāculum, ī, n.</i>	sight, spectacle, view.	<i>spectacle.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Use either the singular or the plural. See foot-note on 232, 5 and 10.

## 235. COLLOQUIUM.

CAROLUS ET FREDERICUS, CONDISCIPULI.

Carolus.—Ubi hodiē fuisti, Frederice? Ubi fuit avus tuus?

Fredericus.—In oppidō fui cum avō meō. Oppidum est pulchrum; aedificia pūblica sunt māgnifica.

C.—Fuistis-ne in forō oppidī?

F.—Fuimus in forō et in circō.

C.—Erant-ne multī virī in forō?

F.—Multī militēs, pulchrīs armīs ornātī, in forō erant. Spectāculum erat pulchrum.

C.—Fuerās-ne iam antea in oppidō?

F.—Fueram in oppidō cum amīcō nostrō. Sed tū cūr hodiē in oppidō nōn fuisti?

C.—Fui cum Mārcō, amīcō tuō, in pulchrīs hortīs avi mei. Mārcus avum meum amat et hortīs dēlectātur.

F.—Habet-ne avus tuus multōs flōrēs?

C.—Habet multōs et pulchrōs flōrēs in suis hortīs.

236. *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Ubi hodiē fuit avus Frederici? 2. Num Carolus hodiē in oppidō fuit? 3. Ubi Carolus hodiē fuit? 4. Ubi militēs hodiē fuerunt? 5. Quis est Mārcus? 6. Quis habet multōs flōrēs in suis hortīs?

## LESSON LI.

A DIALOGUE.

237. Examine the following sentences:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <b>Esse domi</b> iucundum est.            | TO BE AT HOME <i>is pleasant.</i><br><i>It is pleasant</i> TO BE AT HOME.                           |
| 2. <b>Nōn fuisse in scholā</b> molestum est. | NOT TO HAVE BEEN IN SCHOOL <i>is annoying.</i><br><i>It is annoying</i> NOT TO HAVE BEEN IN SCHOOL. |

You have already learned that *esse*, *to be*, and *fuisse*, *to have been*, are infinitives. In the examples observe that these infinitives with their accompanying words, *domī* and *nōn in scholā*, are the SUBJECTS of the sentences. *Infinitives* and *clauses* are sometimes thus used as SUBJECTS. They are then treated as nouns in the neuter gender. Thus in the examples the subjects, *esse domī*, *to be at home*, and *nōn fuisse in scholā*, *not to have been in school*, are used as *neuter nouns*; and the adjectives, *iūcundum* and *molestum*, are accordingly *neuter*.

## 238. VOCABULARY.

contentus, a, um,	satisfied, pleased.	<i>contented.</i>
ecce,	behold! look!	
fera, ae, f.	wild beast, wild animal.	
hāc, abl. sing. fem.	this.	
molestus, a, um,	troublesome, annoying.	<i>molest.</i>
nox, noctis, f.	night.	<i>noc-turnal.</i>
Ō,	O! oh!	
pompa, ae, f.	procession.	<i>pomp.</i>
quam,	how.	
satius,	better, preferable.	
spectātiō, spectātiōnis, f.	exhibition, sight, show.	
spectātor, spectātōris, m.	looker-on, spectator.	<i>spectator.</i>
tālis, tāle,	such.	
relinquunt,	(they) leave.	<i>relinquish.</i>

## 239. COLLOQUIUM.

ALBERTUS ET HENRĪCUS, CONDISCIPULĪ.

Albertus.—Fuistī-ne herī in circō?

Henrīcus.—Fuī in circō cum patre meō.

A.—Pater-ne tuus tālī spectāculō dēlectātur?

H.—Saepe dēlectātur. Herī valdē contentus fuit; nam ferae in circō erant pulcherrimae. Pulchriōrēs ferae nunquam in oppidō fuērunt.

A.—Erant-ne multī in circō spectātōrēs?

H.—Multitūdō ingēns erat in circō.

A.—Erō hāc nocte<sup>1</sup> in circō.

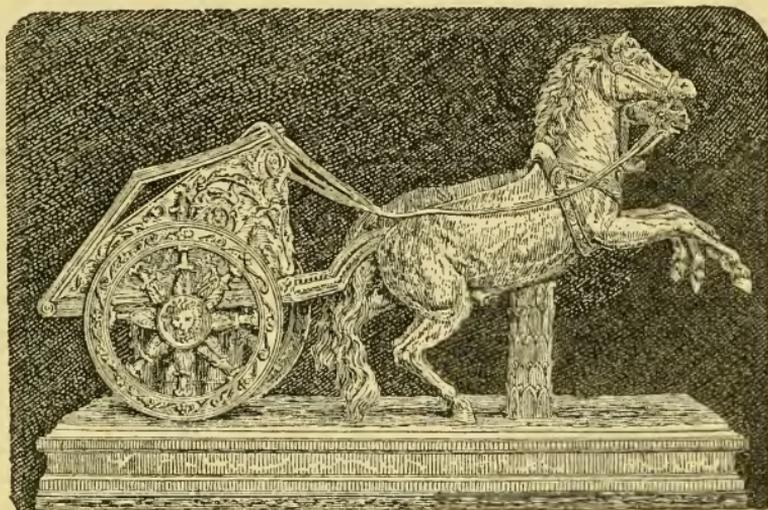
<sup>1</sup> *Hāc nocte*; literally, *this night*, i. e., to-night, or this evening. Ablative of Time; see 230, Rule XXXI. *Hāc* is in the ablative singular, feminine, and agrees with *nocte*.

II.—Spectātiō in circō hāc nocte nūlla erit; nam hominēs et equī et ferae urbem hodiē relinquunt. Ecce, multitudō est in viā pūblicā. Est pompa hominum et animālium. Multī sunt currūs in pompā cum equīs pulcherrimīs. Urbem relinquunt.

A.—Ō, quam molestum est nōn fuisse in circō. Nunquam in circō fuī.

II.—Nōn fuisse in circō satius est quam nōn fuisse in scholā.

A.—In scholā autem semper sum.



*Chariot and horses, the famous Bīga of the Vatican.*<sup>1</sup>

**240.** *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Ubī Albertus herī fuit? 2. Erant-ne in pompā multī et pulcherrimī equī? 3. Nōn-ne spectātōrēs in circō spectāculō dēlectantur? 4. Nōn-ne herī in oppidō fuistis? 5. Est-ne molestum nōn fuisse in scholā? 6. Eritis-ne in oppidō hāc nocte?

<sup>1</sup> The *Bīga* is of marble, and is richly decorated in relief with rosettes, foliage, and ears of corn.

## LESSON LII.

## VERBS.—FIRST CONJUGATION.

**241.** Regular verbs are conjugated in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations.

**242.** Four forms are called from their importance the Principal Parts of the verb. These forms in the verb **amō**, *I love*, are as follows:

**amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum.**

**Note.**—**Amō**, *I love*, is the PRESENT INDICATIVE; **amāre**, *to love*, the PRESENT INFINITIVE; **amāvī**, *I have loved*, the PERFECT INDICATIVE; and **amātum**, *to love or loved*, may be either the SUPINE, a kind of verbal noun, or the PERFECT-PASSIVE PARTICIPLE NEUTER.

**243.** The ENTIRE CONJUGATION of any regular verb may be readily formed from the Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.<sup>1</sup>

## FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

**244.** ACTIVE VOICE.—Amō, *I love*. PRESENT STEM, *amā*.<sup>2</sup>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT TENSE.	PLURAL.
amō, <sup>2</sup>	<i>I love,</i> <sup>3</sup>	amāmus,	<i>we love,</i>
amās,	<i>you love,</i> <sup>4</sup>	amātis,	<i>you love,</i>
amat,	<i>he loves;</i>	amant,	<i>they love.</i>
IMPERFECT.			
amābam,	<i>I was loving,</i> <sup>3</sup>	amābāmus,	<i>we were loving,</i>
amābās,	<i>you were loving,</i>	amābātis,	<i>you were loving,</i>
amābat,	<i>he was loving;</i>	amābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>
FUTURE.			
amābō,	<i>I shall love,</i> <sup>5</sup>	amābimus,	<i>we shall love,</i>
amābis,	<i>you will love,</i>	amābitis,	<i>you will love,</i>
amābit,	<i>he will love;</i>	amābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

<sup>1</sup> In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings which distinguish the various forms are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

<sup>2</sup> The final *ā* of the stem disappears in *amō*.

<sup>3</sup> Or *I am loving, I do love*. Imperfect, *I loved, I was loving, I did love*.

<sup>4</sup> Or *thou lovest*. So in the other tenses, *thou wast loving, thou wilt love*, etc.

<sup>5</sup> Or *I will love*.

SINGULAR.		IMPERATIVE.	PLURAL.	
<i>Pres.</i>	am <b>ā</b> ,	<i>love thou ;</i>	am <b>āte</b> ,	<i>love ye.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	am <b>ātō</b> ,	<i>thou shalt love,</i>	am <b>ātōte</b> ,	<i>ye shall love,<sup>1</sup></i>
	am <b>ātō</b> ,	<i>he shall love ;</i>	am <b>antō</b> ,	<i>they shall love.</i>
INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.		
<i>Pres.</i>	am <b>āre</b> ,	<i>to love.</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	am <b>āns</b> , <sup>2</sup> <i>loving.</i>

## LESSON LIII.

## VERBS.—FIRST CONJUGATION.

## 245. VOCABULARY.

accūsō, accūsāre, <sup>3</sup>	to accuse, censure.	<i>accuse.</i>
ambulō, ambulāre,	to walk, take a walk.	
amō, amāre,	to love.	<i>am-iable,</i>
expectō, expectāre,	to expect, await, wait for.	<i>expect.</i>
habitō, habitāre,	to live, dwell, inhabit.	<i>in-habit.</i>
laudō, laudāre,	to praise, laud, extol.	<i>laud.</i>
nāvigō, nāvigāre,	to sail, cruise.	<i>naviga-te.</i>
pūgnō, pūgnāre,	to fight.	<i>pugna-cious.</i>
renovō, renovāre,	to repair, restore, renew.	<i>renew.</i>
eō, <sup>4</sup>	that.	
eō tempore, <sup>4</sup>	at that time.	
frūstrā, <i>adv.</i>	in vain.	<i>frustra-te.</i>

## 246. Translate into English.

1. Quid exspectās, exspectātis? Epistulās exspectō, exspectāmus.

<sup>1</sup> The Future may be rendered also like the Present in the second person ; as, *love thou, love ye*, and by *let* in the third person ; as, *let him love, let them love*.

<sup>2</sup> For declension, see 182.

<sup>3</sup> For the present the vocabularies will give the present indicative, as *accūsō*, and the present infinitive, as *accūsāre*. From these two forms the learner will readily obtain in any verb of this conjugation any and all of the forms given in 244 for the verb *amō*.

<sup>4</sup> *Eō* is a demonstrative pronoun in the ablative singular neuter, agreeing with *tempore* ; see 390.

2. Quid laudās, laudātis? Virtūtem laudō, laudāmus.
3. Quid exspectat, exspectant? Praemia semper exspectat, exspectant.
4. Quem amās, amābās, amābis? Patrem meum amō, amābam, amābō.
5. Quid amātis, amābātis, amābitis? Patriam amāmus, amābāmus, amābimus.
6. Quem accūsāt, accūsābat, accūsābit? Nautam omnēs cīvēs accūsant, accūsābant, accūsābunt.
7. Quem laudātis, laudābātis, laudābitis? Iūstissimum iūdicem laudāmus, laudābāmus, laudābimus.
8. Quem laudāre dēbet? Iūdicem omnēs cīvēs laudāre dēbent.
9. Fortem mīlitem laudā, Carole, laudāte, discipulī omnēs.
10. Nautae audācēs in marī nāvīgantēs māgnō in perīculō sunt.
11. Epistolam tuam, cārissime amīce, herī exspectābam et frūstrā exspectābam.
12. Hieme iūcundum est in urbe habitāre.
13. Nōn-ne Homērum laudātis? Homērum, poētam clārissimum, laudāmus et semper laudābimus.
14. Caesar ambulāns epistolam scrībit.
15. Multī hominēs in domibus pulchrīs habitant.
16. Hostēs bellum renovābant.
17. Eō tempore mīlitēs nostrī adventum Caesaris frūstrā exspectābant.

**247.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Charles, where do you live in winter? In winter I live in the city.
2. My friends, where are you living now? We are living in Virginia.
3. Julia, where are your brothers living? In winter my brothers live in Florida.

4. Frederick, whom were you praising yesterday? I was praising my teacher; I always love and praise my teachers.
5. Where were you, Julia, this morning? I was taking a walk with my sister.
6. Boys, for whom are you waiting? We are waiting for father. Where is your father? He is in the garden.
7. Charles, do you ever sail on the lake? I shall sail on the lake to-morrow. It is delightful to sail on the lake in summer.
8. The Athenians were fighting bravely on the plain of Marathon.
9. Soldiers, fight bravely for your country.
10. Our soldiers, fighting bravely for their country, are in great danger.

## LESSON LIV.

## A DIALOGUE.

## 248. VOCABULARY.

dēlectō, dēlectāre,	to delight, please.	<i>delight.</i>
mūtō, mūtāre,	to change, alter.	<i>muta-ble.</i>
spectō, spectāre,	to look at, view, watch.	<i>specta-cle.</i>
ego,	I.	
tū,	thou, you.	
amplus, a, um,	great, spacious, broad.	<i>ample.</i>
commodum, ī, n.	convenience, advantage.	<i>commod-ity.</i>
etiam, <i>adv.</i>	even, also.	
nūper, <i>adv.</i>	recently, lately.	
oculus, ī, m.	eye.	<i>ocul-ist.</i>
per, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	through, during.	
pūrus, a, um,	clean, pure.	<i>pure.</i>
rīvus, ī, m.	stream, brook.	<i>river.</i>
rūsticus, a, um,	of the country, rural, rustic.	<i>rustic.</i>
sententia, ae, f.	opinion, idea.	<i>sentence.</i>
umbra, ae, f.	shade.	<i>umbr-ella.</i>
urbānus, a, um,	of the city.	<i>sub-urban.</i>

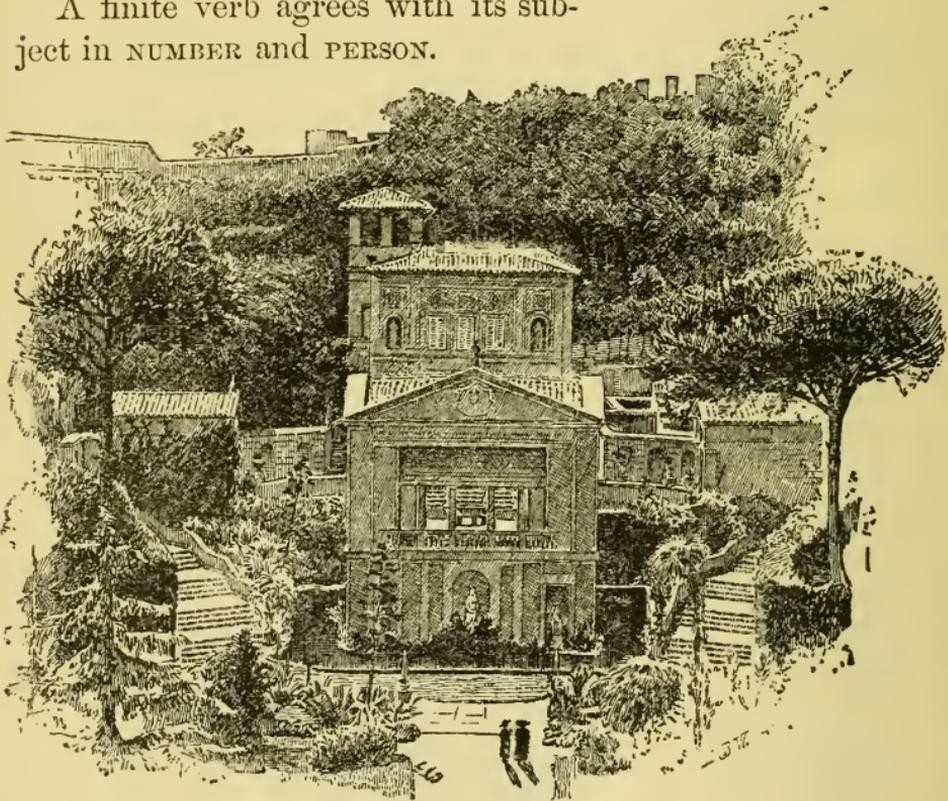
## 249. Examine the following sentences :

- |                           |                                       |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Ego rēginam laudō.     | <i>I PRAISE the queen.</i>            |
| 2. Tū rēginam laudās.     | <i>You PRAISE the queen.</i>          |
| 3. Rēx rēginam laudat.    | <i>The king PRAISES the queen.</i>    |
| 4. Cīvēs rēginam laudant. | <i>The citizens PRAISE the queen.</i> |

In these sentences observe that the verbs are all in the same NUMBER and PERSON as their *subjects*. Thus *laudō* is in the first person singular like its subject *ego*; *laudās*, in the second person singular like *tū*; *laudat*, in the third person singular like *rēx*; and *laudant*, in the third person plural like *cīvēs*. This Latin usage is expressed in the following rule:

**RULE XXXVI.—Agreement of Verb with Subject.**

A finite verb agrees with its subject in NUMBER and PERSON.



*An ancient country-house.<sup>1</sup>*

<sup>1</sup> Taken by permission from Lanciani's *Ancient Rome*. It is a scene from the Vatican Gardens, pronounced by Professor Lanciani "a perfect image of an ancient country-house."

## 250. COLLOQUIUM.

CAROLUS ET FREDERICUS.

Carolus.—Multī hominēs vītam nautārum laudant. Avus tuus vītam rūsticam laudat. Quid tū laudās?

Fredericus.—Avus meus est agricola et ego agricola erō. Laudāmus agrōs, umbram silvārum, aquam pūram rīvōrum.

C.—Nūper laudābās oppidum et commoda vītae urbānae. Cūr sententiam tuam mūtās?

F.—Nūper laudābam oppidum et etiam nunc laudō. Sententiam meam nōn mūtō. Multa sunt commoda vītae urbānae, sed vīta agricolārum mē valdē dēlectat. Ego vītam rūsticam semper laudābō. Nōn-ne tū et tuus frāter vītam urbānam semper laudābitis?<sup>1</sup>

C.—Vītam urbānam semper laudābimus; in urbe semper habitābimus, per viās amplās ambulābimus, aedificia pulchra spectābimus; statuae ēgregiae oculōs nostrōs dēlectābunt.



Statue of Pudicitia, the goddess of modesty and chastity.

251. Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.

1. Habitātis-ne, puerī, in urbe? 2. Quis in urbe habitābit? 3. Num laudās vītam nautārum? 4. Num laudātis vītam nautārum? 5. Amās-ne patriam nostram?

<sup>1</sup> Observe that *laudābitis*, agreeing conjointly with the two subjects *tū* and *frāter*, is (1) in the plural number and (2) in the first person. This is the general usage. With subjects differing in person, the verb takes the first person if one of the subjects is of that person, otherwise it takes the second.

## LESSON LV.

## THE FARMER AND THE SAILOR.

## 252. VOCABULARY.

exclāmō, āre, <sup>1</sup>	to call out, cry aloud.	<i>exclaim.</i>
invītō, āre,	to invite.	<i>invite.</i>
mōnstrō, āre,	to show, point out.	<i>de-monstra-te.</i>
Agrippa, ae, <i>m.</i>	Agrippa, a Roman name.	
amīcītia, ae, <i>f.</i>	friendship.	<i>ami-ty.</i>
avidē, <i>adv.</i>	eagerly, greedily.	
fēriae, ārum, <i>f.</i>	holidays.	
firmus, a, um,	strong, steady, steadfast, true.	<i>firm.</i>
gaudium, īī, <i>n.</i>	joy.	
industria, ae, <i>f.</i>	diligence, industry.	<i>industry.</i>
intereā, <i>adv.</i>	meanwhile.	
itaque, <i>conj.</i>	therefore, accordingly.	
iter, itineris, <i>n.</i>	journey, road, march.	
mālus, ī, <i>f.</i>	apple-tree.	
pirus, ī, <i>f.</i>	pear-tree.	<i>pear.</i>
postrīdiē,	on the next day.	

## 253. THE FARMER AND THE SAILOR.

Mārcus est agricola. Augustus est nauta. Augustus nauta est fīdus amīcus Mārcē agricolae. Agrippa est Augustī filius. Agrippa nōn est nauta, sed mare amat et laudat. Māgna puerī dīligentia patrem dēlectat. Itaque Augustus exclāmat: “Mī filī, dīligentia tua mē valdē dēlectat. Ecce praemium dīligentiae tuae et industriae. Fēriae tībī erunt.<sup>2</sup> Mārcus agricola nōs<sup>3</sup> ad sē<sup>4</sup> invītāt. Vīta rūstica tē dēlectābit.”

Postrīdiē nauta et filius iter faciunt. Mārcus amīcōs suōs avidissimē<sup>5</sup> exspectat. Māgnum est gaudium amīcō-

<sup>1</sup> The ending *āre* is the ending of the infinitive: *exclāmō, exclāmāre.*

<sup>2</sup> *Tībī erunt*, literally, *will be to you*, i. e., *you will have.* *Tībī* is the dative of *tū*; see 265. It is also the DATIVE OF THE POSSESSOR, see 202.

<sup>3</sup> *Nōs*, ‘us,’ accusative plural of *ego*; see 265.

<sup>4</sup> *Ad sē*, literally, *to himself*, i. e., *to his house*; *sē*, accusative singular; see 265.

<sup>5</sup> Superlative of the adverb *avidē*; see 198, 3.

rum, nam amicitia Augusti et Marci est firma. Interea Agrippa cum Iulia, pulchra Marci filia, ambulat. Iulia Agrippae multas pios et malos monstrat. In horto sunt multae aves et flores pulchri. Agrippa hortum, pios, aves, flores laudat. Beatissimus est; vitam rusticam delectatur.

**254.** Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.

1. Quis fuit filius Augusti nautae? 2. Quis fuit pater Iuliae? 3. Quis fuit pater pueri Agrippae? 4. Laudat-ne Augustus diligentiam Agrippae? 5. Non-ne Augustus suum amicum agricolam amat? 6. Ubi sunt flores pulchri?

## LESSON LVI.

## THE FARMER AND THE SAILOR—CONTINUED.

**255.** VOCABULARY.

interrogō, āre,	to ask, question.	<i>interroga-<sup>tc</sup>.</i>
necō, āre,	to kill, slay.	
sedent,	(they) sit.	<i>sedent-ary.</i>
amoenus, a, um,	pleasant, charming.	
aper, aprī, m.	wild boar.	
canis, is, m. and f.	dog.	<i>canine.</i>
cervus, ī, m.	stag, deer.	
domicilium, iī, n.	home, abode.	<i>domicile.</i>
fāgus, ī, f. <sup>1</sup>	beech-tree.	
ferus, a, um,	wild, savage.	
mora, ae, f.	delay.	
pīnus, ūs and ī, f. <sup>2</sup>	pine-tree.	<i>pine.</i>
prōcērus, a, um,	high, tall.	
rīpa, ae, f.	bank (of a river).	
sine, prep. with Abl.	without.	
subitō, adv.	suddenly.	

<sup>1</sup> Notice the gender of *fāgus* and *pīnus* in this lesson, and of *mālus* and *pirus* in 252. The names of trees are feminine; see 27, II, 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Pīnus* is partly of the Second Declension and partly of the Fourth, but we here use only those of the Second.

256. THE FARMER AND THE SAILOR—*Continued.*

Postrīdiē Agrippa cum Mārcī filiō ambulat. Gāius hortum, agrōs, equōs, canēs amīcō mōnstrat. Agrippa, fīlius nautae, equīs et canibus valdē dēlectātur. Postea in māgnam silvam ambulat. Sunt in silvā pīnī prōcērae, et fāgī altae; sunt etiam ferae in silvā, nam silva est domicilium cervōrum et aprōrum. Est in silvā rīvus. Rīpae rīvī sunt amoenae umbrā pīnōrum altārum. Tum puerī sub umbrā fāgī altae sedent. Agrippa amīcum suum interrogat: “Ferae-ne sunt in silvā?” Subitō māgnū et ferum aprum vident. Tum Gāius exclāmat: “Ecce aper.” Agrippa aprum nōn timet, sed sine morā gladiō bēstiam necat.

257. *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Quid mōnstrat Gāius Agrippae? 2. Quis cum Mārcī filiō in silvam ambulat? 3. Ubī sunt pīnī altae? 4. Ubī sunt cervī et aprī? 5. Quid vident in silvā Gāius et Agrippa? 6. Nōn-ne fīlius nautae aprum timet?

## LESSON LVII.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.—PRESENT, IMPERFECT AND FUTURE TENSES.

## SECOND CONJUGATION: E VERBS.

258. ACTIVE VOICE.—Moneō, *I advise.* PRESENT STEM, *monē.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.		<i>I advise.</i>	PLURAL.	
moneō,	<i>I advise,</i> <sup>1</sup>	monēmus,	<i>we advise,</i>	
monēs,	<i>you advise,</i> <sup>2</sup>	monētis,	<i>you advise,</i> <sup>2</sup>	
monet,	<i>he advises;</i>	monent,	<i>they advise.</i>	

<sup>1</sup> Or *I am advising, I do advise.* So in the Imperfect, *I advised, I was advising, I did advise.*

<sup>2</sup> Or *thou advisest.* So in the other tenses: *thou wast advising, thou wilt advise, etc.*

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advising, or I advised.*

## SINGULAR.

mon**ēbam**, *I was advising,*  
 mon**ēbās**, *you were advising,*  
 mon**ēbat**, *he was advising;*

## PLURAL.

mon**ēbāmus**, *we were advising,*  
 mon**ēbātis**, *you were advising,*  
 mon**ēbant**, *they were advising.*

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will advise.*

mon**ēbō**, *I shall advise,<sup>1</sup>*  
 mon**ēbis**, *you will advise,*  
 mon**ēbit**, *he will advise;*

mon**ēbimus**, *we shall advise,*  
 mon**ēbitis**, *you will advise,*  
 mon**ēbunt**, *they will advise.*

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres.* mon**ē**, *advise thou;*mon**ēte**, *advise ye.**Fut.* mon**ētō**, *thou shalt advise,*mon**ētōte**, *ye shall advise,<sup>2</sup>*mon**ētō**, *he shall advise;*mon**entō**, *they shall advise.*

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* mon**ēre**, *to advise.*

## PARTICIPLE.

*Pres.* mon**ēns**, *advising.***259.** Examine the following sentences :

1. Rēgīnam laudō.

*I praise the queen.*2. **Ego** rēgīnam laudō.*I praise the queen.*

3. Rēgīnam laudāmus.

*We praise the queen.*4. **Nōs** rēgīnam laudāmus.*We praise the queen.*

5. Rēgem laudās.

*You praise the king.<sup>3</sup>*6. **Tū** rēgem laudās.*You praise the king.*

7. Rēgem laudātis.

*You praise the king.*8. **Vōs** rēgem laudātis.*You praise the king.*9. **Nōs** rēgīnam laudāmus, sed **vōs** rēgem laudātis.*We praise the queen, but you praise the king.*

In these sentences observe—

1) That in the Latin the pronominal subjects meaning *I, you, we*, are omitted in the first, third, fifth, and seventh examples, because they are implied in the endings of the verbs. This is the usual construction when the subjects are not emphatic.

<sup>1</sup> Or *I will advise, you shall advise, etc.*<sup>2</sup> See foot-note 1, page 129.<sup>3</sup> Observe that the English sentence, "*You praise the king*," corresponds to four different Latin sentences, here numbered 5, 6, 7, and 8. This arises from the fact that the English word *you* may be either singular or plural, and either with emphasis or without it.

2) That the pronominal subjects are expressed in the second, fourth, sixth, eighth, and ninth examples, because they are emphatic.

**Note 1.**—In meaning the second sentence differs from the first merely in the fact that it emphasizes the subject.

**Note 2.**—In the ninth sentence the contrast between the two clauses makes both subjects emphatic; accordingly *nōs* and *vōs* are both expressed.

**Note 3.**—The only pronominal subjects of the first and second persons ever used in Latin are the four here given, viz. :

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
First person.	<b>ego</b> , I;	<b>nōs</b> , we.
Second person.	<b>tū</b> , thou or you;	<b>vōs</b> , you.

## LESSON LVIII.

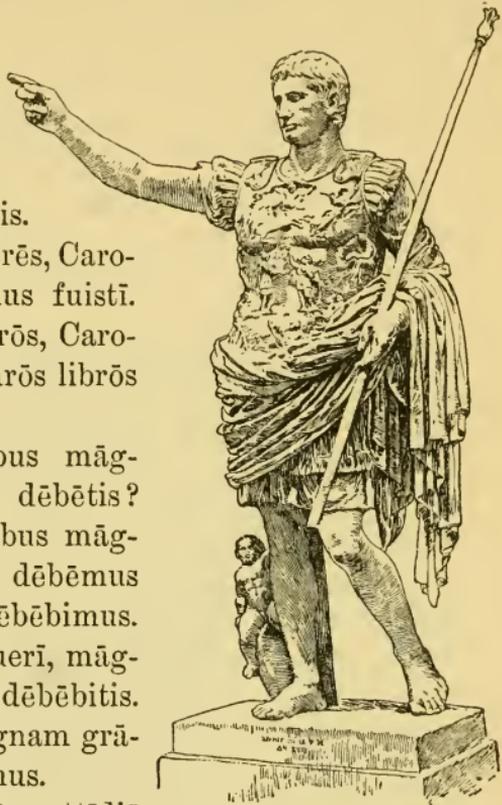
### SECOND CONJUGATION.—PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE TENSES.

#### 260. VOCABULARY.

dēbeō, dēbēre,	to owe, be in debt, ought.	<i>debt.</i>
dēbet,	(he) owes, ought.	
dēbētur,	(it) is due.	
exerceō, exercēre,	to exercise, practice, cultivate.	<i>exercise.</i>
flōreō, flōrēre,	to bloom, flourish, be in bloom.	<i>flor-al.</i>
habeō, habēre,	to have, possess, regard.	
mereō, merēre,	to deserve, merit, earn.	<i>mer-it.</i>
timeō, timēre,	to fear, be afraid of.	<i>tim-id.</i>
valeō, valēre,	to be strong, be well.	<i>val-id.</i>
bene, melius valēre,	to be very well, to be better.	
optimē valēre,	to be perfectly well.	
vītō, vītāre,	to avoid, shun.	
cīviens, a, um,	of citizens, civic, civil.	<i>civic.</i>
grātia, ae, f.	gratitude, thanks.	<i>grace.</i>
hēsternus, a, um,	of yesterday.	
hēsternus diēs,	yesterday.	
memoria, ae, f.	memory, recollection.	<i>memory.</i>
nōndum, adv.	not yet.	
optimē, <i>superlative of bene</i> ?	most excellently, best.	
parēns, parentis, m. and f.	parent.	<i>parent.</i>

261. *Translate into English.*

1. Nōn-ne valēs, cārissime amīce? Hēsternō diē nōn bene valēbam, sed hodiē optimē valeō. Valēs-ne? Semper valeō.
2. Māgnam laudem merētis, discipulī, nam dīligentēs fuistis.
3. Māximam laudem merēs, Carole, nam dīligentissimus fuistī.
4. Habēs-ne multōs librōs, Carole? Multōs et pulchrōs librōs habeō.
5. Nōn-ne praeceptōribus māgnam grātiām dēbēs, dēbētis? Praeceptōribus omnibus māgnam grātiām dēbeō, dēbēmus et semper dēbēbō, dēbēbimus.
6. Parentibus vestrīs, puerī, māgnam grātiām semper dēbēbitis.
7. Mīlitibus nostrīs māgnam grātiām semper dēbēbimus.
8. Memōriam, discipulī, cottīdiē exercēre dēbētis. Cottīdiē exercēmus memoriām; herī memoriām exercēbāmus, hodiē exercēmus, crās exercēbimus.
9. Num hostēs timētis, mīlitēs? Nōn timēmus. Hostēs nunquam timēbimus.
10. Rēs pūblica Cicerōnī cīvicam corōnam dēbēbat.<sup>1</sup>
11. Temporibus Augustī artēs omnēs flōrēbant. Augustus urbem Rōmam aedificiīs pulchrīs semper ōrnābat.
12. Temporibus Periclis urbēs Corinthus et Athēnae flōrēbant.
13. Multī hominēs perīcula timent et vītant.



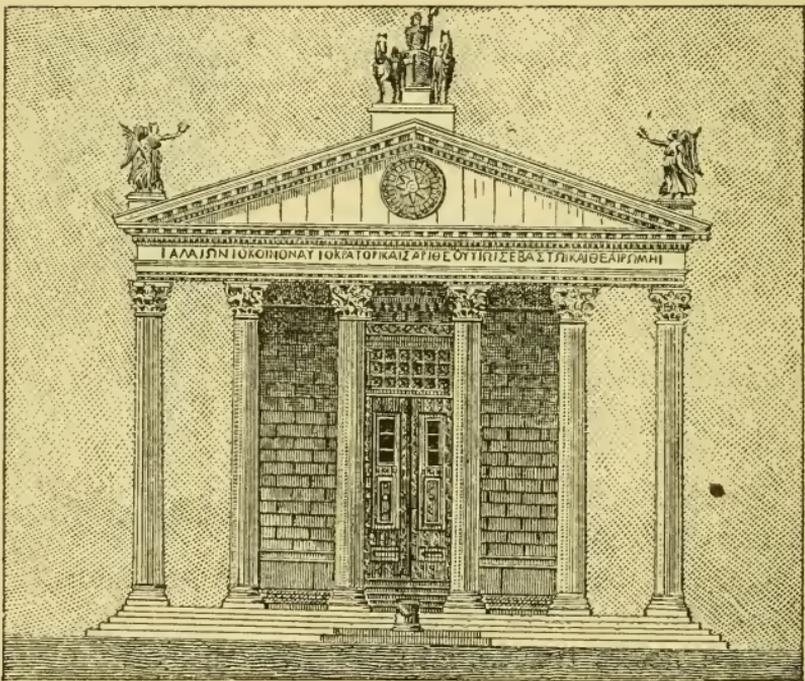
The Vatican statue of Augustus.

<sup>1</sup> See *Civic Crown*, p. 10.

14. Nōn-ne perīcula timēbātis et vītābātis? Māxima perīcula timēbāmus et vītābāmus.
15. Māxima perīcula semper timēbimus et vītābimus.

**262.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Julia, are the apple-trees in bloom in your garden? They are not yet in bloom; they will bloom next month.
2. All arts were flourishing in the time of Pericles.
3. Many learned men were flourishing in Italy in the time of Cicero, the famous orator.



*Temple of Rome and Augustus.*

4. Boys, you were not in school yesterday. Were you not well? We were not very well yesterday, but we are better to-day.
5. Learned men always cultivate the memory.
6. Frederick, you ought to cultivate your memory. In school I am always cultivating my memory.

7. Judge, you deserve the greatest praise, for you have always been a faithful guardian of the laws.
8. Brave soldiers, you will always deserve the greatest praise, for you have been the faithful guardians of our liberty.
9. You ought to live in Florida in winter. In winter we always live in the city.

## LESSON LIX.

A VERBS AND E VERBS.—PRONOUNS.—PERSONAL, REFLEXIVE, AND POSSESSIVE.

263. COMPARATIVE VIEW OF A VERBS AND E VERBS.<sup>1</sup>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.		PRESENT TENSE.		PLURAL.	
A VERBS.	E VERBS.	A VERBS.	E VERBS.	A VERBS.	E VERBS.
amō	monēō	amāmus	monēmus		
amās	monēs	amātis	monētis		
amat	monet	amant	monent		
IMPERFECT.					
amābam	monēbam	amābāmus	monēbāmus		
amābās	monēbās	amābātis	monēbātis		
amābat	monēbat	amābant	monēbant		
FUTURE.					
amābō	monēbō	amābimus	monēbimus		
amābis	monēbis	amābitis	monēbitis		
amābit	monēbit	amābunt	monēbunt		
IMPERATIVE.					
<i>Pres.</i> amā	monē	amāte	monēte		
<i>Fut.</i> amātō	monētō	amātōte	monētōte		
	amātō	amantō	monentō		
INFINITIVE.			PARTICIPLE.		
<i>Pres.</i> amāre	monēre	amāns	monēns		

<sup>1</sup> Compare the forms of these two conjugations with each other and note carefully the resemblances and the differences.

## PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

**264.** Personal and Reflexive Pronouns<sup>1</sup> are :

Ego, *I.*            Tū, *thou.*            Suī, *of himself, etc.*<sup>2</sup>

**265.** Ego and tū are declined as follows :

## SINGULAR.

Nom.	ego,	<i>I.</i>	tū,	<i>thou, you.</i>
Gen.	meī,	<i>of me, myself.</i>	tuī,	<i>of you, yourself.</i>
Dat.	mihī,	<i>to, for me, myself.</i>	tibī,	<i>to, for you, yourself.</i>
Acc.	mē,	<i>me, myself.</i>	tē,	<i>thee, you, yourself.</i>
Voc.	—	—	tū,	<i>thou, you.</i>
Abl.	mē,	<i>me, myself.</i> <sup>3</sup>	tē,	<i>thee, you, yourself.</i> <sup>3</sup>

## PLURAL.

Nom.	nōs,	<i>we.</i>	vōs,	<i>ye, you.</i>
Gen.	{ nostrum, } { nostrī,	{ <i>of us, of ourselves.</i>	vestrum, } { vestrī,	{ <i>of you, of yourselves.</i>
Dat.	nōbīs,	<i>to, for us; to, for ourselves.</i>	vōbīs,	<i>to, for you; to, for yourselves.</i>
Acc.	nōs,	<i>us, ourselves.</i>	vōs,	<i>you, yourselves.</i>
Voc.	—	—	vōs,	<i>ye, you.</i>
Abl.	nōbīs,	<i>us, ourselves.</i> <sup>3</sup>	vōbīs,	<i>you, yourselves.</i> <sup>3</sup>

**Note.**—Cum, when used with the *ablative* of a Personal or Reflexive Pronoun, is appended to it: *mēcum, tēcum.*

**266.** Suī, sibī, sē, the *Reflexive Pronoun* of the third person, refers to the SUBJECT of the clause in which it stands, and has no nominative or vocative. It has the same form in both numbers, and is declined as follows :

## SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

Gen.	suī,	<i>of himself, herself, itself,</i>	<i>themselves.</i>
Dat.	sibī,	<i>to, for himself, herself, itself,</i>	<i>themselves.</i>
Acc.	sē,	<i>himself, herself, itself,</i>	<i>themselves.</i>
Abl.	sē,	<i>himself, herself, itself,</i>	<i>themselves.</i> <sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Also called *Substantive Pronouns*, because they are always used *substantively*.      <sup>2</sup> *Of himself, herself, itself.* The Nominative is not used.

<sup>3</sup> The *ablative* of Personal and Reflexive Pronouns, like the *ablative* of Persons, is almost always used with prepositions: *ā mē, by or from me; ā nōbīs, by or from us; ā vōbīs, by or from you; tēcum, with thee; nōbīscum, with us.*

<sup>4</sup> For the *ablative* with *cum*, see 265, note.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

267. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives*:<sup>1</sup>

meus, a, um, <i>my</i> ;	noster, tra, trum, <i>our</i> ;
tuus, a, um, <i>thy, your</i> ;	vester, tra, trum, <i>your</i> ;
suus, a, um, <i>his, hers, its</i> ;	suus, a, um, <i>their</i> .

## LESSON LX.

A VERBS AND E VERBS.—PRONOUNS.—PERSONAL, REFLEXIVE, AND POSSESSIVE.

## 268. VOCABULARY.

dēleō, dēlēre,	to destroy.	
frondeō, frondēre,	to put forth leaves, be in leaf.	
moveō, movēre,	to move, excite, inspire.	<i>move.</i>
praebeō, praebēre,	to offer, furnish, give.	
vireō, virēre,	to be green.	
admīrātiō, admīrātiōnis, <i>f.</i>	admiration, wonder.	<i>admiration.</i>
arbor, arboris, <i>f.</i>	tree.	<i>arbor.</i>
commūnis, commūne,	common.	<i>common.</i>
incendium, īī, <i>n.</i>	fire, conflagration.	<i>incendi-ary.</i>
ruīna, ae, <i>f.</i>	fall, ruin.	<i>ruin.</i>
ruīnae, <i>plur.</i>	ruins. <sup>2</sup>	
theātrum, ī, <i>n.</i>	theatre.	<i>theatre.</i>

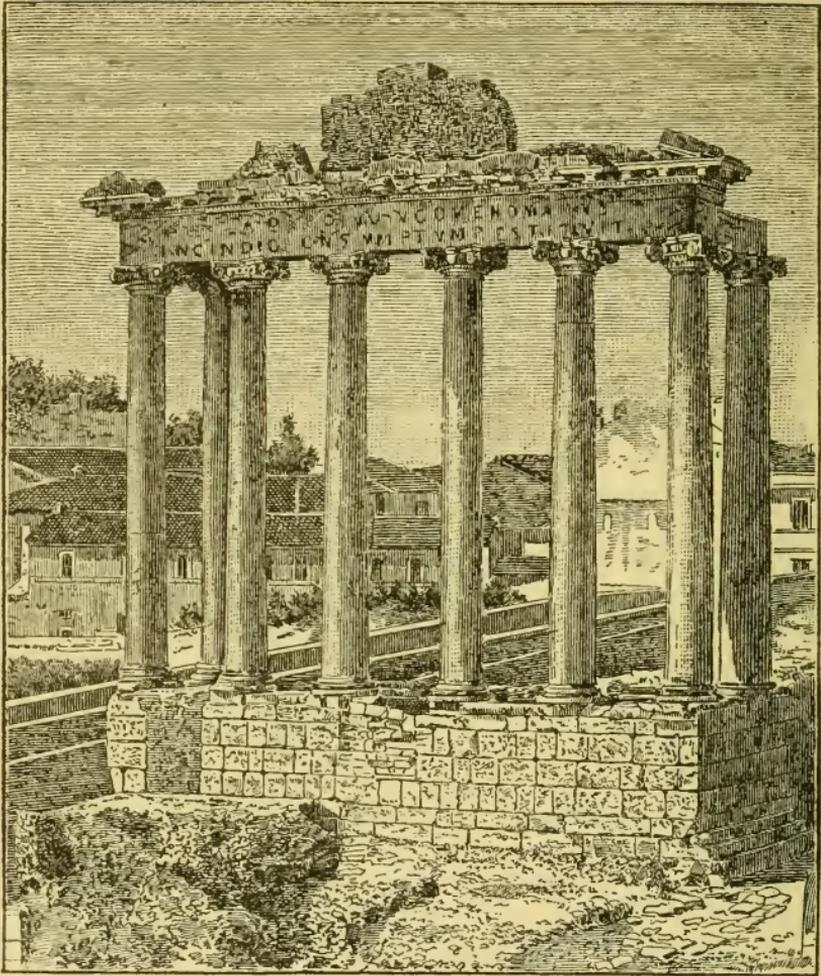
## 269. SYNONYMS.

**Flōreō, frondeō, vireō**; *to bloom, to put forth leaves, to be green.*

1. **Flōreō**; TO BLOOM, FLOURISH.
2. **Frondeō**; TO PUT FORTH LEAVES, BE IN LEAF.
3. **Vireō**; TO BE GREEN, VIGOROUS.

<sup>1</sup> Possessives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions; but *meus* has in the Vocative Singular Masculine generally *mī*.

<sup>2</sup> As of a building, city, etc.



*Ruins of the temple of Saturn in Rome.<sup>1</sup>*

**270.** *Translate into English.*

1. Quid merēbās, quid exspectābās?
2. Nihil merēbam; nihil exspectābam.
3. Quis rēgīnam nōn amat? quis rēgem nōn timet?
4. Omnēs cīvēs rēgīnam amant, rēgem timent.
5. Nōn-ne perīcula timēbitis et vītābitis?
6. Nōs perīcula nunquam timēbimus, nunquam vītābimus.

<sup>1</sup> The ruins here represented stand near the southwest corner of the Roman Forum. See view of the FORUM on page 94.

7. Quid, puerī, hodiē expectātis et merētis?
8. Nōs m̄ximās laudēs expectāmus et merēmus.
9. Tē dēlectat vīta r̄stica, mē vīta urbāna.
10. Tū vītam r̄sticam semper laudās, ego vītam urbānam interdum laudō.
11. Vōs, puerī, mē accūsāre nōn dēbētis. Tē, Carole nōn accūsāmus.
12. Patria est commūnis parēns omnium nostrum.
13. Homō doctus in sē semper dīvitiās habet.
14. Caesar multōs mīlitēs sēcum in Galliā habēbat.
15. Multī hominēs sē vītae r̄sticae dant.
16. Nunc agrī virent; arborēs frudent. Nōbīs arborēs umbram grātam praebēbunt.
17. Gallī oppidum incendiō dēlēbant.
18. Ruīnās theātrī spectābāmus.

**271.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who expects praise? Who deserves praise?
2. I expect great praise; I deserve great praise.
3. Do you (pl.) not expect praise? Do you not deserve praise?
4. We always expect great praise; we always deserve great praise.
5. You are always praising me and I am always praising you.
6. Soldiers, you love war; we love peace.
7. Many men are always fearing and shunning danger.
8. You, soldiers, ought not to fear the enemy.
9. Many men are always praising themselves.
10. We, boys, ought not to praise ourselves.
11. Your books, pupils, will always be useful to you.
12. Marcus has many friends with him (with himself) in Italy.
13. Yesterday we were looking at the ruins of the beautiful temple.

## LESSON LXI.

## LETTER TO A FRIEND IN TOWN.

## 272. VOCABULARY.

properō, āre,	to hasten, hurry.	
arceō, ēre,	to keep off, banish.	
iaceō, ēre,	to lie, lie low, lie on the ground, lie dead, be prostrate.	
splendeō, ēre,	to shine.	<i>splend-id.</i>
amātor, ōris, <i>m.</i>	lover.	
arvum, ī, <i>n.</i>	cultivated land, field.	
caelum, ī, <i>n.</i>	sky, heaven.	<i>cel-estial.</i>
cūra, ae, <i>f.</i>	care, trouble.	<i>care.</i>
diū, <i>adv.</i>	a long time, long.	
fōrmōsus, a, um,	beautiful, handsome.	
hūc,	hither, to this place.	
modo,	just now, now.	
modo—modo,	now—now; sometimes—sometimes.	
prātum, ī, <i>n.</i>	meadow.	
quam diū?	how long?	
serēnus, a, um,	bright, clear.	<i>serene.</i>
viridis, e,	green.	

## 273. A LETTER TO A FRIEND IN TOWN.

Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō. Tē salūtō. Vītam urbānam semper laudās. Vītae rūsticae amātor sum. Nunc frondent silvae, nunc est fōrmōsissimum annī tempus. Omnia prāta, omnēs agrī virent. Modo ambulāmus per agrōs et arva; modo iacēmus in grāmine viridī, arcēmus ā nōbīs omnēs cūrās. Iūcundum est in grāmine iacēre; dulce est cūrās molestās arcēre. Herī eram in hortīs avī. Sōl splendēbat in caelō serēnō, arborēs altae umbram praebēbant.

Quam diū, Frederīce, vītam urbānam laudābis? Hūc properā, māgnū gaudium habēbis; silvae, prāta, arva,

omnia<sup>1</sup> tē dēlectābunt. Arcē igitur omnēs cūrās et hūc properā. Mī cārissime amīce, valē.

**274.** *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Quid laudat Frederīcus? 2. Quid laudat amīcus Frederīcī? 3. Num silvae semper frondent? 4. Nōn-ne iūcundum est per silvās ambulāre? 5. Laudant-ne omnēs agricolae vītā rūsticā? 6. Nōn-ne vīta urbāna ab amīcō Frederīcī laudātur?

## LESSON LXII.

## A DIALOGUE.

**275.** VOCABULARY.

adventō, āre,	to approach, go near.	<i>advent.</i>
sēdō, āre,	to settle, quiet, check.	<i>seda-te.</i>
servō, āre,	to save, preserve.	<i>pre-serve.</i>
ārdeō, ēre,	to burn, blaze, be on fire.	<i>ardent.</i>
augcō, ēre,	to increase, extend.	<i>aug-ment.</i>
ēlūceō, ēre,	to shine forth or out.	
placeō, ēre,	to please, be pleasing to.	<i>please.</i>
ad-sum, ad-esse,	to be present.	
dēficit,	(he, she, it) fails, is wanting.	<i>deficit.</i>
cum,	when.	
fenestra, ae, f.	window.	
flamma, ae, f.	flame, fire.	<i>flame.</i>
Guilielmus, ī, m.	William.	
pariēs, parietis, m.	wall, <i>as of a house.</i>	
pecūnia, ae, f.	money, property.	<i>pecunia-ry.</i>
sī,	if.	
tēctum, ī, n.	roof, house.	

<sup>1</sup> *Omnia*, 'all things,' 'everything,' the neuter plural used substantively; see 322.

## 276. COLLOQUIUM.

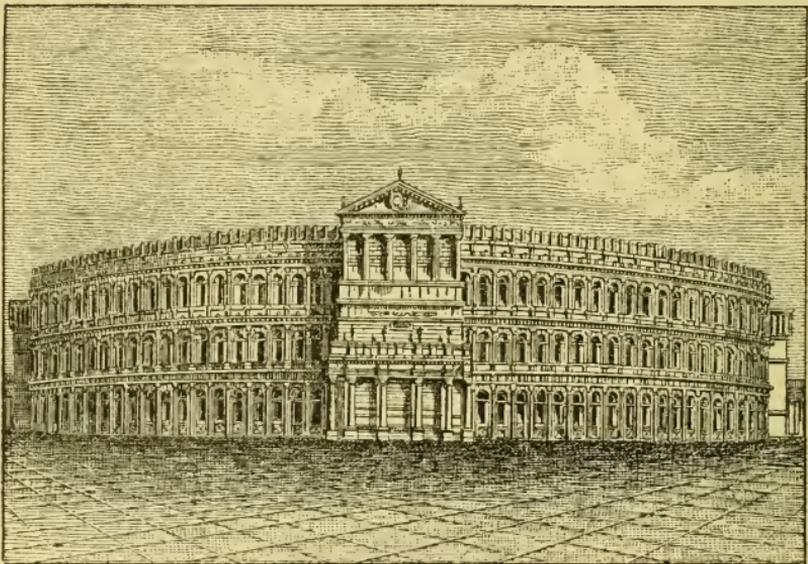
DUO AMICĪ, GUILIELMUS ET HENRĪCUS.

Guilielmus.—Mōnstrā mihī et Carolō nostrō, sī tibi placet,<sup>1</sup>  
ruinās theātrī vestri.

Henrīcus.—Vōbīs ruinās mōnstrābō. Theātrum māgnū  
et pulchrum erat.

G.—Iam videō ruinās.

H.—Nūper theātrum nostrum admirātiōnem hominum  
movēbat, nunc iacent parietēs et semper iacēbunt.



*Pompey's theatre in Rome.*<sup>2</sup>

G.—Nōn-ne cīvēs vestri theātrum renovābunt?

H.—Nōn renovābunt, nam dēficit pecūnia.

G.—Adfuitī-ne cum theātrum vestrum ārdēbat?

H.—Adfuī. Cum adventābam, iam tēctum theātrī ārdēbat  
et flammæ ex omnibus ferē fenestrīs ēlūcēbant.

<sup>1</sup> Sī tibi placet: literally, *if it pleases you or is pleasing to you*; render *if you please*. Tibi is *Indirect Object of placet*.

<sup>2</sup> Erected by Pompey the Great. It was the first theatre of stone built in Rome. Imposing games made its inauguration memorable. Forty thousand spectators are said to have been present, and five hundred lions are said to have been slain.

G.—Nōn-ne hominēs tentābant incendium sēdāre?

H.—Frūstrā tentābant theātrum servāre. Difficile fuit aedificia prōxima servāre, nam ventus vehementissimus perīculum augēbat.

277. *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Quis Carolō ruīnās theātrī mōnstrat? 2. Quis est Carolus? 3. Nōn-ne theātrum pulchrum erat? 4. Sunt-ne omnia theātra pulchra? 5. Num hominēs aedificia prōxima servāre tentābant? 6. Quid fuit difficile? 7. Est-ne theātrum in urbe vestrā? 8. Nōn-ne theātrum vestrum est novum et pulchrum?

## LESSON LXIII.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

278. ACTIVE VOICE.—Regō, *I rule.* PRESENT STEM, *rege.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I rule.*

SINGULAR.

regō

regis

regit

PLURAL.

regimus

regitis

regunt

## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruling, or I ruled.*

regēbam

regēbās

regēbat

regēbāmus

regēbātis

regēbant

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will rule.*

regam

regēs

reget

regēmus

regētis

regent

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> regē, rule thou;	regēte, rule ye.
<i>Fut.</i> regitō, thou shalt rule,	regitōte, ye shall rule,
regitō, he shall rule;	reguntō, they shall rule. <sup>1</sup>

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* regere, to rule.

## PARTICIPLE.

*Pres.* regēns, ruling.

**279.** Examine the following sentences :

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <b>Cum cūrā</b> scribit.               | <i>He writes</i> WITH CARE.                          |
| 2. <b>Māgnā cum cūrā</b> scribit.         | <i>He writes</i> WITH GREAT CARE.                    |
| 3. Iūdicem <b>māgnō silentiō</b> audiunt. | <i>They hear the judge</i> WITH or IN GREAT SILENCE. |

In these examples observe—

1) That **cum cūrā**, with care, **māgnā cum cūrā**, with great care, and **māgnō silentiō**, in or with great silence, all denote the MANNER of the action.

2) That the nouns **cūrā** and **silentiō** are in the Ablative.

3) That in the first and second examples the Ablative takes the preposition **cum**, in the first without an adjective modifier and in the second with such modifier: **māgnā cum cūrā**.

4) That in the third example the Ablative takes an adjective modifier without **cum**: **māgnō silentiō**.

From these and similar examples we derive the following rule :

**RULE XXIV.—Ablative of Manner.**

The Ablative may be used to denote MANNER. It then takes either, (1) the preposition **cum**, with or without an adjective modifier; or (2) an adjective modifier without **cum**.

## LESSON LXIV.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

**280.** VOCABULARY.

cingō, ere,	to surround, inclose.	
dūcō, ere,	to lead.	in-duce.
gerō, ere,	to do, wage, carry on, administer.	
legō, ere,	to read.	leg-ible.

<sup>1</sup> For other meanings of the Imperative Future, see 244 (page 129), foot-note 1.

<b>lūdō, ere,</b>	to play.	<i>e-lude.</i>
<b>scrībō, ere,</b>	to write.	<i>scribe.</i>
<b>contrā, prep. with Acc.</b>	against, contrary to.	<i>contra-ry.</i>
<b>Graecē, adv.</b>	in the Greek language, in Greek.	
<b>Latīnē, adv.</b>	in the Latin language, in Latin.	
<b>pila, ae, f.</b>	ball.	
<b>Rōmulus, ī, m.</b>	Romulus, reputed founder of Rome.	
<b>septem,</b>	seven.	<i>seven.</i>
<b>trīgintā,</b>	thirty.	
<b>trīgintā septem,</b>	thirty-seven.	
<b>voluptās, voluptātis, f.</b>	pleasure, delight.	

### 281. Translate into English.

1. Num, Carole, cum cūrā scrībīs? Māgnā cum cūrā semper scrībō.
2. Nōn-ne, puerī, cum cūrā scrībītis? Māximā cum cūrā scrībimus.
3. Ad patrēs vestrōs semper māximā cum cūrā scrībīte.
4. Nōn-ne semper cum cūrā scrībēre dēbēmus? Semper māgnā cum cūrā scrībēre dēbētis.
5. Quid scrībēbās, scrībīs, scrībēs? Epistolam ad patrem scrībēbam, ad mātrem scrībō, ad frātrem scrībam.
6. Quid legēbātis, legītis, legētis? Librōs Caesaris legēbāmus, legimus, legēmus.
7. Librōs Caesaris māximā cūrā legere dēbētis. Librōs Caesaris māgnō labōre et māximā voluptāte legimus.
8. Brevī tempore, puerī, carmina Vergiliī māximā cum voluptāte legētis.
9. Discipulī meī ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis māgnā cum diligentīā legunt.
10. Caesar bellum in Galliā māgnā cum glōriā gerēbat.
11. Eō tempore Cicerō librum māgnā cum cūrā scrībēbat.
12. Rōmulus eō tempore urbem mūrō cingēbat.
13. Num urbem vestram mūrō altissimō cingētis? Urbem nostram mūrō nunquam cingēmus.
14. Hannibal eō tempore exercitum māgnū in Ītaliā ducēbat.

15. Nōn-ne Hannibal elephantōs in Ītaliā ducēbat? Trīgintā septem elephantōs ducēbat.
16. Num ad patrem tuum Latīnē scribis? Non Latīnē scribō; nam difficile est Latīnē scribere.
17. Quis nunc Graecē scribit? Praeceptōrēs doctī interdum Graecē scribunt.
18. Hannibal māgnū bellum contrā Rōmānōs gerēbat.
19. Nōn-ne puerī pilā lūdunt?<sup>1</sup> Pilā lūdunt.

**282.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Boys, do you often play ball?<sup>2</sup> We play ball every day; it is delightful to play ball.
2. The Roman boys were always playing ball.
3. Henry, will you play ball to-day? I will play to-morrow. All the boys will play to-morrow.
4. Who will write to the queen? I shall write to the queen to-morrow. I shall write with great care.
5. Do not kings and queens sometimes write books? They sometimes write interesting books about themselves and their friends.
6. Who reads American books? All men read American books.
7. Charles, you ought to write a long letter to your father.



*Augustus in the toga.*

<sup>1</sup> *Pilā*, ablative of Means, or Instrument, *with the ball*. *Pilā lūdunt*, render *they play ball*.

<sup>2</sup> In what case will you put the Latin word for *ball*? See 281, 19, with footnote.

8. Boys, what were you reading yesterday? We were reading a book about great men. We always read good books with care.
9. It is always pleasant to read books about famous men.
10. Cicero was at that time administering the republic with great glory.
11. In a short time we shall be reading the orations of Cicero with pleasure.
12. Vergil was often praising his illustrious friend, Augustus Caesar.

LESSON LXV.

A VERBS, E VERBS, AND CONSONANT VERBS.

283. Comparative view of conjugations :

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.
amō	moneō	regō
amās	monēs	regis
amat	monet	regit
amāmus	monēmus	regimus
amātis	monētis	regitis
amant	monent	regunt

IMPERFECT.

amābam	monēbam	regēbam
amābās	monēbās	regēbās
amābat	monēbat	regēbat
amābāmus	monēbāmus	regēbāmus
amābātis	monēbātis	regēbātis
amābant	monēbant	regēbant

FUTURE.

amābō	monēbō	regam
amābis	monēbis	regēs
amābit	monēbit	reget
amābimus	monēbimus	regēmus
amābitis	monēbitis	regētis
amābunt	monēbunt	regent

IMPERATIVE.		
Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.
amā	monē	rege
amāte	monēte	regite
amātō	monētō	regitō
amātō	monētō	regitō
amātōte	monētōte	regitōte
amantō	monentō	reguntō

INFINITIVE.		
amāre	monēre	regere

PARTICIPLE.		
amāns	monēns	regēns

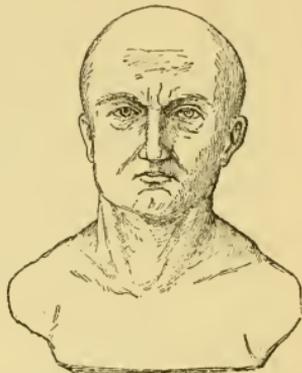
## 284. VOCABULARY.

dīcō, ere,	to speak, talk, say.	<i>dic-tion.</i>
intelligō, ere,	to know, understand.	<i>intellig-ent.</i>
parō, āre,	to prepare, make ready.	<i>pre-para.</i>
petō, ere,	to seek, desire, ask for.	<i>pet-ition.</i>
pōnō, ere,	to place.	
triumphō, āre,	to triumph, celebrate a victory.	<i>triumph.</i>
triumphāre dē,	to triumph over.	
videō, ēre,	to see, behold.	
certus, a, um,	certain, fixed, permanent.	<i>certain.</i>
imperītus, a, um,	unskillful, ignorant, inexperienced.	
Lydī, Lydōrum, <i>m. plur.</i>	the Lydians, people of Lydia.	<i>Lydia.</i>
medicīna, ae, <i>f.</i>	medicine, the healing art.	<i>medicine.</i>
morb-us, ī, <i>m.</i>	disease, sickness.	<i>morb-id.</i>
remedium, īi, <i>n.</i>	cure, remedy.	<i>remedy.</i>
Scipiō Africānus,	Scipio Africanus, conqueror	
Scipiōnis Africānī, <i>m.</i>	of Hannibal. <sup>1</sup>	
tēlum, ī, <i>n.</i>	weapon.	
Tīmōn, Tīmōnis, <i>m.</i>	Timon.	
vēnātiō, vēnātiōnis, <i>f.</i>	hunting, chase.	
vēnātor, vēnātōris, <i>m.</i>	hunter, huntsman.	
multum, <i>adv.</i>	much, greatly, often.	

<sup>1</sup> This was Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus, the Elder, who conquered Hannibal in the celebrated battle of Zama, 202 B. C.

285. *Translate into English.*

1. Quid legis, Carole? quid in manibus habēs? Nihil nunc legō; opera Caesaris in manibus habeō.
2. Num librōs, puerī, semper in manibus habētis? Librōs in manibus semper habēmus, nōn semper legimus.
3. Num crās pilā<sup>1</sup> lūdēs, Carole? Crās pilā nōn lūdā, sed lūdōs vidēbō.
4. Ubī hēsternō diē erātis, puerī? Domī erāmus. Epistulās expectābāmus et scribēbāmus.
5. Num ad amīcōs saepe scribitis et epistulās saepe expectātis? Epistulās semper expectāmus et ad amīcōs semper scribimus.
6. In vestrā virtūte, militēs, omnem spem salūtis pōnimus.
7. Rēx spem victōriæ in virtūte militum pōnēbat.
8. Militēs māgnū in rē militārī ūsum habēbant.
9. Māgnam laudem, militēs, merētis; nam prō patriā fortiter pūgnātis.
10. Antīquissimīs temporibus hominēs certa domicilia nōn habēbant, sed in silvīs habitābant.
11. Croesus, rēx Lūdōrum, ingentēs dīvitiās habēbat.
12. Solōn, vir sapiēns, ingentēs Croesī dīvitiās nōn laudābat.
13. Ad mē, frāter cārissime, saepe scribere dēbēs. Semper iūcundum est tuās epistulās legere.
14. Scīpiō dē Hannibale triumphāvit.<sup>2</sup>
15. Hostēs fugā<sup>3</sup> salūtem petēbant.



Scipio Africanus, the Elder.

<sup>1</sup> Remember that *pilā*, literally, *with a ball*, is an ablative of Means or Instrument. See foot-note 1, page 152.

<sup>2</sup> That is, he celebrated his victory over Hannibal with a triumphal procession.

<sup>3</sup> *Fugā* is also an ablative of Means.

16. Medicus noster remedia morbōrum intellegit.
17. Medicī imperītī interdum medicīnam exercent.
18. Māgnā cum cūrā, militēs, tēla parāre dēbētis.
19. Tīmōn vēnātor multum erat in vēnātiōnibus.<sup>1</sup>

**286.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Dear brother, when shall you write to me? Write often. I shall write to you daily. I shall write about the books to-morrow morning.
2. Were you not yesterday speaking of (in regard to) Croesus, the king of the Lydians? I was speaking of the immense riches of the king.
3. The Romans were at that time waging war against the Carthaginians.
4. Where was Hannibal, the leader of the Carthaginians? He was already in Italy with a large army.
5. Pupils, do you write often to your fathers? We write daily.
6. Do your fathers often write to you? They write often, but not daily.
7. Shall you expect letters to-morrow? We are expecting letters to-day.
8. How many books of Caesar ought we to read? You ought to read four books.
9. Who will read the works of Vergil? I shall read all the poems of the great poet.
10. Where was Caesar at that time? Was he not in Gaul? He was waging war in Gaul.
11. Ignorant physicians ought not to practice medicine.
12. Learned physicians always practice medicine with the greatest care.
13. Who was Scipio Africanus? He was a Roman citizen and a great commander.

---

<sup>1</sup> Multum . . . vēnātiōnibus, literally, *was much in hunting expeditions; render, was often engaged in the chase.*

LESSON LXVI.

JOKES ON THE DOCTORS.

287. VOCABULARY.

committō, ere,	to join, commit, intrust.	<i>commit.</i>
excēdō, ere,	to go away, depart.	<i>exceed.</i>
occīdō, ere,	to strike down, cut down, kill.	
occurrō, ere,	to hasten toward, meet.	<i>occur.</i>
repetō, ere,	to seek again, return to.	<i>repeat.</i>
respondeō, ēre,	to answer, respond, reply.	<i>respond.</i>
super-sum, super-esse,	to remain, survive.	
at, <i>conj.</i>	but, on the other hand.	
dum, <i>conj.</i>	while.	
ē or ex, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	from, out of, of.	<i>ex-pel.</i>
ex hīs, <sup>1</sup>	out of these, of these.	
fessus, a, um,	wearied, tired, exhausted.	
fortūna, ae, f.	fortune, success.	<i>fortune.</i>
ita, <i>adv.</i>	thus, so.	
itaque, <i>conj.</i>	and so, accordingly.	
nec, <i>conj.</i>	and not, nor.	
nec—nec,	neither—nor.	
ōtium, iī, n.	rest, leisure.	
praetereā, <i>adv.</i>	besides.	
quondam, <i>adv.</i>	formerly, once, on one occasion.	
saltem, <i>adv.</i>	at least.	
superbus, a, um,	proud.	<i>superb.</i>
vīlla, ae, f.	villa, country-house.	<i>villa.</i>

288. JOKES ON THE DOCTORS.

1. THE YOUNG DOCTOR.

Medicus clārus quondam, fessus longō labōre, petēbat breve ōtium apud rūsticam amīcī villam. Intereā filiō cūram aegrōrum<sup>2</sup> committēbat. Superbus iuvenis facētō comitī dē fortūnā bonā ita nārrat. “Pater mihi aegrōs

<sup>1</sup> *His* is a demonstrative pronoun in the ablative plural ; see 390.

<sup>2</sup> Literally. *of the sick* ; render *of his patients*. *Aegrōrum* is an adjective used *substantively*. Adjectives in Latin as in English are often thus used ; see 322.

committit." "At," respondet amicus, "ubi pater urbem repetit, ex his omnibus quot super-erunt?"

2. THE SPORTING DOCTOR.

Timōn erat medicus, sed imperitus. Nec causās nec remedia morborum intellegēbat. Itaque aegrī plērumque ē vitā excēdēbant. Praetereā Timōn, medicus, erat vēnātor. Habēbat multōs canēs et equōs, et multum erat in vēnātiōnibus. Quondam, dum parat tēla, occurrit amicus et dicit: "O medice, hodiē saltem occidēs nihil."

289. Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.

1. Quis fuit Timōn?
2. Num medicinam exercēbat?
3. Nōn-ne medicus causās morborum intellegere dēbet?
4. Num medicī causās morborum omnium intellegunt?
5. Quis apud villam amicī breve otium petēbat?
6. Sunt-ne vēnātōrēs plērumque medicī optimī?
7. Dēbent-ne medicī imperitī medicinam exercere?

LESSON LXVII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

290. ACTIVE VOICE.—Audiō, *I hear*. PRESENT STEM, *audi*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

	<i>I hear.</i>	
SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
audiō		audi <u>mus</u>
audis		audi <u>tis</u>
audit		audi <u>unt</u>

IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing, or I heard.*

audi <u>ebam</u>	audi <u>ebāmus</u>
audi <u>ebās</u>	audi <u>ebātis</u>
audi <u>ebat</u>	audi <u>ebant</u>

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will hear.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
aud <b>iam</b>	audi <b>ēmus</b>
audi <b>ēs</b>	audi <b>ētis</b>
audi <b>et</b>	audi <b>ent</b>

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> audi <b>ī</b> , <i>hear thou;</i>	audi <b>ite</b> , <i>hear ye.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> audi <b>itō</b> , <i>thou shalt hear,</i>	audi <b>itōte</b> , <i>ye shall hear,</i>
audi <b>itō</b> , <i>he shall hear;</i>	audi <b>iuntō</b> , <i>they shall hear.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> audi <b>ire</b> , <i>to hear.</i>	<i>Pres.</i> audi <b>ēns</b> , <i>hearing.</i>
--	--

## 291. Comparative view of the four conjugations.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
am <b>ō</b>	mon <b>eō</b>	reg <b>ō</b>	audi <b>ō</b>
am <b>ās</b>	mon <b>ēs</b>	reg <b>is</b>	audi <b>is</b>
am <b>at</b>	mon <b>et</b>	reg <b>it</b>	audi <b>it</b>
am <b>āmus</b>	mon <b>ēmus</b>	reg <b>imus</b>	audi <b>imus</b>
am <b>ātis</b>	mon <b>ētis</b>	reg <b>itis</b>	audi <b>itis</b>
am <b>ant</b>	mon <b>ent</b>	reg <b>unt</b>	audi <b>unt</b>

## IMPERFECT.

am <b>ābam</b>	mon <b>ēbam</b>	reg <b>ēbam</b>	audi <b>ēbam</b>
am <b>ābās</b>	mon <b>ēbās</b>	reg <b>ēbās</b>	audi <b>ēbās</b>
am <b>ābat</b>	mon <b>ēbat</b>	reg <b>ēbat</b>	audi <b>ēbat</b>
am <b>ābāmus</b>	mon <b>ēbāmus</b>	reg <b>ēbāmus</b>	audi <b>ēbāmus</b>
am <b>ābātis</b>	mon <b>ēbātis</b>	reg <b>ēbātis</b>	audi <b>ēbātis</b>
am <b>ābant</b>	mon <b>ēbant</b>	reg <b>ēbant</b>	audi <b>ēbant</b>

## FUTURE.

am <b>ābō</b>	mon <b>ēbō</b>	reg <b>am</b>	audi <b>am</b>
am <b>ābis</b>	mon <b>ēbis</b>	reg <b>ēs</b>	audi <b>ēs</b>
am <b>ābit</b>	mon <b>ēbit</b>	reg <b>et</b>	audi <b>et</b>
am <b>ābimus</b>	mon <b>ēbimus</b>	reg <b>ēmus</b>	audi <b>ēmus</b>
am <b>ābitis</b>	mon <b>ēbitis</b>	reg <b>ētis</b>	audi <b>ētis</b>
am <b>ābunt</b>	mon <b>ēbunt</b>	reg <b>ent</b>	audi <b>ent</b>

## IMPERATIVE.

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
<i>Pres.</i>	am <b>ā</b>	mon <b>ē</b>	reg <b>e</b>	aud <b>ī</b>
	am <b>āte</b>	mon <b>ēte</b>	reg <b>ite</b>	aud <b>ite</b>
<i>Fut.</i>	am <b>ātō</b>	mon <b>ētō</b>	reg <b>itō</b>	aud <b>itō</b>
	am <b>ātō</b>	mon <b>ētō</b>	reg <b>itō</b>	aud <b>itō</b>
	am <b>ātōte</b>	mon <b>ētōte</b>	reg <b>itōte</b>	aud <b>itōte</b>
	am <b>antō</b>	mon <b>entō</b>	reg <b>untō</b>	audi <b>untō</b>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	am <b>āre</b>	mon <b>ēre</b>	reg <b>ere</b>	aud <b>ire</b>
--------------	---------------	----------------	----------------	----------------

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	am <b>āns</b>	mon <b>ēns</b>	reg <b>ēns</b>	audi <b>ēns</b>
--------------	---------------	----------------	----------------	-----------------

## LESSON LXVIII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE  
FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

## 292. VOCABULARY.

cūstōdiō, īre,	to guard, defend.	<i>custod-y.</i>
dormiō, īre,	to sleep.	<i>dorm-ant.</i>
mūniō, īre,	to fortify.	<i>am-muni-tion.</i>
nēsciō, īre,	not to know, be ignorant.	
sciō, īre,	to know.	
Graecē sciō,	to know Greek.	
artē,	firmly, soundly.	
brevī,	in a short time, soon.	<i>brief.</i>
castra, ōrum, <i>n.</i>	camp.	
fūr, fūris, <i>m.</i>	thief.	<i>fur-tive.</i>
libenter,	willingly, gladly.	
Pompēius, iī, <i>m.</i>	Pompey, Gnaeus Pompey.	
testis, testis, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> <sup>1</sup>	witness.	<i>testi-fy.</i>
tuba, ae, <i>f.</i>	trumpet.	
turpis, e,	shameful, dishonorable, base.	<i>turpi-tude.</i>
vallum, ī, <i>n.</i>	wall, rampart, fortification.	<i>wall.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Decline *testis* like *hostis*, see 142.

**293.** *Translate into English.*

1. Quis, puerī, Graecē scit? Pater Graecē scit.
2. Num, puerī, Graecē scītis? Graecē nōn scīmus, sed Latīnē brevī sciēmus.
3. Iūcundum et ūtile est Latīnē scīre.
4. Est-ne turpe Graecē nēscīre? Nōn est turpe Graecē nēscīre, sed praeclārum est optimē Graecē scīre.
5. Num Cicerō cōsul Graecē sciēbat? Optimē Graecē sciēbat.
6. Nōn-ne ōrātōrem clārum hodiē audiētis? Audiēmus; nam semper iūcundum et ūtile est ōrātōrēs clārissimōs audīre.
7. Audītis-ne, militēs, cantum tubārum? Libenter audīmus.
8. Cīvēs Cicerōnem ōrātōrem clārissimum libenter audiēbant.
9. In pūgnīs cantum tubārum saepe audiētis.
10. Quis urbem cūstōdiēbat? Cōsulēs salūtem cīvium omnium cūstōdiēbant.
11. Militēs castra vallō fossā-que mūniēbant.
12. Nōn-ne castra mūniētis? Castra semper mūniēmus et cūstōdiēmus.
13. Num audiēbās, Carole, clāmōrēs militum? Nōn audiēbam; artē dormiēbam.
14. Verba testis nunc audiēmus.
15. Scītis-ne nōmen fūris? Nōmen fūris scīmus.
16. Quis fuit Pompēius? Fuit cīvis Rōmānus, vir fortissimus, imperātor māgnus.



*Gnaeus Pompey the Great.*

**294.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Charles, do you not hear the shouts of the boys? I hear the shouts. They are playing ball.

2. Does your teacher know Latin? He knows Latin and Greek.
3. Do all teachers know Latin? Many teachers do not know Latin.
4. Is it not an honor (honorable) to know Latin? It is an honor to know Latin well.
5. Judges, will you hear the words of the witness?
6. What does your witness know? What ought he to know? He knows the name of the thief.
7. Who will guard our city? Brave soldiers will always guard the city.
8. They were fortifying the city with a high wall.
9. Boys, hear the words of your father.
10. Men always gladly hear famous orators.
11. Pompey waged war with great glory.
12. Cicero, the famous orator, often praises Pompey, the great commander.

## LESSON LXIX.

## A DIALOGUE.

## 295. VOCABULARY.

admittō, ere,	to receive, admit.	<i>admit.</i>
agō, ere,	to lead, do.	
canō, ere,	to sing, sound, play.	<i>chant.</i>
cōnflīgō, ere,	to contend, fight.	<i>conflict.</i>
cupiō, cupere,	to desire, long for.	<i>cupi-dity.</i>
dēscendō, ere,	to go down, descend.	<i>descend.</i>
ēdō, ere,	to give forth.	<i>edit.</i>
inruō, ere,	to rush into.	
veniō, ire,	to come.	
exercitātiō, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	practice, exercise, drill.	<i>exercise.</i>
proelium, iī, <i>n.</i>	battle, conflict.	
signum, ī, <i>n.</i>	sign, signal, standard.	<i>sign.</i>
simulācrum, ī, <i>n.</i>	likeness, image, imitation.	

Taurī flūmen, flūminis, <i>n.</i>	Bull Run. <sup>1</sup>	
tentōrium, iī, <i>n.</i>	tent.	<i>tent.</i>
vērūs, a, um,	true, real, actual.	<i>ver-ity.</i>

## 296. COLLOQUIUM.

## MAGISTER ET DISCIPULUS.

Discipulus.—Audīs-ne cantum tubārum?

Magister.—Audiō. Tubae canunt in castrīs mīlitum nostrōrum.

D.—Quid agunt mīlitēs in castrīs?

M.—Exercent simulācrum pūgnae.

D.—Cūr canunt tubae?

M.—Signa ēdunt. Mīlitēs in vērīs pūgnīs saepe cantum audiunt.

D.—Valdē cupiō mīlitum exercitātiōnēs vidēre.

M.—Venī mēcum.<sup>2</sup> In castra dēscendēmus.

D.—Nōn-ne mīlitēs castra cūstōdiunt?

M.—Castra semper cūstōdiunt, sed admittunt omnēs cīvēs.

D.—Adfuitī-ne unquam in vērā pūgnā?

M.—Adfui cum mīlitēs nostrī in proeliō ad Taurī flūmen cum hostibus cōnflīgēbant.

D.—Erās-ne mīles in exercitū?

M.—Nōn mīles eram, sed pater meus partem exercitūs dūcēbat. Eō tempore puer eram. Dormiēbam in patris tentōriō cum hostēs in castra inruēbant.

297. *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Adfuitis-ne in proeliō ad Taurī flūmen? 2. Adfuit-ne pater tuus unquam in vērā pūgnā? 3. Nōn-ne eō tempore castra cūstōdiēbātis? 4. Quis castra cūstōdiet? 5. Quid puer eō tempore in castrīs agēbat? 6. Nōn-ne mīlitēs nostrī urbem cūstōdient?

<sup>1</sup> Literally, the stream or run of the bull.

<sup>2</sup> See 265, note.

## LESSON LXX.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

298. ACTIVE VOICE.—Amō, *I love*. PRESENT STEM, amā.<sup>1</sup>

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

amō                      amāre                      amāvī                      amātum

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.                      PRESENT TENSE.                      PLURAL.

amō, <sup>1</sup>	<i>I love,</i> <sup>2</sup>	amāmus,	<i>we love,</i>
amās,	<i>you love,</i> <sup>3</sup>	amātis,	<i>you love,</i>
amat,	<i>he loves;</i>	amant,	<i>they love.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

amābam,	<i>I was loving,</i>	amābāmus,	<i>we were loving,</i>
amābās,	<i>you were loving,</i>	amābātis,	<i>you were loving,</i>
amābat,	<i>he was loving;</i>	amābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

## FUTURE.

amābō,	<i>I shall love,</i> <sup>4</sup>	amābimus,	<i>we shall love,</i>
amābis,	<i>you will love,</i>	amābitis,	<i>you will love,</i>
amābit,	<i>he will love;</i>	amābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

## PERFECT.

amāvī,	<i>I have loved,</i> <sup>5</sup>	amāvimus,	<i>we have loved,</i>
amāvisti,	<i>you have loved,</i>	amāvistis,	<i>you have loved,</i>
amāvit,	<i>he has loved;</i>	amāverunt, ēre,	<i>they have loved.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

amāveram,	<i>I had loved,</i>	amāverāmus,	<i>we had loved,</i>
amāverās,	<i>you had loved,</i>	amāverātis,	<i>you had loved,</i>
amāverat,	<i>he had loved;</i>	amāverant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

<sup>1</sup> The final *ā* of the stem disappears in *amō*.

<sup>2</sup> Or *I am loving, I do love*. So in the Imperfect, *I loved, I was loving, I did love*.

<sup>3</sup> Or *thou lovest*. So in the other tenses, *thou wast loving, thou wilt love, etc.*

<sup>4</sup> Or *I will love*. So in the Future Perfect, *I shall have loved or I will have loved*.

<sup>5</sup> Or *I loved*.

SINGULAR.	FUTURE PERFECT.	PLURAL.
amā <b>verō</b> , <i>I shall have loved,</i> <sup>1</sup>	amā <b>verimus</b> , <i>we shall have loved,</i>	
amā <b>veris</b> , <i>you will have loved,</i>	amā <b>veritis</b> , <i>you will have loved,</i>	
amā <b>verit</b> , <i>he will have loved;</i>	amā <b>verint</b> , <i>they will have loved.</i>	

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> amā <b>ā</b> , <i>love thou;</i>	amā <b>āte</b> , <i>love ye.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> amā <b>ātō</b> , <i>thou shalt love,</i>	amā <b>ātōte</b> , <i>ye shall love,</i>
amā <b>ātō</b> , <i>he shall love;</i>	amā <b>antō</b> , <i>they shall love.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> amā <b>re</b> , <i>to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> amā <b>visse</b> , <i>to have loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> amā <b>tūrus</b> <sup>2</sup> <b>esse</b> , <i>to be about to love.</i>

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> amā <b>ns</b> , <sup>3</sup> <i>loving.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> amā <b>tūrus</b> , <sup>2</sup> <i>about to love.</i>

GERUND.<sup>4</sup>

<i>Gen.</i> amā <b>ndī</b> , <i>of loving,</i>
<i>Dat.</i> amā <b>ndō</b> , <i>for loving,</i>
<i>Acc.</i> amā <b>ndum</b> , <i>loving,</i>
<i>Abl.</i> amā <b>ndō</b> , <i>by loving.</i>

SUPINE.<sup>4</sup>

<i>Acc.</i> amā <b>tum</b> , <i>to love,</i>
<i>Abl.</i> amā <b>tū</b> , <i>to love, to be loved.</i>

## LESSON LXXI.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.—HANNIBAL'S SPEECH.

## 299. VOCABULARY.

aedificō, āre, āvī, ātum, <sup>5</sup>	to build, erect.	<i>edify.</i>
celebrō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to honor, celebrate.	<i>celebrate.</i>
creō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to make, choose, elect.	<i>create.</i>
dēlibērō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to deliberate.	<i>deliberate.</i>
fugō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to rout, put to flight.	<i>fug-itive.</i>

<sup>1</sup> See page 164, foot-note 4.<sup>2</sup> Decline like *bonus*, 101.<sup>3</sup> For declension, see 182.<sup>4</sup> Observe that the *Gerund* and *Supine* are verbal nouns, used in certain cases—the *Gerund* in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular; the *Supine* in the accusative and ablative singular.<sup>5</sup> Observe that all these verbs form the Principal Parts like *amō*, with the endings *ō, āre, āvī, ātum*. They are inflected throughout like *amō*. The same is also true of the other verbs of this conjugation used in the last eighteen lessons.

<b>liberō, āre, āvī, ātum,</b>	to free, liberate, set free.	<i>liberate.</i>
<b>superō, āre, āvī, ātum,</b>	to surmount, conquer, pass, surpass.	
<b>vāstō, āre, āvī, ātum,</b>	to lay waste.	<i>waste.</i>
<b>centum, indeclinable adj.</b>	hundred.	<i>cent-ennial.</i>
<b>cōntiō, ōnis, f.</b>	meeting, assembly.	
<b>facile, adv.</b>	easily.	
<b>fēstus, a, um,</b>	festive, festal,	<i>fest-al.</i>
<b>magistrātus, ūs, m.</b>	magistrate, public officer.	<i>magistrate.</i>
<b>nātālis, nātāle,</b>	of birth, natal.	<i>natal.</i>
<b>diēs nātālis,</b>	birthday.	
<b>opulentus, a, um,</b>	rich, wealthy.	<i>opulent.</i>
<b>pulehritūdō, pulchritū- dinis, f.</b>	beauty.	
<b>Themistoclēś, is or ī,<sup>1</sup> m.</b>	Themistocles, Grecian general.	
<b>tīmor, ōris, m.</b>	fear.	<i>tim-idity.</i>

**300.** Examine the following sentences :

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Hostēs <b>ab urbe</b> arcent.             | <i>They keep the enemy FROM THE CITY.</i>    |
| 2. Cīvēs <b>metū</b> liberant.               | <i>They free the citizens FROM FEAR.</i>     |
| 3. Cōnsulem <b>omnī honōre</b> prī-<br>vant. | <i>They deprive the consul OF ALL HONOR.</i> |

In these examples observe that **ab urbe**, *from the city*, **metū**, *from fear*, and **honōre**, *of honor*, all involve the idea of *separation*. The Ablative thus used is called the **ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION**. Observe that in the first example the Ablative takes the preposition **ab**, and that in the other examples it is used without the preposition. Hence we have the following rule :

**RULE XXII.—Ablative of Separation.**

Separation is denoted by the *Ablative with or without a preposition*.

**301.** *Translate into English.*

1. Homērus, clārissimus poēta, laudēs prīncipum Graecōrum celebrāvit.

---

<sup>1</sup> The *ī* is an *irregular* Genitive ending sometimes found in words derived from the Greek.

2. Multī poētae glōriam laudem-que populī Rōmānī celebrāvērunt.
3. Tuās laudēs, vir clārissime, celebrāmus, nam hostēs fugāvistī et patriam periculō māgnō<sup>1</sup> liberāvistī.
4. Cicerō cōsul patriam periculō māgnō liberāvit.
5. Est-ne māgna laus patriam periculō liberāvisse? Hostēs fugāvisse et patriam periculō liberāvisse est māxima laus.
6. Quis Graeciam periculō liberāverat? Themistoclēs Persās fugāverat et patriam periculō māgnō liberāverat.<sup>2</sup>
7. Militēs nostrī fortiter prō patriā pūgnāvērunt.
8. Num clāssem iam aedificāverātis? Clāssem centum nāvium aedificāverāmus.
9. Fortiter pūgnāte, militēs; brevī patriam periculō liberāverītis.
10. Bonōs puerōrum mōrēs herī māne laudāvī.
11. Nōn-ne puerōs anteā saepe laudāvistī? Bonōs discipulōrum mōrēs saepe laudāveram.
12. Hēsternō diē cīvēs dē rē publicā in cōntiōne dēliberābant.
13. Novōs magistrātūs crās creābimus.
14. Carolus diem nātālem crās celebrābit.
15. Diēs fēstōs semper celebrāmus.
16. Militēs nostrī labōre et pūgnandō<sup>3</sup> fessī erant.
17. Ars pūgnandī<sup>4</sup> Graecīs et Rōmānīs erat nōta.



*Themistocles, the famous Athenian general and statesman.*

<sup>1</sup> *Periculō māgnō*, ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION.

<sup>2</sup> Themistocles, the Athenian general, conquered the Persians in the famous battle of Salamis, 480 B. C.

<sup>3</sup> *Pūgnandō* is a Gerund in the Ablative, and, like *labōre*, is an ABLATIVE OF MEANS; see 114 and 298, with foot-note 4, page 165.

<sup>4</sup> The genitive *pūgnandī* depends upon *ars*, according to 51, Rule XVI.

**302.** HANNIBAL'S SPEECH ON ENTERING ITALY.

Montēs altissimōs, mīlitēs fortissimī, superāvistis. Iam vidētis Ītaliā, domicilium hostium nostrōrum. Brevī tempore urbem Rōmam vidēbitis. Rōmānī, hostēs nostrī, in mākīmō timōre sunt. Nōn fortiter pūgnābunt. Vōs semper fuistis fortissimī, semper fortissimī eritis. Fortiter semper pūgnāvistis, fortiter semper pūgnābitis. Gallī fortēs iam sunt amīcī nostrī; Rōmānōs facile superābitis. Multae urbēs opulentae erunt praeda vestra.

**303.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Poets have often celebrated the praises of kings.
2. Who has celebrated the praises of Caesar? Many orators and poets have celebrated the praises of Caesar.
3. The Romans celebrated many festal days.
4. Henry, when will you celebrate your birthday? I celebrated my birthday yesterday.
5. Did not the Greeks conquer the Persians? They conquered the Persians in (by) a great battle.<sup>1</sup>
6. Had not the Persians already conquered a large part of Asia? They had already conquered a very large part of Asia.
7. Girls, have not flowers often delighted you? They have often delighted us with their beauty.
8. Our citizens have always honored good and wise men.
9. It is always pleasant to honor good and wise men.
10. We ought not to lay waste the fields of the enemy.
11. They have never laid waste our fields.
12. Soldiers, you have always fought bravely for your country.
13. To have fought bravely for one's country is great praise.
14. Citizens, in a short time we shall have liberated you from great danger.

---

<sup>1</sup> Use the *Ablative of Means*.

## LESSON LXXII.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## SECOND CONJUGATION: E VERBS.

304. ACTIVE VOICE.—Moneō, *I advise*. PRESENT STEM, *monē*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

moneō      monēre      monuī      monitum

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	<i>I advise.</i>	PLURAL.
moneō		monēmus
monēs		monētis
monet		monent

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advising, or I advised.*

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbās	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will advise.*

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

## PERFECT.

*I have advised, or I advised.*

monuī	monuimus
monuistī	monuistis
monuīt	monuērunt, or ēre

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised.*

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have advised.*

monuerō	monuerīmus
monuerīs	monuerītis
monuerit	monuerint

SINGULAR.		IMPERATIVE.	PLURAL.	
<i>Pres.</i>	mon <b>ē</b> ,	<i>advise thou;</i>	mon <b>ēte</b> ,	<i>advise ye.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	mon <b>ētō</b> ,	<i>thou shalt advise,</i>	mon <b>ētōte</b> ,	<i>ye shall advise,</i>
	mon <b>ētō</b> ,	<i>he shall advise.</i>	mon <b>entō</b> ,	<i>they shall advise.</i>

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.			
<i>Pres.</i>	mon <b>ēre</b> ,	<i>to advise.</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	mon <b>ēns</b> ,	<i>advising.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	mon <b>uisse</b> ,	<i>to have advised.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	monit <b>ūrus</b> ,	<i>about to advise.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	monit <b>ūrus esse</b> ,	<i>to be about to advise.</i>			

GERUND.		SUPINE.			
<i>Gen.</i>	mon <b>endī</b> ,	<i>of advising,</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	monit <b>um</b> ,	<i>to advise,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	mon <b>endō</b> ,	<i>for advising,</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	monit <b>ū</b> ,	<i>to advise, to be advised.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	mon <b>endum</b> ,	<i>advising,</i>			
<i>Abl.</i>	mon <b>endō</b> ,	<i>by advising.</i>			

## 305. VOCABULARY.

dēfendō, ere,	to ward off, defend, protect.	<i>defend.</i>
dis-pliceō, ēre, uī, itum, <sup>1</sup>	to displease, be displeasing.	<i>displease.</i>
flōreo, ēre, uī,	to flourish, bloom.	<i>flor-id.</i>
iactō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to throw, hurl.	
pāreō, ēre, uī, itum, <sup>1</sup>	to obey, be obedient, be subject.	
perōrō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to speak at length, close, finish.	
placeō, ēre, uī, itum, <sup>1</sup>	to please, be pleasing.	<i>please.</i>
plaudō, ere,	to applaud, give applause.	<i>ap-plaud.</i>
postulō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to demand, ask.	
tentō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to try, attempt.	<i>tenta-tive.</i>
timeō, ēre, uī, <sup>2</sup>	to fear, dread, be afraid of.	<i>tim-id.</i>
audītor, ōris, m.	hearer, listener.	<i>auditor.</i>
faber, fabrī, m.	workman, smith, carpenter.	<i>fabr-ic.</i>
lapis, lapidis, m.	stone.	
mercēs, mereēdis, f.	reward, pay, wages.	<i>merce-nary.</i>

<sup>1</sup> These verbs govern the *Dative*, i. e., take an *Indirect Object*.

<sup>2</sup> *Timeō* has only *three* of the regular Principal Parts in use, and is accordingly here repeated, though already defined in 360.

Give the Principal Parts of *dēbeō*, *exerceō*, *habeō*, and *mereō*, defined in 260,<sup>1</sup> like *moneō*, *monēre*, *monuī*, *monitum*.

### 306. SYNONYMS.

*Placeō*, *dēlectō*; *to please, delight.*

1. *Placeō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itum*, *with dative*; TO PLEASE, SATISFY.
2. *Dēlectō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, *with accusative*; TO DELIGHT, CHARM, PLEASE.

**307.** Examine the following sentences:

1. *Liber mihī placet.* *The book pleases ME.*
2. *Rēx lēgibus pāret.* *The king obeys THE LAWS.*
3. *Reī pūblicae servit.* *He serves THE REPUBLIC.*

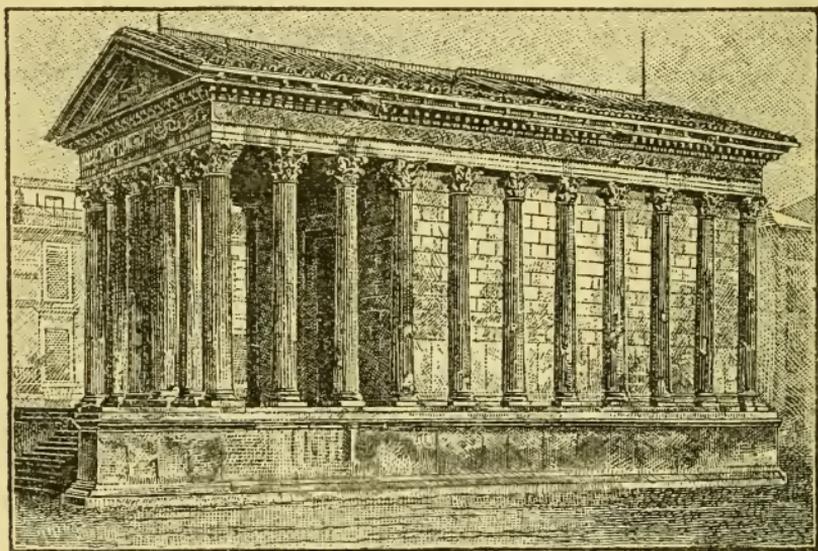
In these examples observe that the Object is in the DATIVE, not in the Accusative. Thus in general many verbs signifying to *please* or *displease*, *command* or *obey*, *serve* or *resist*, and the like, take the DATIVE of the INDIRECT OBJECT, not the Accusative of the Direct Object. See 59, Rule XII.

**308.** *Translate into English.*

1. *Quis omnibus hominibus unquam placuit? Omnibus hominibus nēmō unquam placuit, nēmō unquam placēbit.*
2. *Diligentia vestra, puerī, praeceptōribus valdē placuit.*
3. *Num, Carole, tibī semper placuistī? Mihī nōn semper placuī.*
4. *Nōn-ne amīcīs saepe placuī? Amīcīs semper placuistī et iūcundum est amīcīs placēre.*
5. *Epistolae vestrae, puerī, patrī vestrō valdē placuērunt.*
6. *Iūcundum est patrī et matrī placuisse.*
7. *Num lēgēs vōbīs displicent? Nōbīs placent.*
8. *Sevērae Dracōnis lēgēs Athēniēnsibus displicuērunt.*
9. *Cicerō multōs librōs Graecōs habuisse dīcitur.*
10. *Nōn-ne lēgibus semper pārūimus? Lēgibus bonīs semper pārūistis.*

<sup>1</sup> It is not deemed necessary to repeat these and other *regular verbs* already defined, even though only two of the Principal Parts have been given as they are inflected throughout, like *amō*, if of the first conjugation, and like *moneō*, if of the second.

11. Ubi sunt fabrī nostrī, Henrice? In cōntiōne sunt. Māiōrem mercēdem ā nōbīs postulant.
12. Brevī tempore, militēs, māgnū in rē militārī ūsum habuerītis.
13. Rōmānī multīs in terrīs templa māgnifica aedificāvērunt.
14. Gallī oppida sua dēfendere tentāvērunt.
15. Lapidēs iactāre, puerī, nōn dēbētis.
16. Omnēs artēs apud Graecōs flōruērunt.
17. Ōrātor perōrāvit. Nunc plaudite, audītōrēs.



*Roman temple at Nîmes, in France.*

**309.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. I have often praised you, boys, for you have often deserved praise.
2. Frederick, we have never praised your brother, for he has never deserved great praise.
3. Judge, your son has greatly pleased all his teachers.
4. My son, have you always obeyed your teacher? I have sometimes obeyed my teachers.
5. All citizens ought to obey the laws.

6. Have you often advised my son? I have often advised your son, and he has always obeyed my words.
7. Have you ever had many books? I have never had many Latin books.
8. You will soon read Latin and have Latin books.
9. You, brave soldiers, have never feared danger
10. Had you never before exercised your memory? I have always exercised my memory.
11. The Romans in ancient times were subject to (obeyed) kings.

## LESSON LXXIII.

## A DIALOGUE.

## 310. VOCABULARY.

<i>dēcēdō, ere,</i>	to go away, depart.	
<i>impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum,</i>	to get, obtain.	
<i>intrō, āre, āvī, ātum,</i>	to go into, enter.	
<i>nārrō, āre, āvī, ātum,</i>	to tell, narrate, relate.	<i>narrate.</i>
<i>occupō, āre, āvī, ātum,</i>	to seize, take possession of.	<i>occupy.</i>
<i>properō, āre, āvī, ātum,</i>	to hasten, go quickly.	
<i>terreō, ēre, terruī, territum,</i>	to terrify, frighten.	<i>terri-fy.</i>
<i>videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum.</i>	to see, perceive.	
<i>cōnsilium, iī, n.</i>	plan, counsel, council, assembly.	<i>counsel.</i>
<i>minimē, adv., superlative.</i>	least of all, not at all.	
<i>quīdam, indefinite pronoun.<sup>1</sup></i>	a certain, a certain one.	
<i>operārius, iī, m.</i>	laborer, workman.	
<i>pusillus, a, um,</i>	very small, insignificant.	
<i>sībilus, ī, m.</i>	hissing.	
<i>statūra, ae, f.</i>	height, size.	<i>stature.</i>
<i>suggestus, ūs, m.</i>	platform, stage.	
<i>tumultus, ūs, m.</i>	disturbance, noise.	<i>tumult.</i>
<i>unde, adv.</i>	whence, from what place?	
<i>vērō, adv.</i>	in truth, indeed, but.	<i>ver-ily.</i>
<i>vix, adv.</i>	hardly, scarcely.	

<sup>1</sup> See 292.

## 311. COLLOQUIUM.

CAROLUS ET FREDERICUS.

Carolus.—Unde venīs, Frederīce?

Frederīcus.—Veniō ex theātrō, ubī cōntiō fuit.

C.—Num populus novōs magistrātūs creāvit?

F.—Cōntiō fuit fabrōrum. Māiōrem mercēdem ā magistrīs suis postulant.

C.—Num māiōrem mercēdem in cōntiōne impetrāvērunt?

F.—Minimē. Dēliberābant in cōntiōne.

C.—Nārrā mihi dē fabrōrum cōnsiliis.

F.—Cum intrāvī theātrum, in suggestū erat faber quīdam, ingentis statūrae homō. Audītōrēs plaudēbant māgnō cum tumultū. Vix perōrāverat faber, cum homō pusillus suggestum occupāvit. Cōntiō hominem sībilis et clāmōribus salūtāvit. Multī fabrī lapidēs iactāvērunt et hominem pusillum terrucrunt. Tumultus erat māgnus. Multī operārii hominem armīs dēfendere tentāvērunt. Itaque omnēs pūgnam parābant. Ego vērō ex theātrō dēcēdere properāvī.

C.—Nunquam-ne cōntiōnem viderās?

F.—Tālem cōntiōnem nunquam videram.

C.—Non dēbuistī esse<sup>1</sup> in tāli cōntiōne.

F.—Sciō, sed Ricardus mē in cōntiōnem invītāvit.

**312.**—*Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Quis Fredericum in cōntiōnem invītāvit? 2. Ubi fuit cōntiō? 3. Quid agēbant fabrī in cōntiōne? 4. Vidistī-ne unquam cōntiōnem? 5. Nōn-ne homō pusillus fabrōs timuit? 6. Quid postulābant fabrī?

---

<sup>1</sup> *Dēbuistī esse*, 'you ought to have been.' Observe the difference of idiom between the Latin and the English in the use of tenses. In Latin the leading verb, *dēbuistī*, is in the Perfect tense, while the infinitive is in the Present; but in English the leading verb is in the Present, *ought*, while the infinitive, *to have been*, is in the Perfect.

## LESSON LXXIV.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

313. ACTIVE VOICE.—Regō, *I rule*. PRESENT STEM, *rege*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

regō                      regere                      rēxī<sup>1</sup>                      rēctum<sup>1</sup>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	<i>I rule.</i>	PLURAL.
regō		regimur
regis		regitis
regit		regunt

## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruling, or I ruled.*

regēbam	regēbāmus
regēbās	regēbātis
regēbat	regēbant

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will rule.*

regam	regēmus
regēs	regētis
reget	regent

## PERFECT.

*I have ruled, or I ruled.*

rēxī	rēximur
rēxistī	rēxistis
rēxit	rēxērunt, or ēre

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had ruled.*

rēxeram	rēxerāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis
rēxerat	rēxerant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have ruled.*

rēxerō	rēxerīmus
rēxerīs	rēxerītis
rēxerit	rēxerint

<sup>1</sup> For *reg-sī*, *reg-tum*.

## IMPERATIVE.

## SINGULAR.

*Pres.* **rege**, rule thou;  
*Fut.* **regitō**, thou shalt rule,  
**regitō**, he shall rule.

## PLURAL.

**regite**, rule ye.  
**regitōte**, ye shall rule,  
**reguntō**, they shall rule.

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* **regere**, to rule.  
*Perf.* **rēxisse**, to have ruled.  
*Fut.* **rēctūrus esse**, to be about  
to rule.

## PARTICIPLE.

*Pres.* **regēns**, ruling.  
*Fut.* **rēctūrus**, about to rule.

## GERUND.

*Gen.* **regendī**, of ruling.  
*Dat.* **regendō**, for ruling.  
*Acc.* **regendum**, ruling.  
*Abl.* **regendō**, by ruling.

## SUPINE.

*Acc.* **rēctum**, to rule.  
*Abl.* **rēctū**, to rule, to be ruled.

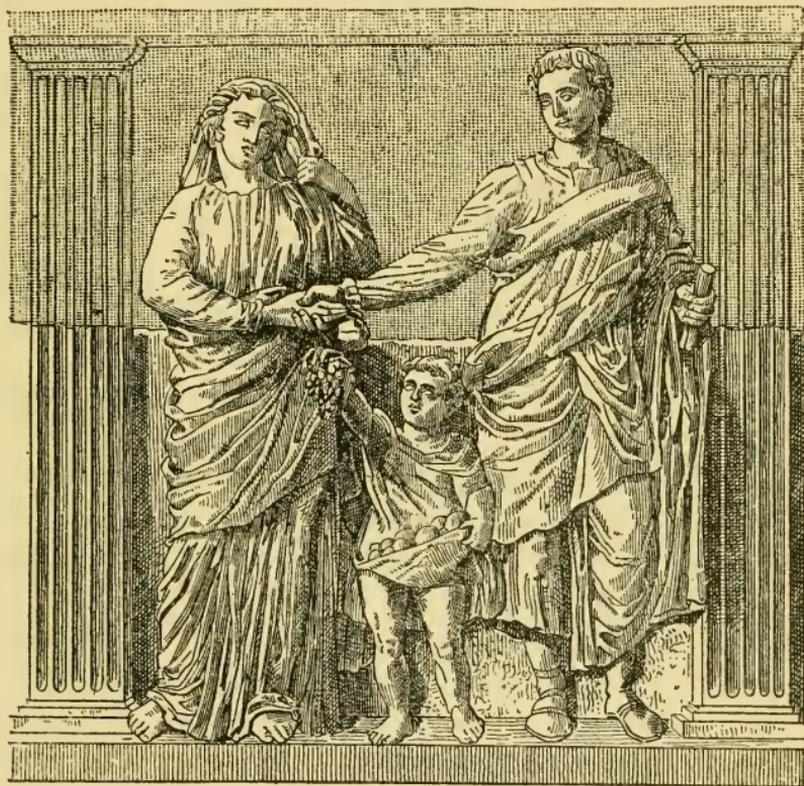
## 314. VOCABULARY.

<b>cingō</b> , ere, <b>cinxi</b> , <b>cinctum</b> ,	to surround, inclose.	<i>cinct-ure.</i>
<b>dīcō</b> , ere, <b>dīxi</b> , <b>dictum</b> ,	to speak, say, tell, talk.	<i>dict-ate.</i>
<b>dūcō</b> , ere, <b>dūxi</b> , <b>ductum</b> ,	to lead.	<i>duct-ile.</i>
<b>dē-dūcō</b> , ere, <b>dēdūxi</b> , <b>dēductum</b> ,	to lead off or away.	<i>deduce.</i>
<b>ē-dūcō</b> , ere, <b>ēdūxi</b> , <b>ēductum</b> ,	to lead out or from.	<i>educē.</i>
<b>in mātrimōnium dūcere</b> ,	to marry.	
<b>legō</b> , <b>legere</b> , <b>lēgī</b> , <b>lēctum</b> ,	to read.	<i>leg-ible.</i>
<b>scrībo</b> , ere, <b>scrīpsī</b> , <b>scrīptum</b> ,	to write.	<i>scribe.</i>
<b>tribuō</b> , ere, <b>tribuī</b> , <b>tribūtum</b> ,	to grant, bestow, render, award.	<i>tribute.</i>
<b>beneficium</b> , <b>iī</b> , <i>n.</i>	favor, service, benefit.	<i>benefici-al.</i>
<b>grātia</b> , <b>ae</b> , <i>f.</i>	gratitude, thanks.	<i>grati-tude.</i>
<b>hīberna</b> , <b>ōrum</b> , <i>n., plur.</i>	winter quarters.	
<b>mātrimōnium</b> , <b>iī</b> , <i>n.</i>	marriage, matrimony.	<i>matrimony.</i>
<b>nōndum</b> , <i>adv.</i>	not yet.	
<b>Cinna</b> , <b>ae</b> , <i>m.</i>	Cinna, a family name. <sup>1</sup>	
<b>Terentia</b> , <b>ae</b> , <i>f.</i>	Terentia, Roman name.	

<sup>1</sup> *Lucius Cornelius Cinna*, the father-in-law of Caesar and an adherent of Marius in the civil war, is here meant.

**315.** *Translate into English.*

1. Nōn-ne Rōmulus urbem mūrō cinxit? Urbem mūrō cinxisse dīcitur.
2. Nōn-ne Hannibal exercitum in Ītaliā dūxit? Māgnū exercitum in Ītaliā dūxit.
3. Quot elephantōs in Ītaliā dūxit Hannibal? Trīgintā septem elephantōs in Ītaliā dūxisse dīcitur.
4. Caesar equitēs ex castrīs in aciem cōdūxerat.
5. Imperātor exercitum in hiberna nōndum cōdūxerat.

*A Roman marriage.*

6. Quot librōs scrīpsit Cicerō? Multōs librōs optimē Latīnē scrīpsit.
7. Nōn-ne Cicerō dē amīcitiā scrīpsit? Optimum librum dē amīcitiā scrīpsit.

8. Frātrēs meī dē incendiō māximō ad mē scrīpsērunt.
9. Multōs librōs ūtilēs, puerī, iam lēgistis.
10. Epistulam tuam pater meus lēgit et laudāvit.
11. Multa beneficia, cīvēs, mihi tribuistis; vōbīs māgnam grātiam dēbeō.
12. Nōbīs, cōsul sapientissimē, multa beneficia tribuistī; tibi māgnam grātiam dēbēmus.
13. Iūcundum est beneficia amīcīs tribuere.
14. Artem dīcendī cottīdiē exercēmus.
15. Artem scrībendī cottīdiē exercēre dēbētis.
16. Cicerō Terentiam in mātrimōnium dūxit.
17. Caesar Cornēliam, filiam Cinnae, in mātrimōnium dūxit.

### 316. *Translate into Latin.*

1. How many books, boys, have you read? We have read many very good books.
2. Have you read many Latin books? We are now reading a Latin book, and we shall soon be reading the works of Caesar.
3. What did Caesar write? He wrote seven books about the Gallic War.
4. Did Caesar write Greek well? He did not write Greek, but he wrote Latin exceedingly well.
5. Charles, what have you read recently? I have been reading the works of Vergil, the famous poet.
6. What had you previously read? I had read the books of Caesar, but I had never read the orations of Cicero.
7. You ought to read the orations of Cicero. He was the most famous of Roman orators.
8. Did not Cicero bestow many favors upon his friends? He is said to have bestowed many favors upon all his friends.
9. Had not the Romans bestowed great honor upon Cicero? They had already bestowed great honor upon the consul.

## LESSON LXXV.

## THE GAULS ENTER ROME.

## 317. VOCABULARY.

ascendō, ere, scendī, scēnsūm,	to go up, mount, ascend.	<i>ascend.</i>
claudō, ere, clausī, clausūm,	to shut, close.	<i>close.</i>
ēvādō, ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsūm,	to go out, escape.	<i>evade.</i>
incendō, ere, cendī, cēnsūm,	to set on fire, burn.	<i>incend-iary.</i>
trucidō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to slaughter, massacre.	
vertō, ere, ī, versūm,	to turn.	<i>di-vert.</i>
vincō, ere, vīcī, vīctūm,	to conquer.	
aut,	or.	
aut—aut,	either—or.	
Allia, ae, <i>f.</i>	Allia, river near Rome.	
Brennus, ī, <i>m.</i>	Brennus, leader of the Gauls.	
Capitōlium, īī, <i>n.</i>	Capitol, citadel of Rome.	
cūria, ae, <i>f.</i>	senate, senate-house.	
mīlia, ium, <i>n. plur.</i> <sup>1</sup>	thousand, thousands.	
senātor, ōris, <i>m.</i>	senator.	<i>senator.</i>

## 318. THE GAULS UNDER BRENNUS ENTER ROME, 390 B. C.

Brennus, dux Gallōrum, exercitū Rōmānum ad Alliam vīcerat. Gallī multa mīlia Rōmānōrum trucidāverant; multī Rōmānī terga verterant; paucī ē manibus hostium ēvāserant. Brennus exercitū suū iam ad urbem dūcēbat. Tum cīvēs aut fugae sē mandāvērunt aut in Capitōlium ascendērunt. Senātōrēs in forō adventum Gallōrum expectābant. Portās urbis nōn clausērunt. Itaque Gallī per portās in urbem intrāvērunt et ad cūriam sē vertērunt. Postea omnēs senātōrēs trucidāvērunt et urbem incendērunt.

319. *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Quis Rōmānōs ad Alliam vīcit? 2. Ubī erat flūmen Allia? 3. Quot Rōmānōs trucidāvērunt Gallī? 4. Ubī

<sup>1</sup> See Numerals, 384.

senātōrēs Gallōs expectāvērunt? 5. Dūxit-ne Brennus exercitum suum in urbem? 6. Quot Rōmānī ē manibus hostium ēvāsērunt? 7. Nōn-ne adventus Gallōrum cīvēs valdē terruit? 8. Timēbat-ne dux Gallōrum militēs Rōmānōs?

## LESSON LXXVI.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

320. ACTIVE VOICE.—Audiō, *I hear*. PRESENT STEM, *audi*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

audiō      audīre      audīvi      audītum

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

	<i>I hear.</i>	
SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
audiō		audīmus
audīs		audītis
audit		audiunt

## IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing, or I heard.*

audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will hear.*

audiam	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audient

## PERFECT.

*I have heard, or I heard.*

audīvi	audīvimus
audīvistī	audīvistis
audīvit	audīvērunt, or ēre

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard.*

audīveram	audīverāmus
audīverās	audīverātis
audīverat	audīverant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have heard.*

SINGULAR.  
 audīverō  
 audīverīs  
 audīverit

PLURAL.  
 audīverīmus  
 audīverītis  
 audīverint

## IMPERATIVE.

Pres. audī, *hear thou;*            audīte, *hear ye.*  
 Fut. audītō, *thou shalt hear,*    audītōte, *ye shall hear,*  
 audītō, *he shall hear;*        audiuntō, *they shall hear.*

## INFINITIVE.

Pres. audīre, *to hear.*  
 Perf. audīvisse, *to have heard.*  
 Fut. audītūrus esse, *to be*  
       *about to hear.*

## PARTICIPLE.

Pres. audiēns, *hearing.*  
 Fut. audītūrus, *about to hear.*

## GERUND.

Gen. audiendī, *of hearing,*  
 Dat. audiendō, *for hearing,*  
 Acc. audiendum, *hearing,*  
 Abl. audiendō, *by hearing.*

## SUPINE.

Acc. auditum, *to hear,*  
 Abl. auditū, *to hear, to be heard.*

## 321. Examine the following sentences :

- |                               |                             |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Sapientēs saepe laudantur. | THE WISE are often praised. |
| 2. Bonī sunt beātī.           | THE GOOD are happy.         |
| 3. Multa scītis.              | You know MANY THINGS.       |
| 4. Nēmō omnia scit.           | No one knows ALL THINGS.    |

In these examples observe—

1) That **sapientēs** and **bonī** are used SUBSTANTIVELY, like the English *the wise, the good*. Adjectives are often thus used in the *masculine plural*.

2) That **multa** and **omnia** are also used SUBSTANTIVELY, *many things, all things, everything*. Adjectives are often thus used in the *neuter plural*.

## 322. VOCABULARY.

argentum, ī, n.	silver, silver money.
Alpēs, ium, f.	Alps.
Hortēnsius, iī, m.	Hortensius, the Roman orator. <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The orator was Quintus Hortensius.

<b>Lacedaemoniī, ōrum, m. plur.</b>	Lacedaemonians, Spartans.	
<b>latrō, latrōnis, m.</b>	robber, brigand.	
<b>nātūra, ae, f.</b>	nature.	<i>nature.</i>
<b>pondus, ponderis, n.</b>	weight, mass, amount.	<i>ponder-ous.</i>
<b>serviō, īre, īvī, ītum,<sup>1</sup></b>	to serve, devote one's self to.	<i>serve.</i>

### 323. Translate into English.

1. Quem, Frederice, in senātū audīvistī? Multōs senātōrēs honestissimōs audīvī.
2. Num senātōrēs unquam antea audīverās? Senātōrem nunquam antea audīveram.
3. Caesar Cicerōnem ōrātōrem saepe audīvit.
4. Num cīvēs Rōmānī Cicerōnem unquam audīverunt? Cicerōnem saepe in forō Rōmānō audīverunt.
5. Quid, puerī, ā patre vestrō audīvistis? Nihil ā patre hodiē audīvimus.
6. Quid dē sapientibus Graeciae audīvistī? Multa audīvī.
7. Sapientēs Graeciae fuērunt clārissimī.
8. Num sapientēs Graeciae omnia sciēbant? Nōn omnia sciēbant. Nēmō unquam omnia scīvit.
9. Paucī multa bene scīverunt.
10. Bonī semper rei pūblicae servīvērunt.
11. Lacedaemoniī urbem suam nōn mūnīverunt.
12. Gallī oppida ingentibus mūrīs mūnīverant.
13. Nātūra Ītaliā Alpibus mūnīvit.
14. Patriae servīte, cīvēs; iūcundum est patriae servīre.
15. Dē latrōnibus audīvī.
16. Quid audīvistī? Quid postulant latrōnēs? Māgnū argentī pondus postulant.



*Quintus Hortensius.<sup>2</sup>*

<sup>1</sup> *Serviō* governs the DATIVE, i. e., takes an INDIRECT OBJECT.

<sup>2</sup> According to Cicero, he was one of the greatest of Roman orators.

17. Audīvistī-ne dē Hortēnsiō ōrātōre? Dē Quīntō Hortēnsiō saepe audīvī. Fuit ōrātor clārissimus.

**324.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. What have you heard to-day in school? I have heard many things about Rome.
2. It is always pleasant to hear about Rome.
3. Boys, you have heard many stories about Rome.
4. Did the Romans fortify their city? They fortified Rome with a high wall.
5. Soldiers, have you fortified the camp? We have already fortified our camp.
6. The Romans always fortified their camp.
7. What did the wise men of Greece know? They knew Greek.
8. What do the wise now know? They know many things, but not all things.
9. Did not Cicero devote himself to (serve) the republic? He devoted himself to the safety of the republic.
10. Boys, you ought to hear the singing of the birds.

LESSON LXXVII.

*A DIALOGUE.*

**325.** VOCABULARY.

**Note.**—It is deemed advisable that the learner should now begin to make regular use of the general vocabulary at the end of this volume. Accordingly, the special vocabularies prefixed to Dialogues and to other passages of connected discourse will contain only verbs. For other words the learner will be referred to the general vocabulary.

ab-dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum,	to lead away, carry away or off.	<i>abduct.</i>
con-dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum,	to hire.	
dī-mittō, ere, mīsī, missum,	to send away, release.	<i>dismiss.</i>

in-cidō, ere, cidī, —,	to happen, meet, fall in with.	<i>incident.</i>
iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussum,	to order.	
mittō, ere, mīsī, missum,	to send.	<i>miss-ive.</i>
op-primō, ere, pressī, pressum,	to take by surprise, over-power.	<i>oppress.</i>
re-dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum,	to lead back, bring back.	<i>reduce.</i>
trā-dō, ere, didī, ditum,	to hand over, deliver.	<i>tradi-tion.</i>

## 326. COLLOQUIUM.

## FREDERICUS ET SERVUS CAROLĪ.

**Note.**—The servant enters in a state of great excitement and delivers a letter to Frederick.

Servus.—Audīvistī-ne dē latrōnibus, domine?

Fredericus.—Nōn audīvī. Quid est?

S.—Dominus meus iussit mē epistolam tibi trādere.<sup>1</sup> Lege.

F.—“Manus latrōnum

Graecōrum ex īnsidiis mē in campō Marathōniō oppressit et captivum<sup>2</sup> abduxit. Itaque in potestāte sum latrōnum. Postulant māgnū argentī pondus prō vitā meā

et libertāte. Māgnō sum in periculō. Nisi pecūniam miseris, latrōnēs mē necābunt.”

F.—Pecūniam mittam. Ubī sunt latrōnēs?

S.—In montibus sunt.

F.—Adfuitī-ne cum latrōnēs Carolū, amicum meum, oppresserunt?



An Athenian silver coin of the age of Pericles.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Iussit mē trādere*, ‘ordered me to deliver.’ Observe that the *Latin* idiom is the same as the *English*. In each the verb takes the *Direct Object* with the *INFINITIVE*.

<sup>2</sup> *Captivum abduxit*, ‘carried away captive.’

<sup>3</sup> An Athenian tetradrachm. Notice the head of the goddess Athena and the owl, the symbol of wisdom.

S.—Aduī. Carolus condūxerat mē Athēnīs.<sup>1</sup> In manūs latrōnum unā cum Carolō incidī, sed dīmīsērunt mē cum epistolā. Necesse nōn erit pecūniam mittere latrōnibus.

F.—Cūr nōn erit necesse pecūniam mittere latrōnibus?



A Roman copper coin of the third century B. C.<sup>2</sup>

S.—Incidī forte in āgmen mīlitum. Ducī nārrāvī dē latrōnibus. Is extemplō mīlitēs suōs in latebrās latrōnum dēdūxit.

F.—Mīlitēs certē Carolum liberābunt et redūcent.

**327.** *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Nōn-ne dē latrōnibus saepe audīvistis? 2. Ubī incidit Carolus in manūs latrōnum? 3. Quis servum epistolam Fredericō trādere iussit? 4. Num Fredericus pecūniam latrōnibus mīsīt? 5. Audīvistis-ne unquam, puerī, dē campō Marathōniō? 6. Quis Carolum liberāvit?

## LESSON LXXVIII.

### VERBS.—PASSIVE VOICE.

#### FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

**328.** PASSIVE VOICE.—Amor, *I am loved.* PRESENT STEM, *amā.*

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

amor

amārī

amātus sum<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Athēnīs*, 'at Athens,' a *Locative*; see 40, 4, and 393.

<sup>2</sup> The Roman *ās*, the standard of the national currency; originally a pound of copper, but subsequently reduced in value. The piece here represented weighed about four ounces. Notice the double head of the god Janus, the prow, the wreath, the figure 1, and the inscription *Roma*.

<sup>3</sup> The *Principal Parts* in the *Passive Voice* are the PRESENT INDICATIVE, *amor*, the PRESENT INFINITIVE, *amārī*, and the PERFECT INDICATIVE, *amātus sum*, though the *Principal Parts* given in the *Active* may serve for both voices.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	<i>I am loved.</i>	PLURAL.
<b>amor</b>		<b>amāmur</b>
<b>amāris, or re</b>		<b>amāminī</b>
<b>amātur</b>		<b>amantur</b>

## IMPERFECT.

	<i>I was loved.</i>	
<b>amābar</b>		<b>amābāmur</b>
<b>amābāris, or re</b>		<b>amābāminī</b>
<b>amābātur</b>		<b>amābantur</b>

## FUTURE.

	<i>I shall or will be loved.</i>	
<b>amābor</b>		<b>amābimur</b>
<b>amāberis, or re</b>		<b>amābiminī</b>
<b>amābitur</b>		<b>amābuntur</b>

## PERFECT.

	<i>I have been loved or I was loved.</i>	
<b>amātus<sup>1</sup> sum</b>		<b>amātī sumus</b>
<b>amātus es</b>		<b>amātī estis</b>
<b>amātus est</b>		<b>amātī sunt</b>

## PLUPERFECT.

	<i>I had been loved.</i>	
<b>amātus eram</b>		<b>amātī erāmus</b>
<b>amātus erās</b>		<b>amātī erātis</b>
<b>amātus erat</b>		<b>amātī erant</b>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

	<i>I shall or will have been loved.</i>	
<b>amātus erō</b>		<b>amātī erimus</b>
<b>amātus eris</b>		<b>amātī critis</b>
<b>amātus erit</b>		<b>amātī crunt</b>

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> <b>amāre</b> , be thou loved ;	<b>amāminī</b> , be ye loved.
<i>Fut.</i> <b>amātor</b> , thou shalt be loved.	
<b>amātor</b> , he shall be loved ;	<b>amantor</b> , they shall be loved.

<sup>1</sup> Decline like *bonus*, 101. In the compound forms, *amātus sum*, *amātus eram*, etc., the participle *amātus* takes the gender and number of the subject.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

*Pres.* amārī, to be loved.

*Perf.* amātus<sup>1</sup> esse, to have been loved. *Perf.* amātus,<sup>1</sup> having been loved.

*Fut.* amātum irī, to be about to be loved. *Ger.*<sup>2</sup> amandus,<sup>1</sup> to be loved, desiring to be loved.

## LESSON LXXIX.

PASSIVE VOICE.—FIRST CONJUGATION.—PRESENT IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE.

## 329. VOCABULARY.

dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum,	to owe, be under obligation.	
dēbet,	(he) owes, ought.	
honōrō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to honor, respect.	honor.
op-pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to attack, assail, storm.	
ferrum, ī, n.	iron, weapon, sword.	
īgnis, is, m.	fire.	igni-te.
monīle, is, n.	necklace, collar.	
noctū, adv.	by night, at night.	noct-urnal.
ōrnāmentum, ī, n.	adornment, jewel, trinket.	ornament.

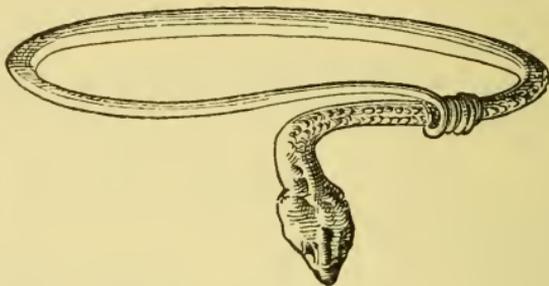
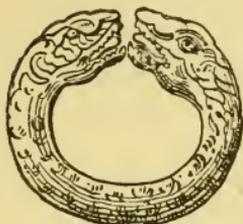
## 330. Translate into English.

1. Magister māgnam dīligentiam discipulōrum laudābat.
2. Māgna discipulōrum dīligentia ā magistrō laudābātur.
3. Germānī agrōs hostium ferrō īgnī-que vāstābant.
4. Hostium agrī ferrō īgnī-que ā Germānīs vāstābantur.
5. Rōmānī oppidum noctū oppūgnābant.
6. Oppidum ā Rōmānīs noctū oppūgnābātur.
7. Ā magistrīs, puerī, laudābiminī, nam dīligentēs fuistis.
8. Discipulī dīligentēs ā magistrīs laudārī dēbent.
9. Tū, Carole, equīs dēlectāris, nōs librīs dēlectāmur.

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note 1, page 186.

<sup>2</sup> Ger = Gerundive, the name given to one of the Passive Participles. It is also called the Future Passive Participle.

10. Frāter meus tē crās ad lūdum in hortum<sup>1</sup> invitābit.
11. Ā frātre meō crās ad lūdum in hortum invitāberis.
12. Iūcundum est ab amicīs amārī, ā magistrīs laudārī.
13. Nōn-ne filia tua monilī pulchrō dēlectātur? Valdē dēlectātur. Puellae ōrnāmentīs pulchrīs semper dēlectantur.
14. Honōrās omnēs bonōs et ab omnibus bonīs honōrāris.



*Jewelry found at Pompeii.<sup>2</sup>*

15. Omnēs bonōs semper honōrābis et semper honōrāberis ab omnibus bonīs.
16. Armīs dēlectābantur Rōmānī, Graecī lūdīs.
17. Ā sapientibus virīs laudārī est vēra laus.

### 331. *Translate into Latin.*

1. You, my brother, were always praising me.
2. I, my brother, was always praised by you.
3. You will always be praised by me, for you ought to be praised.
4. I am often praised by my friends.
5. You will always love and honor your father.
6. My father will always be loved and honored by me, for he ought to be loved and honored.
7. You, Julia, are pleased with the poems of Vergil; I am pleased with the orations of Cicero.

<sup>1</sup> Notice the difference between the Latin and the English idiom :

ENGLISH IDIOM.

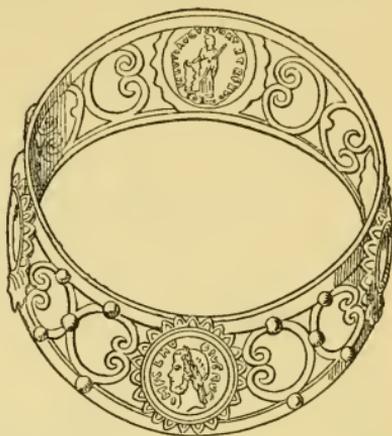
To a game in the garden.

LATIN IDIOM.

To a game into the garden.

<sup>2</sup> A bracelet and a ring.

8. Do not your instructors often praise the poems of Vergil? The poems of Vergil are praised by all our teachers.
9. Were not the Romans conquering the Gauls? The Gauls were (being) conquered by the Romans.
10. Good men will always be honored by the good.
11. Among the Romans brave men were honored by all.
12. Socrates, the wisest of all the Greeks, was loved and honored by many friends.
13. The Roman women were (being) delighted with beautiful ornaments.



*A Roman bracelet of gold set with coins.*

## LESSON LXXX.

*PASSIVE VOICE.—FIRST CONJUGATION.—THE GAULS CAPTURE ROME.*

### 332. VOCABULARY.

<i>ex-citō, āre, āvī, ātum,</i>	to arouse, awaken.	<i>excite.</i>
<i>ex-pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum,</i>	to take by storm, capture.	
<i>ōrnō, āre, āvī, ātum,</i>	to adorn, decorate, furnish, supply, equip.	<i>ad-orn.</i>
<i>vituperō, āre, āvī, ātum,</i>	to find fault with, blame.	
<i>ānser, eris, m.</i>	goose.	
<i>cēna, ae, f.</i>	feast, dinner.	
<i>clāmor, clāmōris, m.</i>	noise, cry, cackling.	<i>clamor.</i>
<i>Iūnō, Iūnōnis, f.</i>	Juno, Roman goddess.	
<i>pīctus, a, um,</i>	painted.	
<i>spolium, iī, n.</i>	booty, spoil.	<i>spoil.</i>
<i>tabula, ae, f.</i>	tablet.	<i>tabl-et.</i>

**333.** *Translate into English.*

1. Magistrī vōs saepe laudāvērunt.
2. Vōs, puerī, ā magistrīs saepe laudātī estis.
3. Tū, Carole, equīs semper dēlectātus es, nōs librīs semper dēlectātī sumus.
4. Gallī agrōs hostium ferrō ignī-que vāstāvērunt.
5. Hostium agrī ferrō ignī-que ā Gallīs vāstātī sunt.
6. Multī Rōmānī villās pulcherrimās aedificāvērunt.
7. Villae pulcherrimae ā Rōmānīs aedificātae sunt.
8. Multae villae statuīs et tabulīs pīctīs ōrnātae sunt.

*A Roman feast.*

9. Rōmānī forum spoliīs hostium ōrnāvērunt.
10. Forum Rōmānum spoliīs hostium est ōrnātum.
11. Tū semper laudātus es, ego saepe vituperātus sum.
12. Nōn-ne urbs Rōma ā Rōmulō aedificāta est? Rōma ā Rōmulō aedificāta esse dīcitur.
13. Crās ad cēnam invitāberis.
14. Frātrēs tuōs ad cēnam iam invitāvī.

**334.** MORE ABOUT THE GAULS IN ITALY.<sup>1</sup>

Gallī, populus bellicōsus, Alpēs montēs altōs superāverant et Ītaliā ferrō ignī-que vāstāverant. Dux Gallōrum erat Brennus, vir fortis et audāx. Rōmānī ad Alliam flūmen ā Brennō proeliō superātī et fugātī sunt; urbs expūgnāta

<sup>1</sup> For the meaning of all words except verbs, see general vocabulary.

et vāstāta est. Gallī Capitōlium, arcem Rōmānam, noctū oppugnāvērunt, sed ānsērēs Iūnōnis Rōmānōs dormientēs clāmōre excitāvērunt. Postēā Brennī cōpiaē ā Camillō dictātōre fugātae sunt.<sup>1</sup>

**335.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. You have always loved and honored your father.
2. Your father has always been loved and honored by you.
3. You have often been praised by your father.
4. Had not the Carthaginians laid waste a large part of Italy? A large part of Italy had already been laid waste by the Carthaginians.
5. Was not the Roman citadel captured by the Gauls? It was not captured; for the sacred geese aroused the sleeping soldiers.
6. Where were the geese? They were in the temple of Juno.
7. I have been invited to a feast by your friend Marcus.
8. Brave soldiers, you have often been praised by your commander.
9. Did not the Romans capture many cities? Many cities were captured by the Romans.
10. Who captured Carthage? Carthage was captured by Scipio Africanus.<sup>2</sup>
11. Who saved the Roman Republic? The Roman Republic is said to have been saved by Cicero.



*Juno, queen of the gods.*

<sup>1</sup> In times of great peril a dictator was sometimes appointed and clothed with almost unlimited power.

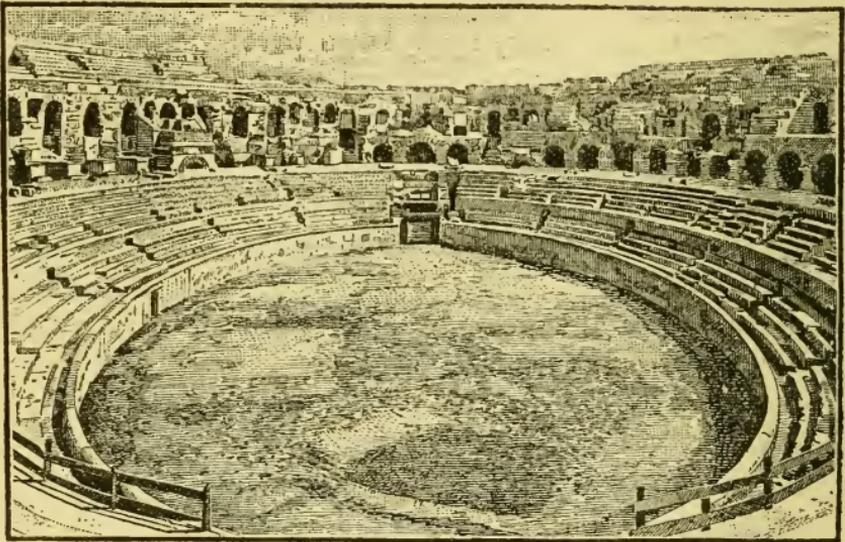
<sup>2</sup> This was Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus, the Younger, the grandson by adoption of Scipio Africanus, the Elder. He was a wise statesman and an able general. He brought the third Punic war to a close by the capture and destruction of Carthage.

## LESSON LXXXI.

## A DIALOGUE.

## 336. VOCABULARY.

dē-fendō, ere, fendī, fēsum,	to defend, guard, protect.	<i>defend.</i>
domō, āre, uī, itum,	to tame, subdue.	
lacerō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to mangle, wound.	<i>lacerate.</i>
nōlī, <i>imperative,</i>	be unwilling. <sup>1</sup>	
nōlī intrāre,	do not enter. <sup>2</sup>	
veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum,	to come.	



*Amphitheatre at Nîmes, view of the interior.*<sup>3</sup>

## 337. COLLOQUIUM.

DUO IUVENĒS, AULUS ET LŪCIUS.<sup>4</sup>

Aulus.—Aduisti-ne hodiē in circō cum homō ā leōne  
necātus est?

<sup>1</sup> *Nōlī* is the second person singular of the *imperative* of the verb *nōlō*; see 484.

<sup>2</sup> Literally, *be unwilling to enter, do not wish to enter.*

<sup>3</sup> Under the Roman Empire the amphitheatre was often the scene of gladiatorial exhibitions and of the combats of wild beasts. The amphitheatre at Nîmes, here represented, is one of the best preserved of all Roman amphitheatres.

<sup>4</sup> The learner will remember that for all words except verbs he is referred to the general vocabulary. See 325, note.

Lūcius.—Lacerātus est homō morsibus bēstiae, sed nōn est necātus. Fortasse hominis vīta servābitur.

A.—Multae-ne bēstiae mōnstrantur in circō?

L.—Māgna est ferārum multitudō. Leōnēs, tigrēs, elephantī ab omnibus laudantur.

A.—Venī mēcum in circum. In caveam leōnis intrābō.

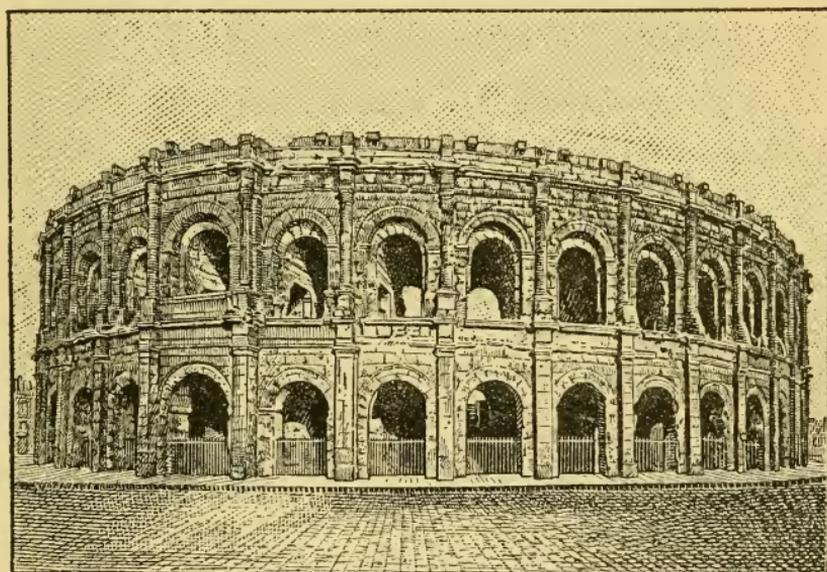
L.—Necāberis igitur ā leōne. Nōlī in caveam leōnis intrāre.

A.—Nōn timeō leōnem.

L.—Quōmodo tē dēfendēs?

A.—Omnēs bēstiae firmō oculōrum aspectū domantur.

L.—Sed nōn domantur ab omnibus.



*Amphitheatre at Nîmes, view of the exterior.*

A.—Nōn-ne admīrātiō hominum excitābitur, sī leōnem domuerō?<sup>1</sup>

L.—Immō, temeritās tua ab omnibus vituperābitur.

A.—Sī ita est, cōnsilium meum mūtābō.

L.—Ab omnibus amīcīs tuīs igitur laudāberis.

<sup>1</sup> Notice the future perfect where in English we may use the future.

**338.** *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Vīdistī-ne unquam leōnem? 2. Nōn-ne leōnēs et tigrēs et elephantōs saepe vīdistis? 3. Intrāvit-ne Aulus in caveam leōnis? 4. Num hominēs saepe in caveās leōnum intrant? 5. Nōn-ne Aulus leōnēs timuit? 6. Nōn-ne hominēs interdum ā leōnibus necantur? 7. Nōn-ne multae fābulae dē leōnibus nārrantur? 8. Audīvistis-ne fābulās dē leōnibus?

## LESSON LXXXII.

## PASSIVE VOICE.—SECOND CONJUGATION.

SECOND CONJUGATION: **E** VERBS.

**339.** PASSIVE VOICE.—Moneor, *I am advised.* PRESENT STEM, *monē.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

moneor                      monēri                      monitus sum

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am advised.*

## SINGULAR.

moneor  
monēris, or re  
monētur

## PLURAL.

monēmur  
monēmini  
monentur

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advised.*

monēbar  
monēbāris, or re  
monēbātur

monēbāmur  
monēbāmini  
monēbantur

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be advised.*

monēbor  
monēberis, or re  
monēbitur

monēbimur  
monēbimini  
monēbuntur

## PERFECT.

*I have been advised, I was advised.*

## SINGULAR.

monitus **sum**  
 monitus **es**  
 monitus **est**

## PLURAL.

monit**ī** **sumus**  
 monit**ī** **estis**  
 monit**ī** **sunt**

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been advised.*

monitus **eram**  
 monitus **erās**  
 monitus **erat**

monit**ī** **erāmus**  
 monit**ī** **erātis**  
 monit**ī** **erant**

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been advised.*

monitus **erō**  
 monitus **eris**  
 monitus **erit**

monit**ī** **erimus**  
 monit**ī** **eritis**  
 monit**ī** **erunt**

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. monēre, be thou advised; monēminī, be ye advised.**Fut. monētor, thou shalt be advised,**monētor, he shall be advised; monentor, they shall be advised.*

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

*Pres. monēri, to be advised.**Perf. monitus esse, to have been advised.**Perf. monitus, having been advised.**Fut. monitum iri, to be about to be advised.**Ger. monendus, to be advised, deserving to be advised.*

## LESSON LXXXIII.

## PASSIVE VOICE.—SECOND CONJUGATION.

## 340. VOCABULARY.

con-tineō, ēre, nī, tentum, to bound, surround, re-  
 strain.

*contain.*

dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum, to destroy.

doceō, ēre, nī, doctum, to teach, instruct.

*doc-ile.*

ob-sideō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, to besiege, blockade.

<b>sus-tineō, ēre, uī, tentum,</b>	to sustain, withstand.	<i>sustain.</i>
<b>teneō, ēre, uī, tentum,</b>	to hold, possess.	<i>re-tain.</i>
<b>falsus, a, um,</b>	false, unfounded.	<i>false.</i>
<b>impetus, ūs, m.</b>	attack, charge.	<i>impetu-ous.</i>
<b>Labiēnus, ī, m.</b>	Labienus. <sup>1</sup>	
<b>legiō, ōnis, f.</b>	a body of soldiers, legion.	<i>legion.</i>
<b>rūmor, ōris, m.</b>	report, rumor.	<i>rumor.</i>
<b>Scīpiō, ōnis, m.</b>	Scipio. <sup>2</sup>	

### 341. Translate into English.

1. Nōn-ne amīcī vestrī vōs monent? Ab amīcīs cottīdiē monēmur.
2. Nōn-ne amīcī tuī tē monēbunt? Ab amīcīs semper monēbor.
3. Quis vōs monēbat? Eō tempore ā multīs amīcīs monēbāmur.
4. Quis montem tenēbat? Mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur.
5. Quis oppidum tenēbit? Oppidum ā mīlitibus nostrīs tenēbitur.
6. Terrēminī, mīlitēs, multītūdine hostium. Nōn terrēmur, nunquam terrēmur; nunquam multītūdine hostium terrēbimur.
7. Mīlitēs mortis perīculō terrērī nōn dēbent.
8. Hostēs adventū nostrī exercitūs terrēbuntur.
9. Nōn-ne hominēs interdum rūmōribus terrentur? Multi hominēs falsīs rūmōribus terrentur.
10. Quis Carthāginem dēlēvit? Carthāgō ā Scīpiōne dēlēta est.
11. Multae urbēs ā Rōmānīs dēlētae sunt.
12. Māgna pars oppidī incendiō dēlēta est.
13. Ā praeceptōribus, puerī, bene doctī estis.
14. Oppidum ab hostibus obsidēbitur.
15. Nōn-ne altissimī montēs oppidum continent? Oppidum altissimīs montibus continētur.

<sup>1</sup> Labienus was one of Caesar's lieutenants.

<sup>2</sup> Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus, the Younger, is meant.

16. *Impetūs hostium ā militibus nostrīs fortiter sustinēbantur.*

**342.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who will advise you? I shall be advised by my father.
2. Parents always advise their children.
3. Children are always advised by their parents.
4. Children ought to be often advised by their parents.
5. Did not the Romans destroy many cities?
6. Many cities are said to have been destroyed by the Romans.
7. Who had destroyed Carthage? Carthage had already been destroyed by Scipio.
8. Did not the Gauls destroy the town by fire? The town was destroyed by fire.
9. Will not our legions destroy the camp of the enemy? The camp of the enemy will soon be destroyed by our legions.
10. Were not the Germans at that time besieging the town? The town had already been besieged by the Germans.
11. Have you ever been terrified by false rumors? We are never terrified by rumors.
12. It is better to be loved than to be feared.

LESSON LXXXIV.

*A DIALOGUE.*

**343.** VOCABULARY.

<i>ā-moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum,</i>	to take away, remove.	
<i>com-prehendō, ere, dī, sum,</i>	to seize, catch.	<i>comprehend.</i>
<i>perpetrō, āre, āvī, ātum,</i>	to complete, commit.	<i>perpetrate.</i>
<i>studeō, ēre, uī,</i>	to be eager, desire.	<i>study.</i>
<i>tollō, ere,</i>	to take up, remove, destroy.	
<i>videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum,</i>	to see.	<i>vis-ion.</i>
<i>videor, ērī, vīsus sum,</i>	to seem.	

## 344. COLLOQUIUM.

GUILIELMUS, CAROLUS, HENRĪCUS.

Guilielmus.—Vidēs-ne multitudinem in vicō Madisōniō?

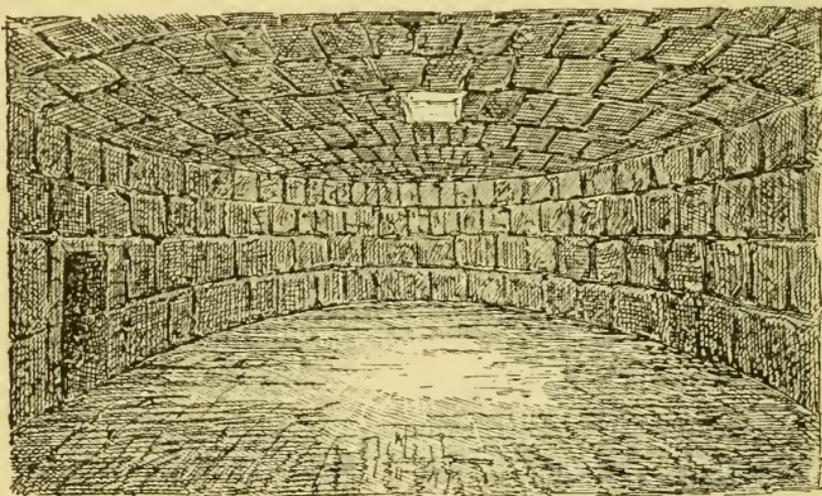
Henrīcus.—Ingentem hominum catervam videō.

G.—Domus in angulō vicī ā multitudīne obsidērī vidētur.

H.—Domum intrāre student, sed ab administrīs pūblicīs continentur.

G.—Videō Carolum nostrum. Nārrābit nobīs causam tumultūs.

H.—Mī Carole, cūr domus in angulō vicī ā multitudīne obsidētur?



*The Tullianum, or the Mamertine Prison, in Rome.*<sup>1</sup>

C.—Atrōcissima caedēs in domō perpetrāta est. Percussor vestīgia sceleris suī incendiō tollere tentāvit. Omnis ferē supellex domūs ignī dēlēta est.

G.—Quae fuit causa caedis?

C.—Avāritia causa fuisse vidētur; nam omne argentum et aurum ē domō amōtum est.

<sup>1</sup> This was the state prison of ancient Rome. It is a dark, subterranean dungeon near the center of the city. According to Livy, it is a relic of the kingly period. It is undoubtedly one of the most ancient structures in Rome. Our illustration gives a vertical section of this gloomy prison.

G.—Num percussor in vinculis tenetur?

C.—Tenēbātur in carcere; sed ē manibus cūstōdum ēvāsit.

II.—Ubi nunc est? Nōn-ne facile erit hominem comprehendere?

C.—Nesciō. Fortasse iam in manibus cūstōdum est.

**345.** *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Fuistī-ne unquam in vicō Madisōniō? 2. Vidistī-ne ingentem hominum catervam in vicō Madisōniō? 3. Num omnēs domūs ā multitūdine obsidēbantur? 4. Quis domum ignī dēlere tentāvit? 5. Nōn-ne domūs saepe ignī dēlentur? 6. Quis in vinculis tenēbātur?

## LESSON LXXXV.

### PASSIVE VOICE.—THIRD CONJUGATION.

**346.** PASSIVE VOICE.—Regor, *I am ruled.* PRESENT STEM, *rege.*

#### PRINCIPAL PARTS.

regor                      regī                      rēctus sum

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### PRESENT TENSE.

*I am ruled.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
regor		regimur
regeris, or re		regimini
regitur		reguntur

##### IMPERFECT.

*I was ruled.*

regēbar		regēbāmur
regēbāris, or re		regēbāmini
regēbātur		regēbantur

##### FUTURE.

*I shall or will be ruled.*

regar		regēmur
regēris, or re		regēmini
regētur		regentur

## PERFECT.

*I have been ruled, or I was ruled.*

## SINGULAR.

**rēctus sum****rēctus es****rēctus est**

## PLURAL.

**rēctī sumus****rēctī estis****rēctī sunt**

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been ruled.***rēctus eram****rēctus erās****rēctus erat****rēctī erāmus****rēctī erātis****rēctī erant**

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been ruled.***rēctus erō****rēctus eris****rēctus erit****rēctī erimus****rēctī eritis****rēctī erunt**

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. regere, be thou ruled; regiminī, be ye ruled.**Fut. regitor, thou shalt be ruled, reguntor, they shall be ruled;*

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres. regī, to be ruled.**Perf. rēctus esse, to have been ruled.**Fut. rēctum irī, to be about to be ruled.*

## PARTICIPLE.

*Perf. rēctus, having been ruled.**Ger. regendus, to be ruled, deserving to be ruled.*

## LESSON LXXXVI.

## PASSIVE VOICE.—THIRD CONJUGATION.

## 347. VOCABULARY.

**amor, amōris, m.****Carthāginiēnsēs, ium, m. plur.****honōs, or honor, ōris, m.**

love.

the Carthaginians.<sup>1</sup>

honor, glory.

*honor.*

<sup>1</sup> The Carthaginians early became a famous maritime power, and before their conflict with the Romans they held the supremacy of the Mediterranean Sea.

**348.** *Translate into English.*

1. Quid dē lūdīs dīcunt puerī? Lūdī iūcundī fuisse dīcuntur.
2. Quid dē lūdō pilae dictum est? Lūdō pilae puerī omnēs dēlectātī sunt.
3. Quid in scholā dē linguā Latīnā dīcitur. Multa<sup>1</sup> dē linguā Latīnā cottīdiē dīcuntur.
4. Quid hodiē in scholā Latīnē dictum est? Multa ā praeceptōribus Latīnē dicta sunt.
5. Quid, puerī, hodiē Latīnē dīxistis? Nōn multa hodiē ā nōbīs Latīnē dicta sunt.
6. Nōn-ne in cōnsiliō sententiam dīxistī? Sententia ā mē breviter dicta est.
7. Num multae sententiae dictae sunt? Multae et variae sententiae in cōnsiliō dictae sunt.
8. Multa dē virtūte militum ā Caesare dicta erant.
9. Ubī sunt captīvī? In carcerem ductī sunt.
10. Quis Carthāginiēnsēs in Ītaliā dūxit? Māgnus Carthāginiēnsium numerus in Ītaliā ab Hannibale ductus est.
11. Māgnus exercitus contrā hostēs dūcēbātur.
12. Multī hominēs glōriā et laude dūcuntur.
13. Vōs, militēs, glōriā et amōre patriae dūcēminī.
14. Rēs pūblica Rōmāna ā cōsulibus regēbātur.
15. Homērī carmina ab omnibus Graecīs legēbantur.
16. Carmina Vergiliī ab omnibus puerīs legī dēbent.
17. Vōbīs, militēs fortēs, māgnī honōrēs tribuentur.

**349.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Boys, what have you read to-day in school? We have been reading an interesting oration.
2. Who wrote the oration? It was written by Cicero, the orator.
3. Many interesting orations were written by Cicero.

---

<sup>1</sup> Observe that *multa* is here used *substantively*, 'many things'; see 321.

4. Were not the orations of Cicero written in Latin? They were written in Latin.
5. Were the poems of Homer written in Latin? They were written in Greek.
6. You, soldiers, will soon be led against the enemy.
7. We have often been led against the enemy.
8. The Romans awarded great honors to brave soldiers.
9. Great honors were awarded by the Romans to brave soldiers.
10. Prizes will be awarded to diligent pupils.
11. Prizes have often been awarded to diligent pupils.
12. Great honors ought to be awarded to you, brave soldiers, for you have freed your country from great danger.
13. What will the witnesses say? Many things will be said by the witnesses in regard to <sup>1</sup> the theft.
14. Where is the thief? He has been taken to prison.

## LESSON LXXXVII.

## A DIALOGUE.

## 350. VOCABULARY.

arcēssō, ere, sīvī, sītum,	to call, send for, summon.	
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum,	to fall.	
ex-stinguō, ere, stinxī, stinctum,	to put out, quench, destroy.	<i>extingu-ish.</i>
interrogō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to ask, question.	<i>interrogate.</i>
ob-ruō, ere, ruī, rutum,	to overwhelm, cover.	
red-dō, ere, didī, ditum,	to give back, return.	
rē-stituō, ere, nī, ūtum,	to replace, restore.	<i>restitu-tion.</i>
significō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to show, mean.	<i>signify.</i>
solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum,	to release, end, pay.	<i>solve.</i>
sub-mergō, ere, sī, sum,	to sink, submerge.	<i>submerge.</i>
trahō, ere, traxī, tractum,	to draw, drag.	

<sup>1</sup> Remember that the words *in regard to* are to be rendered by a single Latin preposition.

## 351. COLLOQUIUM.

ALBERTUS, MARCUS, CAROLUS, HENRĪCUS.

A.—Quid sīgnificat tumultus in vicō?

H.—Puer in fluvium cecidit et aquā obrutus est.<sup>1</sup>

A.—Mortuus-ne est puer?

H.—Nēsciō, sed interrogābō. Fortasse respōnsum nobīs reddētur. Heus, amīcī, mortuus-ne est puer quī in aquam cecidit?

M.—Ita dīcitur, sed arcēssītī sunt medicī. Fortasse puer in vītā rēstituētur.

H.—Quis est puer?

M.—Fīlius iūdicis esse dīcitur.

A.—Venī mēcum, Henrīce, ad fluvium.

H.—Nōn est necesse; nam hīc est Carolus noster quī rem omnem scīre vidētur.

C.—Puer quī in fluvium cecidit est filius nostrī amīcī iūdicis. Submersus erat<sup>2</sup> aquā, sed ā nautīs ex fluvio tractus est. Vita extincta nōn erat. Puer in patris domum ductus est.

A.—Nōn-ne praemium tribuētur nautīs?

H.—Fortasse tribuētur; sed dēbitum praemiō nōn solvētur.

**352.** *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Ubī fuit tumultus? 2. Quae fuit causa tumultūs? 3. Nōn-ne respōnsum Henrīcō redditum est? 4. Num puerī ā nautīs ex fluvio saepe trahuntur? 5. Num praemium māgnū nautīs ā patre puerī tribūtum est? 6. Nōn-ne dēbita semper solvuntur?

<sup>1</sup> Aquā obrutus est, literally, *was overwhelmed by the water*; render, *sank in the water*.

<sup>2</sup> Submersus erat aquā, literally, *he had been submerged in (by) the water*; render, *he had sunk*.

## LESSON LXXXVIII.

PASSIVE VOICE.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.

FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

353. PASSIVE VOICE.—Audior, *I am heard*. PRESENT STEM, *audi*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

audior                  audiri                  auditus sum

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	<i>I am heard.</i>	PLURAL.
audior		audimur
audiris, or re		audimini
auditur		audiuntur

IMPERFECT.

*I was heard.*

audiēbar		audiēbāmur
audiēbāris, or re		audiēbāmini
audiēbātur		audiēbantur

FUTURE.

*I shall or will be heard.*

audiar		audiēmur
audiēris, or re		audiēmini
audiētur		audientur

PERFECT.

*I have been heard, or I was heard.*

auditus sum		auditi sumus
auditus es		auditi estis
auditus est		auditi sunt

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.*

auditus eram		auditi erāmus
auditus erās		auditi erātis
auditus erat		auditi erant

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been heard.*

auditus erō		auditi erimus
auditus eris		auditi eritis
auditus erit		auditi erunt

## IMPERATIVE.

Pres. aud**ire**, be thou heard ; aud**imini**, be ye heard.  
 Fut. aud**itor**, thou shalt be heard,  
 aud**itor**, he shall be heard ; aud**iuntor**, they shall be heard.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

Pres. aud**iri**, to be heard.  
 Perf. aud**itus esse**, to have been heard. Perf. aud**itus**, having been heard.  
 Fut. aud**itum iri**, to be about to be heard. Ger. aud**iendus**, to be heard,  
 deserving to be heard.

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

**354.** The Relative *quī*, 'who,' so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows :

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

**Note.**—*Cum*, when used with the Ablative of the relative, is generally appended to it: *quibuscum*.

**355.** Examine the following examples :

1. Rēx **quem** laudant. *The king WHOM they praise.*
2. Rēgīna **quam** laudant. *The queen WHOM they praise.*
3. Ego **quī** dīcō. *I WHO speak.*
4. Tū **quī** dīcis. *You WHO speak.*

In these examples observe—

- 1) That the relative **quem** refers to *rēx*, called its antecedent, **quam** to *rēgīna*, and **quī** to *ego* and *tū*.
- 2) That the relative in each instance is in the same *gender, number, and person* as its antecedent.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Thus, *quem* is in the masculine singular because *rēx* is in that gender and number ; *quam*, in the feminine singular because *rēgīna* is ; *quī*, in the masculine singular because *ego* and *tū* are here so used. Moreover, *quem* and *quam* are of the third person like *rēx* and *rēgīna* ; while *quī* in the third example is of the first person like *ego*, and in the fourth example of the second person like *tū*.

3) That the *case* of the relative is not determined by the case of the antecedent, but by the construction of the clause in which it stands.<sup>1</sup>

This agreement of pronouns with their antecedents applies not only to relatives but to all pronouns when used as *substantives*,<sup>2</sup> and is expressed in the following rule:

**RULE XXXV.—Agreement of Pronouns.**

A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON.

LESSON LXXXIX.

PASSIVE VOICE.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.—RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

356. VOCABULARY.

ēradiō, īre, īvī, ītum,	to educate, instruct, teach.	<i>erudite.</i>
fīniō, īre, īvī, ītum,	to end, put an end to, finish, bring to a close.	<i>fin-ish.</i>
impediō, īre, īvī, ītum,	to hinder, detain, check.	<i>impede.</i>
ēgregiē, <i>adv.</i>	excellently, remarkably.	
gerō, ere, gessī, gestum,	to carry on, wage, do, administer.	

357. *Translate into English.*

1. Bellum quod gerimus brevī tempore fīniēmus.
2. Bellum quod gerimus brevī tempore fīniētur.
3. Omnēs qui aderant orātiōnem laudāverunt.
4. Omnēs qui orātiōnem audiēbant dēlectābantur.
5. Omnēs ā quibus orātiō audīta est dēlectātī sunt.
6. Vōs, puerī, ā praeceptōribus doctīs ērudīminī.
7. Vōs, qui ā praeceptōribus doctīs nunc ērudīminī, brevī tempore doctī eritis.

<sup>1</sup> Thus while all the antecedents are in the nominative, the relatives *quem* and *quam* are in the accusative because they are the *objects* of *laudant*, and *quī* is in the nominative because it is the subject of *dīcō* or *dīcis*.

<sup>2</sup> Pronouns when used as adjectives agree like other adjectives with the nouns to which they belong, according to Rule XXXIV ; see 74.

8. Militēs qui patriam nostram cūstōdiunt semper laudāmus.
9. Militēs ā quibus patria nostra cūstōdītur semper laudābuntur.
10. Hostēs urbem dē quā scripsī vallō fossā-que mūniēbant.
11. Urbs dē quā scripsī ab hostibus vallō fossā-que mūniēbātur.
12. Iter āgminis nostrī multīs rēbus impediēbātur.
13. Oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum est.
14. Multae urbēs mūrīs et turribus mūnītae sunt.
15. Multae urbēs mūrīs et turribus mūnītae ā Caesare expūgnātae sunt.
16. Omnēs cīvēs urbem nostram māgnā cum cūrā cūstōdiunt.
17. Urbs nostra ab omnibus cīvibus māgnā cum cūrā cūstōdiētur.

### 358. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The soldiers who<sup>1</sup> are guarding the city are very brave.
2. The soldiers by whom<sup>1</sup> the city is guarded are very brave.
3. Shall you fortify the city which you are now building?  
The city which we are now building will not be fortified.
4. The war which we were then waging has been brought to a close.
5. The war which you are now waging ought to be brought to a close.
6. I heard the oration of which (about which)<sup>2</sup> you speak.
7. I was at that time reading an interesting book of which I had often heard.
8. The teachers who instructed you were learned men.
9. The teachers by whom you will be instructed are learned men.

---

<sup>1</sup> What *gender*, *number*, and *case* will you use in the Latin? See 355.

<sup>2</sup> What *preposition* will you use?

10. The commander was fortifying the citadel with high walls.  
 11. The citadel has been fortified with very high walls.  
 12. Many Roman boys were instructed by Greek teachers.

## LESSON XC.

VERBS IN **IO** OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

**359.** A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in **iō, ior**, like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth, wherever those endings have two successive vowels.

**360.** ACTIVE VOICE.—*Capiō, I take.* PRESENT STEM, *cape.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*cap***iō**                  *capere*                  *cēpī*                  *captum*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## SINGULAR.

*cap***iō***cap***is***cap***it**

## PLURAL.

*cap***imus***cap***itis***cap***iunt**

## IMPERFECT.

*cap***iēbam***cap***iēbās***cap***iēbat.***cap***iēbāmus***cap***iēbātis***cap***iēbant**

## FUTURE.

*cap***iam***cap***iēs***cap***iet***cap***iēmus***cap***iētis***cap***ient**

## PERFECT.

*cēpī**cēp***istī***cēp***it***cēp***imus***cēp***istis***cēp***ērunt, or ēre**

## PLUPERFECT.

*cēp***eram***cēp***erās***cēp***erat***cēp***erāmus***cēp***erātis***cēp***erant**

SINGULAR.	FUTURE PERFECT.	PLURAL.
<i>cēperō</i>		<i>cēperīmus</i>
<i>cēperīs</i>		<i>cēperītis</i>
<i>cēperit</i>		<i>cēperint</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. cape</i>	<i>capite</i>
<i>Fut. capitō</i>	<i>capitōte</i>
<i>capitō</i>	<i>capiantō</i>

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres. capere</i>
<i>Perf. cēpisse</i>
<i>Fut. captūrus esse</i>

PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres. capiēns</i>
<i>Fut. captūrus</i>

GERUND.

<i>Gen. capiendī</i>
<i>Dat. capiendō</i>
<i>Acc. capiendum</i>
<i>Abl. capiendō</i>

SUPINE.

<i>Acc. captum</i>
<i>Abl. captū</i>

**361. PASSIVE VOICE.**—Capior, *I am taken.* PRESENT STEM, *cape*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>capior</i>	<i>capī</i>	<i>captus sum</i>
---------------	-------------	-------------------

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>capior</i>	<i>capimur</i>
<i>caperis, or re</i>	<i>capimini</i>
<i>capitur</i>	<i>capiantur</i>

IMPERFECT.

<i>capiēbar</i>	<i>capiēbāmur</i>
<i>capiēbāris, or re</i>	<i>capiēbāmini</i>
<i>capiēbātur</i>	<i>capiēbantur</i>

FUTURE.

<i>capiar</i>	<i>capiēmur</i>
<i>capiēris, or re</i>	<i>capiēmini</i>
<i>capiētur</i>	<i>capientur</i>

PERFECT.

<i>captus sum</i>	<i>captī sumus</i>
<i>captus es</i>	<i>captī estis</i>
<i>captus est</i>	<i>captī sunt</i>

SINGULAR.	PLUPERFECT.	PLURAL.
captus <b>eram</b>		capti <b>erāmus</b>
captus <b>erās</b>		capti <b>erātis</b>
captus <b>erat</b>		capti <b>erant</b>
	FUTURE PERFECT.	
captus <b>erō</b>		capti <b>erimus</b>
captus <b>eris</b>		capti <b>eritis</b>
captus <b>erit</b>		capti <b>erunt</b>
	IMPERATIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i> capere		capimini
<i>Fut.</i> capitor		
capitor		capiuntor
INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> capī		
<i>Perf.</i> captus esse		<i>Perf.</i> captus
<i>Fut.</i> captum irī		<i>Ger.</i> capiendus

## LESSON XCI.

*VERBS IN IO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.~TWO ACCUSATIVES OF THE SAME PERSON OR THING.*

**362.** Examine the following sentences :

1. Hamilcarem **imperātorem** fē- *They made Hamilcar* COMMANDER.  
cērunt.
2. Ancum **rēgem** populus creāvit. *The people elected Ancus* KING.
3. Summum cōnsilium appellāvērunt **senātum**. *They called their highest council*  
SENATE.
4. Hamilcar **imperātor** factus est. *Hamilcar was made commander.*

In these sentences observe—

- 1) That in the first three the verbs **fēcērunt**, **creāvit**, and **appellāvērunt** take each TWO ACCUSATIVES.
- 2) That the two accusatives in each instance denote the SAME PERSON OR THING. Thus **Hamilcarem** and **imperātorem** denote the same person; so also **Ancum** and **rēgem**; **cōnsilium** and **senātum** the same thing.
- 3) That in the Passive construction in the fourth sentence the verb has both a *Subject Nominative* and a *Predicate Nominative*; see 63.

Hence we have the following rule:

**RULE VI.—Two Accusatives—Same Person.**

Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit—

I. In the Active Voice TWO ACCUSATIVES of the SAME PERSON OR THING.

II. In the Passive Voice a SUBJECT NOMINATIVE and a PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.

**363. VOCABULARY.**

<b>accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum,</b>	to take, receive, derive.	<i>accept.</i>
<b>capiō, ere, cēpī, captum,</b>	to take, capture.	<i>capt-ure.</i>
<b>faciō, ere, fēcī, factum,<sup>1</sup></b>	to do, make.	<i>fact.</i>
<b>iter facere,</b>	to make a journey, to travel.	
<b>appellō, āre, āvī, ātum,</b>	to call, name.	<i>appella-tion.</i>
<b>discō, ere, didicī,</b>	to learn.	
<b>nōminō, āre, āvī, ātum,</b>	to name.	<i>nomin-ate.</i>
<b>Aeduī, ōrum, m. plur.</b>	Aeduans, a people of Gaul.	
<b>Hērodotus, ī, m.</b>	Herodotus.	
<b>hērēs, hērēdis, m. and f.</b>	heir, heiress.	<i>heir.</i>
<b>historia, ae, f.</b>	history.	<i>history.</i>
<b>praetor, ōris, m.</b>	praetor, Roman magistrate.	
<b>testāmentum, ī, n.</b>	testament, will.	<i>testament.</i>
<b>voluptās, ātis, f.</b>	pleasure, enjoyment.	

**364. SYNONYMS.**

**Appellō, nōminō ;** *to call, name.*

1. **Appellō, āre, āvī, ātum ;** TO CALL, TO NAME—especially to call by the *right* name.
2. **Nōminō, āre, āvī, ātum ;** TO NAME, to give a name.

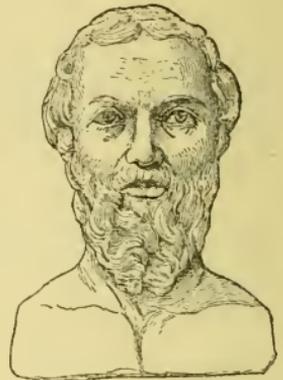
**365. Translate into English.**

1. **Quem populus Rōmānus cōnsulem eō tempore fēcit? Caesarem cōnsulem fēcit.**

---

<sup>1</sup> In the Passive the Present, Imperfect, and Future tenses are supplied by *fiō*; the other tenses are regular.

2. Nōn-ne populus Rōmānus Cicerōnem cōsulem antea fēcerat? Cicerō antea cōsul factus erat.
3. Quis Cicerōnem praetōrem fēcit? Cicerō ā populō Rōmānō praetor factus est.
4. Quem iūdex testāmentō hērēdem faciet? Testāmentō filium hērēdem faciet.
5. Quem Caesar hērēdem testāmentō fēcerat? Populum Rōmānum hērēdem testāmentō fēcisse dīcitur.
6. Nōn-ne cīvēs Rōmānī Cicerōnem patrem patriae eō tempore appellābant? Eō tempore Cicerō pater patriae ā cīvibus Rōmānīs appellābātur.
7. Senātus Rōmānus Aeduōs frātrēs appellāvit.
8. Nōn-ne Hērodotum patrem historiae appellātis? Hērodotus saepe appellātus est pater historiae.
9. Rōmulus urbem ē suō nōmine Rōmam nōmināvit.
10. Caesar in Galliā multās urbēs cēpit.
11. Nōn-ne Gallī antea urbem Rōmam cēperant? Urbs Rōma ā Gallīs antea capta erat.
12. Voluptātem māgnam, puerī, ex discendō capiētis.
13. Quot epistulās hodiē accēpistī? Decem epistulās accēpī.



*Herodotus, the Greek historian.*

**366.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Did not the Roman people make Pompey consul? He was made consul by the Roman people.
2. Did not the Romans make Pompey commander? Pompey was often made commander by the Romans.
3. They named the city Rome. The city is called Rome.
4. Will you not call us brothers? We always call you brothers.

5. Did not the consul name his son Marcus? Cicero the consul named his son Marcus.
6. Did not the Romans make Caesar consul? They made Caesar consul.
7. Where have you been, Charles? I have been traveling (making a journey) through Virginia.
8. Is it not always pleasant to travel? It is often useful and sometimes pleasant to travel.
9. Have you not received a letter from my brother? I have to-day received a long letter from your brother.
10. You, boys, ought to derive great pleasure from learning.



*Clio, the Muse of History.*

## LESSON XCII.

### 367. COLLOQUIUM.<sup>1</sup>

CAROLUS ET FREDERĪCUS.

Carolus.—*Salvē, mī Frederīce. Ubī terrārum fuistī?*<sup>2</sup>  
 Frederīcus.—*Iter longum fēcī per cīvitatēs nostrās.*  
 C.—*Fuistī-ne apud Indiānōs?*

<sup>1</sup> In this and the subsequent Colloquia the learner is referred to the general vocabulary for the meaning of all the words.

<sup>2</sup> *Ubī terrārum?* literally, *where of lands*; render, *where in the world, where indeed?* *Terrārum* is a Partitive Genitive depending on *ubī*; see 194.

F.—Fui in regiōnibus quae ab Indiānīs incoluntur.

C.—Nōn-ne perīculum est bellī cum Indiānīs? Audīvī dē multīs rapīnīs quae ab Indiānīs suscipiuntur.

F.—Ego adfuī in proeliō quod ab Indiānīs contrā colōnōs pūgnātum est.

C.—Quae erat causa proeliī?

F.—Indiānī agrōs colōnōrum dīripuerant et māgnū numerum pecoris abēgerant. Colōnī arma cēpērunt et fugientēs intercipere cōstituērunt. Mox castra Indiānōrum cōspiciunt et ilicō impetum faciunt. Indiānī lapidēs et sagittās in adversāriōs cōiciunt; sed ā colōnīs superantur. Multī Indiānī interficiuntur; cēterī fugiunt et omnem praedam in manibus colōnōrum relinquunt.

**368.** *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Ubī terrārum fuerat Frederīcus? 2. Num unquam antea multōs Indiānōs vīderat? 3. Num vōs, puerī, iter per civitatēs nostrās unquam fēcistis? 4. Num apud Indiānōs unquam fuistis? 5. Nōn-ne Frederīcus urbēs et oppida et vicōs in itinere cōspēxit?

## LESSON XCIII.

### DEPONENT VERBS.

**369.** Deponent Verbs have in general the forms of the Passive Voice with the signification of the Active. But—

1. They have also in the Active, the future infinitive, the participles, gerund, and supine.

2. The gerundive has the passive signification: *hortandus*, to be exhorted.

3. The Future Infinitive takes the Active form.

**Note.**—The following examples, one from the First Conjugation and one from the Third, will sufficiently illustrate the peculiarities of Deponent Verbs.

370. Hortor, *I exhort*, and Sequor, *I follow*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum. Sequor, sequī, secūtus sum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. hortor, <sup>1</sup>	<i>I exhort.</i>	sequor,	<i>I follow.</i>
Imp. hortābar,	<i>I was exhorting.</i>	sequēbar,	<i>I was following.</i>
Fut. hortābor,	<i>I shall exhort.</i>	sequar,	<i>I shall follow.</i>
Perf. hortātus sum,	<i>I have exhorted.</i>	secūtus sum,	<i>I have followed.</i>
Plup. hortātus eram,	<i>I had exhorted.</i>	secūtus eram,	<i>I had followed.</i>
F. P. hortātus erō,	<i>I shall have exhorted.</i>	secūtus erō,	<i>I shall have followed.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

Pres. hortāre,	<i>exhort thou.</i>	sequere,	<i>follow thou.</i>
Fut. hortātor,	<i>thou shalt exhort.</i>	sequitor,	<i>thou shalt follow.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

Pres. hortārī,	<i>to exhort.</i>	sequī,	<i>to follow.</i>
Perf. hortātus esse,	<i>to have exhorted.</i>	secūtus esse,	<i>to have followed.</i>
Fut. hortātūrus esse,	<i>to be about to exhort.</i>	secūtūrus esse,	<i>to be about to follow.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

Pres. hortāns,	<i>exhorting.</i>	sequēns,	<i>following.</i>
Fut. hortātūrus,	<i>about to exhort.</i>	secūtūrus,	<i>about to follow.</i>
Perf. hortātus,	<i>having exhorted.</i>	secūtus,	<i>having followed.</i>
Ger. hortandus,	<i>deserving to be exhorted.</i>	sequendus,	<i>deserving to be followed.</i>

## GERUND.

hortandī, etc.	<i>of exhorting.</i>	sequendī,	<i>of following.</i>
----------------	----------------------	-----------	----------------------

## SUPINE.

hortātum, tū,	<i>to exhort.</i>	secūtum, tū,	<i>to follow.</i>
---------------	-------------------	--------------	-------------------

Write out for the following verbs the parts just given for *hortor* and *sequor*:

vercor, verērī, veritus sum, *to fear.*  
 partior, partīrī, partitus sum, *to share.*

<sup>1</sup> The tenses are inflected regularly throughout: *hortor, hortāris, or hortāre, hortātur; hortāmur, hortāminī, hortantur.*

## 371. Examine the following sentences :

- |                                    |                                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Multis rebus fruimur et utimur. | <i>We enjoy and use many THINGS.</i> |
| 2. Officio functus est.            | <i>He has performed HIS DUTY.</i>    |
| 3. Magna praeda est potitus.       | <i>He obtained great BOOTY.</i>      |
| 4. Lacte et carne vescabantur.     | <i>They lived ON MILK and FLESH.</i> |

In these sentences observe that the nouns **rebus**, **officio**, **praeda**, **lacte**, and **carne** are all in the Ablative. From these and similar examples we derive the following rule :

**RULE XXVI.—Ablative in Special Constructions.**

The Ablative is used with **utor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, **vescor**, and their compounds.

## LESSON XCIV.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

## 372. VOCABULARY.

admīror, arī, ātus sum,	to admire, wonder at.	<i>admire.</i>
eōnor, arī, ātus sum,	to try, attempt, undertake.	
fruor, ī, fructus sum,	to enjoy.	
fungor, ī, functus sum,	to perform, do.	<i>func-tion.</i>
loquor, ī, locutus sum,	to speak, talk, say.	<i>loqu-acious.</i>
potior, irī, potitus sum,	to acquire, obtain, secure.	
utor, ī, usus sum,	to use, make use of.	<i>use.</i>
animus, ī, m.	soul, spirit.	
Alexander, drī, m,	Alexander the Great, King of Macedon.	
deus, ī, m.	god.	
lūx, lūcis, f.	light, daylight.	
māgnitūdō, inis, f.	greatness.	<i>magnitude.</i>
numerō, āre, avī, ātum,	to count, enumerate.	<i>e-numerate.</i>
officium, iī, n.	service, duty.	<i>office.</i>
triumphus, ī, m.	triumph, victory.	<i>triumph.</i>
victōria, ae, f.	victory.	<i>victory.</i>

**Note.**—**Deus**, slightly irregular, is thus declined: Sing. *deus, deī, deō, deum, deus, deō*; Plur. N. and V. *deī, dī*; G. *deōrum, deūm*; D. and A. *deīs, dīs*; Acc. *deōs*.

373. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicerō Pompēiī<sup>1</sup> virtūtem et animī māgnitūdinem ad mīrābātur.
2. Cicerō Pompēiī bella, victōriās, triumphōs admīrāns<sup>2</sup> numerāvit.
3. Multī virī doctī sapientiam Sōcratis admīrātī sunt.
4. Sapientiam et virtūtem semper admīrārī dēbēmus.
5. Quid, puerī, agere cōnāminī? Opera Caesaris legere cōnāmur.
6. Māximam laudem, Carole, meruistī, nam officiō<sup>3</sup> discipulī bonī fūctus es.
7. Quis Alexandrī bella et victōriās nōn admīrātus est?
8. Alexander, Māgnus appellātus, orbem terrārum vīcisse dīcitur.
9. Cicerō māgnā cum glōriā officiō cōsulis fūctus est.
10. Cicerō, quī māgnā cum glōriā officiō cōsulis fūctus erat, pater patriae appellābātur.
11. Omnibus in vītā commodīs<sup>3</sup> semper frūctī estis.
12. Memoriā nostrae amīcitiae semper fruar.
13. Comoda, quibus<sup>3</sup> ūtimur, ā Deō nōbīs dantur.
14. Lūx, quā fruimur, ā Deō nōbīs datur.
15. Num, Carole, Latīnē loqueris? Latīnē loquī nunquam cōnātus sum.
16. Cicerō Latīnē locūtus est. Nōn-ne Graecē locūtus est? Graecē interdum locūtus esse dīcitur.



*Alexander the Great, King of Macedonia.*

<sup>1</sup> *Pompēiī* limits not only *virtūtem* but also *animī māgnitūdinem*.

<sup>2</sup> *Admīrāns*, literally *admiring*; render, *with admiration*.

<sup>3</sup> Notice that the Latin here uses the Ablative, though in English we use a Direct Object. This Ablative is readily explained as the Ablative of *means*: *ctus, ūtor*, 'I use,' 'I serve myself *by means of*.'

**374.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. All learned men admire the poems of Homer.
2. Vergil made a good use of (used well) the poems of Homer.
3. You ought to use good books. We have always used good books.
4. Diligent pupils always enjoy their studies and their games.
5. Boys, do you not enjoy your games? We always enjoy our games. All boys enjoy games.
6. Pupils, you have performed your duties well; you will now enjoy the holidays.
7. In Gaul Caesar acquired many large towns.
8. Did he not sometimes acquire great booty? He often acquired very great booty.
9. Caesar performed with great glory the duties of a great commander.
10. Many men wonder at the victories of Alexander, who conquered the world.
11. Many Romans wondered at the victories and triumphs of Caesar.
12. Henry, does your brother speak Greek? He does not speak Greek, but he sometimes tries to speak Latin.

## LESSON XCV.

*A DIALOGUE.***375.** COLLOQUIUM.CAROLUS ET FREDERĪCUS.<sup>1</sup>

Carolus.—Vidēs-ne multītūdinem hominum in fine plateae?

Frederīcus.—Videō. Āgmen est militum quī ex castrīs revertuntur.

C.—Quid ēgērunt in castrīs?

<sup>1</sup> For the meaning of words, see the General Vocabulary.

F.—Militēs, cum in castrīs versantur, in omnī rē militārī exercentur.

C.—Semper admirātus sum cīvēs nostrōs quī ūltrō militum labōrēs tolerant, quī aestum et frīgus perpetiuntur et arduae disciplīnae sē subiciunt.

F.—Bene nārrās. Summam laudem merentur cīvēs quī prō patriae salūte labōrant. Unquam-ne adfuistī cum militēs nostrī in castrīs exercēbantur?

C.—Nunquam adfuī.

F.—Adfuī, cum militēs, quī nunc in plateā prōgrediuntur, simulācrum pūgnae ēgērunt. Nōnnūlli manipulī partēs hostium agēbant<sup>1</sup> et adversariōs adortī sunt, quī in fugam vertēbantur. Vīctōrēs vīctōs persecūtī sunt. Nihil tālī spectāculō pulchrius est.

**376.** *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Quid sīgnificat platea? 2. Num unquam antea verbum plateae vīdistis? 3. Quid sīgnificant verba, "in castrīs versantur"? 4. Num unquam simulācrum pūgnae spectāvistis? 5. Unquam-ne militēs fuistis? 6. Num in rē militārī exercitī estis? 7. Num simulācrum pūgnae saepe ēgistis?

## LESSON XCVI.

### ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN *IUS*.—NUMERALS.

**377.** The following nine adjectives have in the singular *ius* in the Genitive and *ī* in the Dative:

alius, alia, aliud, <i>another.</i>	tōtus, tōta, tōtum, <i>whole, all.</i>
nūllus, nūlla, nūllum, <i>no one, no.</i>	ūllus, ūlla, ūllum, <i>any.</i>
sōlus, sōla, sōlum, <i>alone.</i>	ūnus, ūna, ūnum, <i>one.</i>
alter, altera, alterum, <i>the one, the other</i> (of two).	
uter, utra, utrum, <i>which</i> (of two)?	
neuter, neutra, neutrum, <i>neither.</i>	

<sup>1</sup> *Partēs agēbant*, 'acted the part.'

**378.** The following examples will sufficiently illustrate the declension of these adjectives :

Alius, <i>another.</i>			Sōlus, <i>alone.</i>			
SINGULAR.						
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud	sōlus	sōla	sōlum
<i>Gen.</i>	alius	alius	alius	sōlius	sōlius	sōlius
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī	sōlī	sōlī	sōlī
<i>Acc.</i>	alium	aliam	aliud	sōlum	sōlam	sōlum
<i>Voc.</i>				sōle	sōla	sōlum
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō	sōlō	sōlā	sōlō
PLURAL.						
<i>Nom.</i>	aliī	aliae	alia	sōlī	sōlae	sōla
<i>Gen.</i>	aliōrum	aliārum	aliōrum	sōlōrum	sōlārum	sōlōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs	sōlīs	sōlīs	sōlīs
<i>Acc.</i>	aliōs	aliās	alia	sōlōs	sōlās	sōla
<i>Voc.</i>				sōlī	sōlae	sōla
<i>Abl.</i>	aliīs	aliīs	aliīs	sōlīs	sōlīs	sōlīs

**379.** Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS: <sup>1</sup> *ūnus*, one; *duo*, two.
2. ORDINAL NUMBERS: <sup>1</sup> *prīmus*, first; *secundus*, second.
3. DISTRIBUTIVES; <sup>1</sup> *singulī*, one by one; *binī*, two by two.

**380.** PARTIAL TABLE OF CARDINALS AND ORDINALS:

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1. ūnus, ūna, ūnum, <i>one</i>	<i>prīmus</i> , <i>first</i>
2. duo, duae, duo, <i>two</i>	<i>secundus</i> , <i>second</i>
3. trēs, tria, <i>three</i>	<i>tertius</i> , <i>third</i>
4. quattuor, <i>four</i>	<i>quārtus</i> , <i>fourth</i>
5. quīnque, <i>five</i>	<i>quīntus</i> , <i>fifth</i>
6. sex, <i>six</i>	<i>sextus</i> , <i>sixth</i>
7. septem, <i>seven</i>	<i>septimus</i> , <i>seventh</i>
8. octo, <i>eight</i>	<i>octāvus</i> , <i>eighth</i>
9. novem, <i>nine</i>	<i>nōnus</i> , <i>ninth</i>
10. decem, <i>ten</i>	<i>decimus</i> , <i>tenth</i>

<sup>1</sup> *Cardinals* denote simply the number of objects. *Ordinals* denote the place of an object in a series. *Distributives* denote the number of objects taken at a time.

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

381. *Ūnus, Duo, and Trēs* are declined as follows :

*Ūnus, one.*

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i> ūnus	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
<i>Gen.</i> ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	ūnōrum	ūnārum	ūnōrum
<i>Dat.</i> ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs
<i>Acc.</i> ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	ūnōs	ūnās	ūna
<i>Voc.</i> ūne	ūna	ūnum	ūnī	ūnae	ūna
<i>Abl.</i> ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	ūnīs	ūnīs	ūnīs

*Duo, two.*

*Trēs, three.*

<i>Nom.</i> duo	duae	duo	trēs, m. and f.	tria, n.
<i>Gen.</i> duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i> duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i> duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
<i>Voc.</i> duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
<i>Abl.</i> duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

**Note 1.**—The plural of *ūnus* in the sense of *alone* may be used with any noun: *ūnī Ubīi*, the Ubii alone; but, in the sense of *one*, it is used only with nouns plural in form, but singular in sense: *ūna castra*, one camp; *ūnae litterae*, one letter.

382. The Cardinals from *quattuor*, ‘four,’ to *centum*, ‘one hundred,’ are indeclinable. Hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus*; *ducentī, ae, a*, ‘two hundred.’

383. Ordinals are declined like *bonus*, and distributives like the plural of *bonus*.

384. **Mille**, *one thousand*, is sometimes an adjective and sometimes a noun.

1. **Mille**, as an ADJECTIVE, is used only in the plural and is indeclinable: **mille hominēs**, *a thousand men*; **minus mille hominibus**, *less than a thousand men*.

2. **Mille**, as a NOUN, is generally followed by the Genitive of the objects enumerated. In the singular it is indeclinable: **mille hominum**, *one thousand men*, literally, *one thousand of men*. In the plural it has the forms **milia, mīlium, mīlibus**, i. e., it is declined like the plural of *cubile*, 146: **duo milia hominum**, *two thousand men*, literally, *two thousands of men*.

385. Examine the following sentences :

1. Trīgintā **annōs** vīxit. *He lived thirty YEARS.*
2. Caecus **annōs** multōs fuit. *He was blind many YEARS.*
3. Nix erat quattuor **pedēs** alta. *The snow was four FEET deep.*

In these examples observe that *annōs*, 'years,' and *pedēs*, 'feet,' are in the *Accusative*. This Latin idiom<sup>1</sup> is expressed in the following rule :

**RULE IX.—Accusative of Time and Space.**

DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the *Accusative*.

LESSON XCVII.

ADJECTIVES WITH **IUS** IN THE GENITIVE.—NUMERALS.

386. VOCABULARY.

caelō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to carve, engrave.	
cōn-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum,	to obtain, get.	<i>consecut-ive.</i>
imperō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to command, to govern, to be emperor.	<i>impera-tive.</i>
minuō, ere, uī, ūtum,	to lessen, reduce.	<i>di-min-ish.</i>
moriōr, ī, mortuus sum,	to die.	
rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to be king, rule, reign.	<i>reign.</i>
Cyros, ī, <i>m.</i>	Cyrus, king of the Per- sians.	
lēgātus, ī, <i>m.</i>	ambassador, lieutenant.	<i>legate.</i>
māgnificē, <i>adv.</i>	splendidly, richly.	<i>magnificent-ly.</i>
mille passuum,	a thousand paces, a mile.	
quīnquāgintā,	fifty.	
Sēquanus, a, um,	of the Sequanians.	
sīc, <i>adv.</i>	thus, so, in this manner.	
vās, vāsis, <i>n.</i>	vessel, vase.	<i>vase.</i>
vīgintī, see 382.	twenty.	

<sup>1</sup> The English uses the *Objective* case in the same way.

387. *Translate into English.*

1. Ager Sēquanus erat optimus totius Galliae.<sup>1</sup>
2. Rēx Germānōrum tertiam partem agrī Sēquanī occupāvit.
3. Quot annōs rēgnāvit Cŷrus? Trīgintā annōs rēgnāvit.
4. Rōmulus trīgintā septem rēgnāvit annōs.
5. Quot mīlia passuum,<sup>2</sup> Henrice, hodiē ambulāvisti? Hodiē quīnque mīlia passuum ambulāvī.
6. Num ūnō diē decem mīlia passuum unquam ambulāvisti? Vīgintī mīlia passuum ūnō diē ambulāvī.
7. Themistoclēs diē ūnō tōtam Graeciam liberāvit. Sic ūnius virī sapientiā et virtūte tōta Graecia liberāta est.
8. Athēniēnsēs duābus victōriis, Marathōniā et Salaminiā, māgnam glōriam sunt cōsecūtī.
9. Lēgātī ad imperatōrem ex tōtā Galliā missī sunt.
10. Cicerō et multī aliī officiō cōsulis māgnā cum glōriā fūctī sunt.
11. Rōmānī vāsibus pulcherrimīs domōs et hortōs saepe ōrnāvērunt.
12. Cicerō dē vāsibus māgnificē caelātis scrībit.
13. Habēs-ne aliōs librōs? Aliōs librōs habeō nūllōs.



Vase found in the "gardens of Sallust."<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Galliae*, Partitive Genitive depending on *optimus*; see 194.

<sup>2</sup> *Passuum* depends on *mīlia*.

<sup>3</sup> Sallust, the Latin historian, acquired great wealth while governor of Numidia. He possessed in the suburbs of Rome a magnificent villa, surrounded by pleasure grounds, afterward known as "the gardens of Sallust."

**388.** TITUS ANTŌNĪNUS PIUS, THE ROMAN EMPEROR.<sup>1</sup>

Post Hadriānum imperāvit Titus Antŏnīnus, Pius nŏmīnātus, vir bonus et benīgnus. Fuit dītissimus,<sup>2</sup> sed dīvitiās suās liberalitāte minuit. Pius propter clēmentiam nŏminātus est. Mortuus est apud villam suam, vītae annō septuāgēsīmō tertiō, imperiī vīcēsīmō tertiō.



*Antoninus Pius, the Roman emperor.*

**389.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Our soldiers fought ten hours very bravely.
2. Boys, what have you been doing to-day? We have been reading the poems of Vergil the whole day.
3. How many years did Romulus reign? He is said to have reigned thirty-seven years.
4. Caesar alone performed the duty of a good consul. What was the other consul doing the whole year? He was doing nothing.
5. Ambassadors came to Caesar from all Gaul.
6. Which of you, Charles and Henry, has my book? Neither of us has your book.
7. To-morrow, Julia, you shall see my beautiful vases.
8. What are you now reading, Julia? I am reading the sixth book of Caesar. I have read five books.
9. How many books did Caesar write? He wrote seven books about the Gallic war.

<sup>1</sup> For meanings of words, see general vocabulary.

<sup>2</sup> *Dītissimus*, superlative of *dīves*, "rich," irregular.

10. Did he not write about another war? He wrote three books about the civil war.
11. In the fifth year of the Gallic war Caesar had fifty thousand soldiers in Gaul.



*Antique vases.*<sup>1</sup>

LESSON XCVIII.

PRONOUNS.

**Note.**—Review Personal and Possessive Pronouns, 264 to 267, and Relative Pronouns, 354.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

**390.** Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are declined as follows :

I. *Hīc, this, this one, he.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hīc</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hūius</i> <sup>2</sup>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i> <sup>3</sup>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Abi.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

<sup>1</sup> Three pieces of the famous Hildesheim silver recently discovered and now in the museum at Berlin, pronounced by Dr. Lübke "fine specimens of the noble richness and highly imaginative artistic decorations of vessels in metal."

<sup>2</sup> Observe that *i* is here a consonant with the sound of *y* in *yet*.

<sup>3</sup> The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

II. *Iste, that, that of yours, that one, he.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud	istī	istae	ista
<i>Gen.</i>	istīus	istīus	istīus	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	istī	istī	istī	istīs	istīs	istīs
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud	istōs	istās	ista
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō	istīs	istīs	istīs

III. *Ille, that, that one, he; is declined like iste.*IV. *Is, he, this, that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	ēius <sup>1</sup>	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

V. *Ipse, self, he.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

VI. *Īdem, the same.<sup>2</sup>*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	eadem	idem	{ eīdem īidem	eaedem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	ēiusdem <sup>1</sup>	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	{ eīsdem īisdem	eīsdem	eīsdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	{ eīsdem īisdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note 2, page 225.<sup>2</sup> *Īdem*, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *isdem* to *īdem*, and *iddem* to *īdem*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem*.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

**391.** The Interrogative Pronouns *quis* and *quī*, with their compounds, are used in asking questions. They are declined as follows :

I. *Quis, who, which, what?*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius <sup>1</sup>	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

II. *Quī, which, what?* is declined like the *relative quī*.

1. *Quis* is generally used substantively, and *Quī*, adjectively. The forms *quis* and *quem* are sometimes feminine.

2. *Quī*, *how? in what way?* is a Locative or Ablative of the interrogative *quis*.

3. Compounds of *quis* and *quī* are declined like the simple pronouns.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

**392.** Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are *quis* and *quī*, with their compounds.

*Quis*, 'any one,' and *quī*, 'any one,' 'any,' are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *quī*. But—

1. After *sī, nisi, nē*, and *num*, the Feminine Singular and Neuter Plural have *quae* or *qua* : *sī quae, sī qua*.

2. From *quis* and *quī* are formed—

<i>aliquis,</i>	<i>aliqua,</i>	<i>aliquid or aliquod,</i>	<i>some, some one.</i>
<i>quīdam,</i>	<i>quaedam,</i>	<i>quiddam or quoddam,<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>certain, certain one.</i>
<i>quisque,</i>	<i>quaeque,</i>	<i>quidque or quodque,</i>	<i>every, every one.</i>
<i>quīvīs,</i>	<i>quaevīs,</i>	<i>quidvīs or quodvīs,</i>	<i>any one you please.</i>

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note 2, page 225.

<sup>2</sup> *Quīdam* changes *m* to *n* before *d* : *quendam* for *quemdam*, etc.

## LESSON XCIX.

## PRONOUNS.—THE PLACE IN WHICH.

393. Examine the following sentences :

- |  |                                   |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Is <b>in</b> <b>Ītaliā</b> fuit.          | <i>He was</i> <b>IN</b> ITALY.    |
| 2. Is <b>in</b> nostris <b>castris</b> fuit. | <i>He was</i> <b>IN</b> our CAMP. |
| 3. Is <b>Rōmae</b> fuit.                     | <i>He was</i> <b>IN</b> ROME.     |
| 4. Is <b>Corinthī</b> fuit.                  | <i>He was</i> <b>IN</b> CORINTH.  |
| 5. Is <b>Carthāgine</b> fuit.                | <i>He was</i> <b>IN</b> CARTHAGE. |
| 6. Is <b>Athēnis</b> fuit.                   | <i>He was</i> <b>IN</b> ATHENS.   |

In these sentences observe—

1) That **in** **Ītaliā**, **in** **castris**, **Rōmae**, **Corinthī**, **Carthāgine**, and **Athēnis** all denote PLACE.

2) That in the first and second examples the ABLATIVE WITH **in** is used. This is the usual construction for the PLACE IN WHICH.

3) That in all the other examples the LOCATIVE is used: **Rōmae**, at or *in* Rome; **Corinthī**, at or *in* Corinth; **Carthāgine**, at or *in* Carthage; **Athēnis**, at or *in* Athens; see 40, 4; 90, 3; and 156, note. Observe that all these words are names of towns.

From these and similar examples we derive the following rule :

**RULE XXX.—Place in which.**

The PLACE IN WHICH is denoted—

I. Generally by the *Ablative*<sup>1</sup> with the preposition **in**.

II. In NAMES OF TOWNS by the *Locative*.

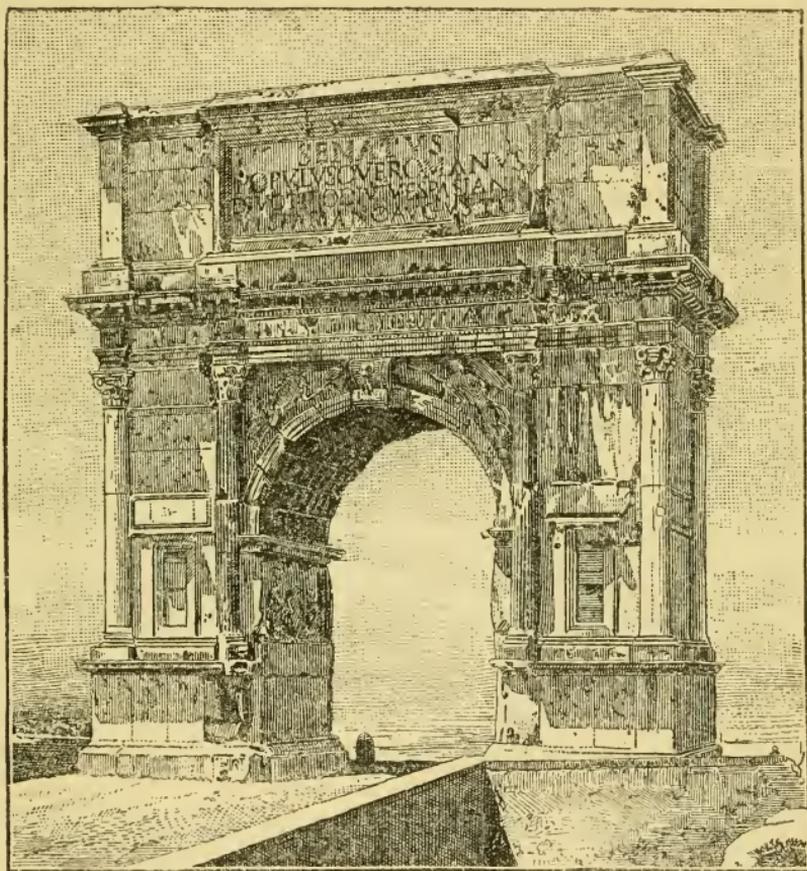
394. VOCABULARY.

arcus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	a bow, arch.	<i>arch.</i>
Bostonia, ae, <i>f.</i>	Boston.	
Cōstantīnus, ī, <i>m.</i>	Constantine, a Roman emperor.	
monumentum, ī, <i>n.</i>	monument, memorial.	<i>monument.</i>
Philadelp̄hia, ae, <i>f.</i>	Philadelphia.	
quoque, <i>conj.</i>	also, too.	

<sup>1</sup> In force and use this *Ablative* is really a *Locative*. Thus the PLACE IN WHICH is regularly denoted by the *Locative*, in the names of towns, WITHOUT the preposition *in*, and in the names of other places WITH the preposition. The LOCATIVE WITHOUT THE PREPOSITION was the original construction.

395. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis hunc librum scrīpsit? Caesar illum librum scrīpsit.
2. Lēgistī-ne hōs librōs, Henrīce? Eōs Rōmae lēgī.
3. Quō tempore Rōmae erās? Mēse Decembrī Rōmae eram.
4. Ubī tū eō tempore fuistī? Illō tempore Athēnīs fuī.



*The Arch of Titus.*<sup>1</sup>

5. Quā in urbe habitāvit Cicerō? Rōmae habitāvit.
6. Ubī habitāvit Sōcratēs, vir sapiēns? In Graeciā habitāvit.

<sup>1</sup> This is a triumphal arch erected by the senate and people of Rome in honor of the Emperor Titus, to commemorate his conquest of Jerusalem.

7. Multī virī sapientēs Athēnīs habitāvērunt.
8. Hī fortēs militēs patriam servāvērunt.
9. Huic puerō nihil iūcundius est quam lūdus.
10. Sapientēs hominēs sē ipsī<sup>1</sup> nōn laudābunt.
11. Quid Rōmae vīdistī? Urbem tōtam monumentīs<sup>2</sup> ōrnatam vīdī.
12. Nōn-ne Titī arcum, illud monumentum vīctōriae, vīdistī? Eum vīdī. Illud alterum monumentum vīctōriae quoque, arcum Cōstantīnī, vīdī.

### 396. MILITARY HONORS.<sup>3</sup>

Rōmānī militum animōs dōnīs militāribus accendēbant. Torquēs aureī, arma īnsīgnia, corōnae erant virtūtis decora. Eī quī prīmus mūrūm hostīum ascenderat corōnam mūrālem<sup>4</sup> tribuēbant; eī quī nāvem prīmus ascenderat, corōnam nāvālem; eī quī cīvem dēfenderat et servāverat, corōnam cīvicam.<sup>4</sup> Imperātor quī bellum bene gesserat triumphābat. Currum triumphantis<sup>5</sup> quattuor equī albī trahēbant; ipse togā pīctā indūtus laurō-que ōrnātus erat<sup>6</sup>; ante currum praeda vehēbātur et captīvī dūcēbantur.

### 397. *Translate into Latin.*

1. In what city do you live, boys? We live in Boston.
2. Charles, where are your brothers now living? They are living in Virginia.
3. Did you see my friend Marcus in Philadelphia? I saw him often.
4. Who has read this book? I have read it. All the boys have read that book. I have been delighted with it.
5. In what month were you at Corinth? We were at Corinth in December.

<sup>1</sup> Observe that *ipsī* agrees with the subject, though in rendering we connect it with the object.      <sup>2</sup> Monumentīs, Ablative of Means, *with monuments*.

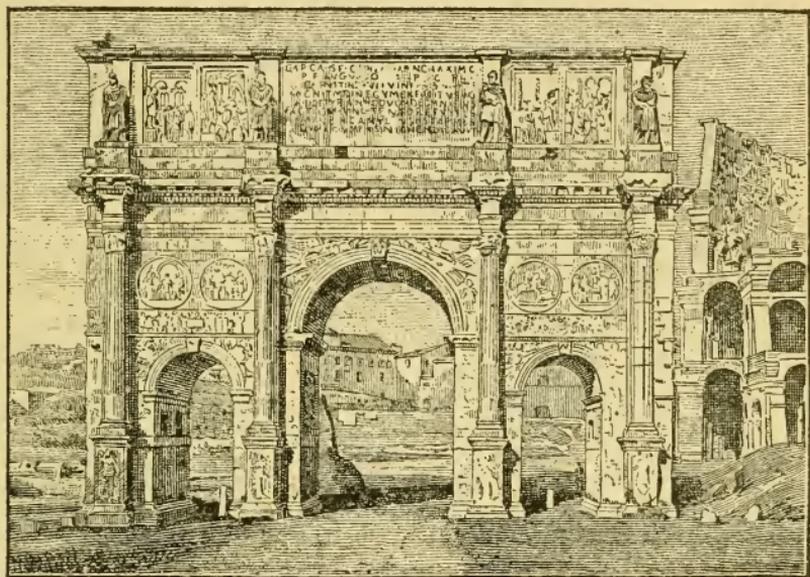
<sup>3</sup> For meaning of words, see general vocabulary.

<sup>4</sup> See 32, 35, and 36.

<sup>5</sup> Triumphantis, literally, *of him triumphing*; render, *as he triumphed*.

<sup>6</sup> *Erat* belongs with *indūtus* as well as with *ōrnātus*.

6. What did you see at Corinth? We saw the ruins of a magnificent temple.
7. In Athens we saw the beautiful temple of Minerva.
8. Did not Cicero write this book? He wrote it.
9. Who wrote the book which you are now reading? Caesar, who conquered the Gauls, wrote that book.
10. Did not some one write about friendship? Cicero, the orator, wrote a book about friendship.



*The Arch of Constantine.*<sup>1</sup>

## LESSON C.

### A DIALOGUE.

### 398. COLLOQUIUM.

CAROLUS ET FREDERICUS.

(Continued from 375.)

Carolus.—Vērae pūgnae spectāculum multō mihi praestābilis vidētur. Nōn-ne tibi<sup>2</sup> colōnōrum proelium ad-

<sup>1</sup> This is a triumphal arch erected to commemorate the military achievements of the emperor.

<sup>2</sup> Indirect Object of *placuit*.

versus Indiānōs, dē quā nūper mihī nārrāvistī,<sup>1</sup> magis placuit quam simulācrum pūgnae?

Frederīcus.—Mihī quidem nullius pūgnae spectāculum placet, in quā hominēs vulnera accipiunt et ab aliis interficiuntur.

C.—Quisquam-ne colōnōrum vītā amīsīt?

F.—Duo colōnī lapidibus ictī sunt. Utriusque vulnera fuerunt levia. Alterius vulnus in ore, alterius<sup>2</sup> in tergō fuit.

C.—Quot Indiānī cecidērunt<sup>3</sup> in pūgnā?

F.—Decem ex barbarōrum numerō glandibus colōnōrum occīsī,<sup>4</sup> et trēs gladiīs trānsfixī sunt.

C.—Māgnus-ne fuit numerus Indiānōrum et colōnōrum quī in proeliō erant?

F.—Tōtum barbarōrum exercitum ad quīnquāgintā<sup>5</sup> aestimāvī, colōnōrum autem numerum ad duodecim.

C.—Nōn-ne veritī sunt colōnī tantam barbarōrum multitudinē aggredī?

F.—Civēs nostrī deum verentur, sed praetereā nēminem.<sup>6</sup>

**399.** *Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.*

1. Quid Carolō magis placet quam simulācrum pūgnae?
2. Cui placuit vērae pūgnae spectāculum?
3. Num, puerī, simulācrum pūgnae unquam spectāvistis?
4. Num unquam iter fēcistis per regiōnēs quae ab Indiānīs incoluntur?
5. Quot colōnī in hōc proeliō interfectī sunt?
6. Quot barbarī in hōc proeliō erant?
7. Num quīnquāgintā colōnī tantam barbarōrum multitudinē vīcērunt?

<sup>1</sup> The learner is recommended to review the dialogues contained in 367 and 375, as this dialogue is a continuation of one of them, and is in subject closely connected with the other.

<sup>2</sup> *Alterius . . . alterius*, 'of the one . . . of the other.'

<sup>3</sup> From *cadō*.

<sup>4</sup> Supply *sunt* from *trānsfixī sunt*.

<sup>5</sup> *Ad quīnquāgintā*, 'about fifty.'

<sup>6</sup> *Nēminem*, Direct Object of *verentur*; see 195, foot-note 3.

## LESSON CI.

## SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE.—SUBJUNCTIVE OF FIRST CONJUGATION.

400. Learn the Subjunctive mood of the verb **Sum**, 469, and of the verb **Amō** in the Active voice, 470.

401. Examine the following sentences :

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <b>Amēmus</b> patriam.                     | LET US LOVE <i>our country</i> .                       |
| 2. <b>Nē</b> agrōs hostium <b>vāstēmus</b> .  | LET US NOT LAY WASTE <i>the fields of the enemy</i> .  |
| 3. Cīvēs <b>sint</b> beātī.                   | MAY <i>our citizens</i> BE <i>happy</i> .              |
| 4. <b>Utinam</b> cīvēs <b>sint</b> beātī.     | O THAT <i>our citizens</i> MAY BE <i>happy</i> .       |
| 5. <b>Utinam</b> cīvēs <b>essent</b> beātī.   | WOULD THAT <i>our citizens</i> WERE <i>happy</i> .     |
| 6. <b>Utinam</b> cīvēs <b>fuissent</b> beātī. | WOULD THAT <i>our citizens</i> HAD BEEN <i>happy</i> . |

In these sentences observe that the verbs **amēmus**, **vāstēmus**, **sint**, **essent**, and **fuissent** all express a DESIRE or WISH on the part of the speaker, and that they are all in the *Subjunctive* mood. This Latin usage is expressed in the following rule :

**RULE XXXVIII.—Subjunctive of Desire, Command.**

The Subjunctive is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS DESIRED.

1. The *Subjunctive of Desire* is often accompanied by *utinam*, as in the fourth, fifth, and sixth examples.

2. In this Subjunctive the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect* tenses imply that the wish can not be fulfilled.

## 402. VOCABULARY.

<b>hōra</b> , ae, f.	hour.	<i>hour</i> .
<b>nē</b> , adv. and conj.	not, that not, lest. <sup>1</sup>	
<b>modestus</b> , a, um,	moderate, modest, temperate.	<i>modest</i> .
<b>ōtiōsus</b> , a, um,	unemployed, idle.	
<b>secundus</b> , a, um,	second, successful, prosperous, fortunate.	<i>second</i> .

<sup>1</sup> With the *Subjunctive of Desire* *nē* means *not*, 401, 2; but with the *Subjunctive of Purpose* it means *that not*, *in order that not*, *lest*, 406, 3.

rēs secundāe,	prosperity.	
superbia, ae, f.	pride, haughtiness.	superb.
suspīciō, ōnis, f.	distrust, suspicion.	suspicion.
utinam, conj.	O that, would that.	

#### 403. Translate into English.

1. Cīvēs omnēs patriam nostram ament.
2. Iūdicem iūstum honōrēmus et laudēmus.
3. Trēs hōrās Latīnē locūtī sumus, puerī; nunc per agrōs ambulēmus.
4. Agrōs, hortōs, flōrēs, arborēs spectēmus.
5. Nōbīs iūcundum est tēcum<sup>1</sup> ambulāre, Tite, sed nōs urbem amāmus; per amplās urbis viās ambulēmus et aedificia pulchra spectēmus.
6. Laudēs virōrum bonōrum et sapientium semper celebrēmus.
7. Laudem Cicerōnis cōsulis celebrēmus, nam patriam suam periculō<sup>2</sup> māgnō liberāvit.
8. In rēbus secundīs omnēs hominēs modestī sint.
9. Ōrnāmus corpora; ōrnēmus etiam animōs.
10. Omnēs hominēs perīcula vītāe ōtiōsae vītent.
11. Utinam cīvēs nostrī in rēbus secundīs superbiam vītārent.
12. Utinam, mei amīcī, in rēbus secundīs sapientēs fuisēmus.

#### 404. Translate into Latin.

1. Let all soldiers avoid the suspicion of fear. Let them be brave in danger, and let them fight bravely for their country.
2. Let us all praise the illustrious general who freed the republic from the greatest dangers.
3. Let the Romans adorn with garlands the statues of Scipio, for he triumphed over Hannibal.

<sup>1</sup> See 265, note.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative of Separation; see 300.

4. Let us walk through the forum and look at the beautiful temples.
5. Let us wait for Marcus, for he will walk with us.
6. Let us adorn with the most beautiful garlands the statues of good and wise men.
7. Let us celebrate the praises of poets and orators.
8. Let soldiers celebrate the praises of Caesar, but let us honor the consul Cicero, who is sometimes called the father of his country.
9. Would that our citizens would love peace and avoid war.
10. Would that we had always loved peace and avoided war.

## LESSON CII.

## SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE.—FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.

**405.** Learn the Subjunctive mood of the verb **Amō** in the Passive voice, 471, and of the verb **Moneō** in both voices, 472 and 473.

**406.** Examine the following sentences :

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Domī remanent <b>ut</b> perīculum<br><b>vītent.</b>           | <i>They remain at home TO AVOID<br/>danger.</i>                       |
| 2. Domī remanēbant <b>ut</b> perīculum<br><b>vītārent.</b>       | <i>They remained at home TO AVOID<br/>danger.</i>                     |
| 3. Caesarem ōrābant <b>nē</b> oppidum<br>suum <b>oppūgnāret.</b> | <i>They besought Caesar NOT TO AT-<br/>TACK their town.</i>           |
| 4. Lēgātī missī sunt <b>quī</b> auxilium<br><b>implōrārent.</b>  | <i>Embassadors were sent TO IMPLORE<br/>(WHO SHOULD IMPLORE) aid.</i> |

In these sentences observe—

1) That **ut vītent**, to avoid, literally, *that they may avoid*; **ut vītārent**, to avoid, literally, *that they should avoid*; **nē oppūgnāret**, not to attack, literally, *that he would not attack*; and **quī implōrārent**, to implore, literally, *who should implore*, all denote the PURPOSE of the action expressed by the leading verb, remanent, etc.: *they remain at home IN ORDER THAT they MAY AVOID danger.*

2) That the verbs which here express PURPOSE are all in the *Subjunctive*, and are introduced by **ut**, **nē**, or the relative **quī**.

Hence we have the following rule :

**RULE XLII.—Purpose.**

The Subjunctive is used to denote PURPOSE with **ut**, **nē**, and the relative **quī**.

**Note.**—In clauses denoting *Purpose*, the PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE is used after a *Present* or *Future* tense, as in the first example; while the IMPERFECT is used after an *Imperfect*, *Perfect*, or *Pluperfect*, as in the second, third, and fourth examples.

**407. VOCABULARY.**

dē-cernō, ere, crēvī, crētum,	to resolve, vote, decree.	<i>decree.</i>
equitatus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	cavalry.	
imperō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to command, order.	<i>imperat-ive.</i>
metus, ūs, <i>m.</i>	fear.	
ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to ask, beg, beseech.	
servitūs, ūtis, <i>f.</i>	servitude, slavery.	<i>servitude.</i>
ut, <i>conj.</i>	that, in order that, to.	

**408. Translate into English.**

1. Caesar militēs hortātur ut prō patriā fortiter pūgnent.
2. Caesar militēs hortātus est ut prō patriā fortiter pūgnārent.
3. Gallī ōrābant ut patria servārētur.
4. Patria ab omnibus amētur et laudētur.
5. Ōrāmus ut haec commūnis nostrum omnium patria amētur et laudētur.
6. Militēs ōrābant ut adventus Caesaris exspectārētur.
7. Vōs, puerī, monēmus ut memoriam cottīdiē exerceātis.
8. Praeceptōrēs nōs saepe monent ut memoriam exerceāmus.
9. Gallī Caesarem ōrāvērunt nē agrōs fertilēs vāstāret.
10. Lēgum servī sumus ut liberī sīmus.
11. Militēs nostrī impetum hostium sustineant.
12. Caesar militibus imperāvīt ut impetum hostium fortiter sustinērent.
13. Impetus hostium sustineātur.

14. Nē periculīs terreāmur.
15. Imperātor equitātum, quī hostium impetum sustinēret, mīsīt.
16. Labiēnus quī collem occupāret missus est.
17. Senātus Rōmānus dēcrēvit ut cōsul rem pūblicam servāret.

**409.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will you not sail to Greece that you may see Athens?  
We shall sail to Greece that we may see Athens and Corinth.
2. We made the journey through Europe that we might see Rome.
3. Marcus, let us ask our friend the poet to sail to Europe with us.
4. Whom shall we send to invite him? Send your brother to invite him.
5. Ask him to wait for us in Boston.
6. The Gauls besought Caesar not to destroy their towns.
7. The senate decreed that the illustrious general should be honored with a golden crown.
8. The Gauls bravely attacked the camp of Caesar, that they might be freed from the fear of servitude.
9. The general exhorted the soldiers not to fear the enemy.
10. Caesar commanded the Gauls not to move their camp.
11. The consul besought the citizens to fight bravely in behalf of themselves and their children.

LESSON CIII.

*SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—SECOND AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS.*

**410.** Learn the Subjunctive Mood of the verb **Regō** in both voices, 474 and 475.

**411.** Examine the following sentences :

- |                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| 1. Quid facis ?            | <i>What are you doing ?</i>                 |
| 2. Nēscit quid faciās.     | <i>He knows not what you ARE DOING.</i>     |
| 3. Quid faciēbās ?         | <i>What were you doing ?</i>                |
| 4. Nēscīvit quid facerēs.  | <i>He did not know what you WERE DOING.</i> |
| 5. Quid fēcistī ?          | <i>What have you done ?</i>                 |
| 6. Nēscit quid fēcerīs.    | <i>He does not know what you HAVE DONE.</i> |
| 7. Quid fēcerās ?          | <i>What had you done ?</i>                  |
| 8. Nēscīvit quid fēcissēs. | <i>He did not know what you HAD DONE.</i>   |

In these examples observe that the direct questions contained in the first, third, fifth, and seventh examples, when made dependent upon *nēscit* or *nēscīvit*, as in the other examples, simply change the verb from the *Indicative* to the *SUBJUNCTIVE*. Hence we have the following rule :

**RULE LV.—Moods in Indirect Questions.**

The Subjunctive is used in *INDIRECT QUESTIONS*.

**412. VOCABULARY.**

Alexandrīa, ae, <i>f.</i>	Alexandria, a city in Egypt.	
ārdeō, ēre, ārsī, ārsum,	to burn, be burned.	<i>ardent.</i>
bibliothēca, ae, <i>f.</i>	library.	
cōgnōscō, ere, cognōvī, cognitum,	to inquire, ascertain, find out.	
explōrātor, ōris, <i>m.</i>	scout, spy.	<i>explorer.</i>
incertus, a, um,	doubtful, uncertain.	<i>uncertain.</i>
quadringentī, ae, a,	four hundred.	
quotus, a, um,	which, what (of number).	
Seneca, ae, <i>m.</i>	Seneca, a Roman author.	

**413.** *Translate into English.*

1. Quid scrībit tuus frāter? Nēsciō quid meus frāter scrībat.
2. Quid herī scrīpsit? Nēsciō quid herī scrīpserit.
3. Quis hunc librum legit? Nēsciō quis illum librum legat.
4. Scītis-ne, puerī, quis hās ōrātiōnēs scrīpserit? Scīmus quis eās scrīpserit.

5. Herī nēsciēbam quam ōrātiōnem puerī legerent.
6. Nēsciēbāmus ubī puerī lūsissent.
7. Nōn-ne sciēbātis ubī eō tempore lūderent? Nēsciēbāmus ubī eō tempore lūderent.
8. Caesar mīlitēs hortātus est nē falsīs rŭmōribus terrērentur.



*The Vatican Library, showing the style and arrangement of book-cases in ancient Rome.<sup>1</sup>*

9. Quibus rŭmōribus terrītī sunt? Quibus rŭmōribus terrītī sint incertum est.
10. Hōra quota est? Nēsciō, sed patrem interrogābō quota hōra sit.
11. Quid hostēs agēbant? Nōn-ne Caesar sciēbat quid hostēs agerent? Per explōrātōrēs quid hostēs agerent cōgnōvīt.

<sup>1</sup> Taken by permission from Lanciani's *Ancient Rome*. "The founders of Christian libraries in Rome," says Prof. Lanciani, "followed faithfully the classic prototypes, the arrangement of the Vatican Library to-day being precisely that of the ancients."

12. Quam multae bibliothēcae Rōmae fuērunt? Quam multae bibliothēcae Rōmae fuerint incertum est.
13. Alexandriāe fuit bibliothēca clārissima. Haec bibliothēca ārsit. Seneca scrībit: “Quadringenta mīlia librōrum Alexandriāe ārsērunt.”

**414.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. What did Charles say? I do not know what he said.
2. Where is he to-day? No one knows where he is.
3. Do you know, boys, how many books Cicero wrote? We do not know; we have never heard how many books he wrote.
4. By whom was this town destroyed? I do not know by whom it was destroyed.
5. How many towns were destroyed? It is uncertain how many towns were destroyed.
6. Where are the boys playing? Let us ascertain where they are playing.
7. Are the soldiers in the camp to-day? I do not know where they are.
8. Many boys do not know who conquered Hannibal.
9. Let all the boys ascertain by whom this great commander was conquered.
10. How many temples were there in Italy? I have never heard how many temples there were in Italy.
11. How many villas did Cicero have? It is difficult to ascertain how many villas he had.

LESSON CIV.

*SUBJUNCTIVE.—THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—  
INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.*

**415.** Learn the Subjunctive Mood of the verb **Audiō** in both voices, 476 and 477.

## 416. Examine the following sentences :

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Mōns ab hostibus tenētur.                        | <i>The mountain is held by the enemy.</i>               |
| 2. Dīcunt <b>montem</b> ab hostibus <b>tenēri</b> . | <i>They say THAT THE MOUNTAIN IS HELD by the enemy.</i> |
| 3. Hostēs nōn timet.                                | <i>He does not fear the enemy.</i>                      |
| 4. Dīcit <b>sē</b> hostēs nōn <b>timēre</b> .       | <i>He says THAT HE DOES not FEAR the enemy.</i>         |
| 5. Hostēs nōn timeō.                                | <i>I do not fear the enemy.</i>                         |
| 6. Dīcō <b>mē</b> hostēs nōn <b>timēre</b> .        | <i>I say THAT I DO not FEAR the enemy.</i>              |

In these sentences observe—

1) That when the first sentence is made dependent upon **dīcunt** in the second, the subject **mōns** is changed to the accusative **montem** and the verb **tenētur** to the infinitive **tenēri**.

2) That in the fourth and sixth sentences, where a similar change has taken place, the accusatives **sē** and **mē** are expressed, although the corresponding nominatives are omitted in **timet** and **timeō**.

The Latin usage illustrated in these examples is expressed in the following rules :

**RULE LVII.—Infinitive with Subject Accusative.**

Many transitive verbs admit an INFINITIVE WITH A SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.

**RULE LVIII.—Subject of Infinitive.**

The Infinitive sometimes takes an ACCUSATIVE as its SUBJECT.

## 417. VOCABULARY.

Iuppiter, Iovis, <i>m.</i>	Jupiter, supreme god of the Romans.	
legiō, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	a body of soldiers, legion.	<i>legion.</i>
Mercurius, iī, <i>m.</i>	Mercury, messenger of the gods.	
nūntius, iī, <i>m.</i>	messenger, message.	
prīmus, a, um,	first.	<i>prime.</i>
re-maneō, ēre, mānsī,	to remain, stay.	<i>remain.</i>

## 418. Translate into English.

1. Ōrātōrem clārum hodiē audiāmus.
2. Senātōrēs Rōmæ remanēbant ut Cicerōnem, ōrātōrem clārissimum, audīrent.

3. *Ā quō scrīpta est haec ōrātiō? Incertum est ā quō scrīpta sīt.*
4. *Quam multī mīlitēs ab Hannibale in Ītaliā ductī sint nēmō unquam sciet.*
5. *Caesar eō tempore ūnam legiōnem sēcum in Galliā habuit.*
6. *Dīcunt Caesarem eō tempore ūnam legiōnem in Galliā habuisse.*
7. *Tē māgnūm amīcōrum numerum habēre audiō.*
8. *Dīcitis vōs māgnūm amīcōrum numerum habitūrōs esse.*
9. *Mārcus dīxit sē māgnūm librōrum numerum habēre.*
10. *Puerī dīcunt sē prīmūm Caesaris librum lēgisse.*
11. *Nē falsīs rūmōribus terreāmur.*
12. *Caesar dīxit mīlitēs falsīs rūmōribus saepe terrērī.*
13. *Caesar mīlitibus imperāvit ut castra cūstōdīrent.*
14. *Utinam castra nostra vallō fossā-que mūnīta essent.*



*Jupiter, the supreme god of the Romans.*

#### 419. THE GODS OF THE ROMANS.

Apud Rōmānōs Iuppiter fuit deōrum et hominum pater. Iūnō, uxor Iovis, rēgīna fuit caelī. Minerva, filia Iovis, dea fuit sapientiae. Apollinem appellāvērunt deum sōlis, Diānam deam lūnae, Cererem deam frūmentī. Mercurius deōrum nūntius fuisse dīcitur. In Graeciā et in Ītaliā dīcunt multa templa fuisse Iovis, Iūnōnis, Apollinis, Cereris, Minervae.

420. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Boys, let us now hear the story.
2. Would that I had heard the story yesterday.
3. Whom did you hear in the senate yesterday? I do not know whom I heard.
4. Let brave soldiers and good men guard our city.
5. Which legion fortified the camp? I shall ascertain by which legion the camp was fortified.
6. Charles says that the fifth legion fortified the camp.
7. Did the Gauls fortify their towns? Caesar says that the Gauls fortified their towns with huge walls.
8. What is Henry reading? He says that he is reading the orations of Cicero.
9. Did you not say that you were reading the works of Caesar? I said that I was reading the poems of Vergil.
10. My brother says that he is delighted with the poems of Vergil.
11. The Roman poets say that Jupiter is the father of gods and men, and that Mercury is the messenger of the gods.



*Ceres, the goddess of agriculture.*

## LESSON CV.

*SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE VERB CAPIŌ.—A DIALŌGUE.*

421. Learn the Subjunctive Mood of the verb **Capiŏ** in both voices, 478 and 479.

## 422. COLLOQUIUM.

QUINTUS, SEXTUS, TITUS.

Quintus.—Quid iudicās de Fulviō et Semproniō, quī operariōs contrā dominōs instigant?

Sextus.—Scelerātī sunt quī rem publicam nefariē disturbant. Saepe quaesivī cūr hās contentiōnēs incitāverint.

Q.—Hās contentiōnēs incitant ut ex miseriā aliōrum ipsī lucrum faciant. Operariī ad hanc hōram in forum convocātī sunt.

S.—Prōcēdāmus in forum, ut cōgnoscāmus quid ibī agātur.

Q.—Vidēs-ne multitudinem in regiōne forī?

S.—Operariī esse videntur quī ex cōntiōne revertuntur. In pompā ingrediuntur mōre militum<sup>1</sup> cum vēxillīs.

Q.—Faciunt hōc ut oculī civium in sē convertantur.

S.—Quaerāmus ex spectātōribus quid āctum sit in cōntiōne.

T.—Sunt lignariī, quī ab operibus cessāre cōstituērunt.

Q.—Quae est hūius cōnsiliī causa?

T.—Hōc faciunt ut maiōrēs ā dominīs suis mercēdēs extorqueant.

Q.—Nōn-ne dominī mercēdēs eōrum augēbunt?

T.—Quid dominī faciant nesciō.

S.—Dominī postulāta operariōrum sine dubiō dēnegābunt.



*Mercury, the messenger of the gods.*

<sup>1</sup> Mōre militum, "in the manner of soldiers," i. e., like soldiers.

**423.** Translate the following questions and answer them in Latin.

1. Quid iūdicās dē hōc colloquiō? 2. Quī hās contentiōnēs incitāvērunt? 3. Scītis-ne, puerī, cūr operāriī omnēs in forum convocātī sint? 4. Num unquam forum Rōmānum vīdistis? 5. Est-ne forum in urbe vestrā? 6. Nōn-ne līgnāriī māiōrēs mercēdēs accipere dēbent? 7. Nōn-ne multī dominī mercēdēs operāriōrum interdum augent?

## LESSON CVI.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**424.** Examine the following sentences and review those in 416:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Caesar duās legiōnēs in Italiā cōnscripsit.                                     | <i>Caesar enrolled two legions in Italy.</i>   |
| 2. Caesar dicit sē duās legiōnēs in Italiā cōnscripsisse.                          | <i>Caesar says THAT HE ENROLLED two legions in Italy.</i>                                      |
| 3. Legiō quam Caesar semper laudat est decima.                                     | <i>The legion which Caesar is always praising is the tenth.</i>                                |
| 4. Dicunt legiōnem quam Caesar semper laudet esse decimam.                         | <i>They say THAT THE LEGION which Caesar is always PRAISING IS the tenth.</i>                  |
| 5. Militēs duārum legiōnum quās Caesar in Italiā cōnscripsit fortēs sunt.          | <i>The soldiers of the two legions which Caesar enrolled in Italy are brave.</i>               |
| 6. Dicunt militēs duārum legiōnum quās Caesar in Italiā cōnscripserit fortēs esse. | <i>They say THAT THE SOLDIERS of the two legions which Caesar ENROLLED in Italy ARE brave.</i> |

In these sentences observe—

1) That the first, third, and fifth examples are said to be in the DIRECT DISCOURSE; while the same sentences when made dependent upon **dicit** or **dicunt** in the second, fourth, and sixth examples, are said to be in the INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

2) That in the third example, *legiō est decima* is called the PRINCIPAL CLAUSE, and *quam Caesar semper laudat*, the SUBORDINATE

CLAUSE. In the fifth example, *mīlitēs duārum legiōnum fortēs sunt* is the PRINCIPAL CLAUSE, and *quās Caesar in Italiā cōscripsit* the SUBORDINATE CLAUSE.

3) That in the PRINCIPAL CLAUSE in the INDIRECT DISCOURSE the verb is in the INFINITIVE and the subject in the ACCUSATIVE, while in the SUBORDINATE CLAUSE the verb is in the SUBJUNCTIVE.

From these and similar examples we derive the following rule :

**RULE LIII.—Moods in Principal Clauses.**

The principal clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE on becoming INDIRECT take the *Infinitive with a Subject Accusative*.<sup>1</sup>

**RULE LIV.—Moods in Subordinate Clauses.**

The subordinate clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE on becoming INDIRECT take the *Subjunctive*.

**425. VOCABULARY.**

commemorō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to mention, relate.	<i>commemorate.</i>
Cōnsidius, iī, m.	Considius, an officer in Caesar's army.	
per-terreō, ēre, uī, itum,	to frighten thoroughly, terrify greatly.	
Sulla, ae, m.	Sulla, a Roman general.	

**426. Translate into English.**

1. Frāter meus librīs dēlectātur.
2. Frāter meus scribit sē librīs dēlectārī.
3. Frāter meus librīs quōs legit dēlectātur.
4. Frāter meus scribit sē librīs quōs legat dēlectārī.<sup>2</sup>
5. Eī quī nōn māgnū in rē mīlitārī ūsum habent saepe terrentur.
6. Caesar dīcit eōs quī nōn māgnū in rē mīlitārī ūsum habeant saepe terrērī.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This provides for all principal clauses in Indirect Discourse except questions and commands.

<sup>2</sup> Note carefully the changes which take place when a sentence is introduced in the INDIRECT DISCOURSE. Here the verbs *dēlectātur* and *terrentur* are changed to *dēlectārī* and *terrērī*; the subject of *dēlectārī* is the reflexive *sē*, because it refers to *frāter*, the subject of the leading verb *scribit*.



4

2

1

3



5

6

7

8

9

10



11



12



13



14

4. NEPTUNE, 2. JUNO, 1. JUPITER, 3. VESTA,  
5. MERCURY, 6. APOLLO, 7. CERES, 8. MINERVA, 9. DIANA, 10. VULCAN,  
11. VENUS, 12. BACCHUS, 13. SATURN, 14. MARS.



7. Caesar dīxit eōs quī nōn māgnū in rē militārī ūsum habērent falsīs rūmōribus saepe terrērī.
8. Titus librō quem dē amīcitiā Cicerō scrīpsit dēlectātur.
9. Titus dīcit sē librō quem dē amīcitiā Cicerō scrīpserit dēlectārī.
10. Saepe legimus Hannibalem māgnū exercitū in Ītaliā dūxisse.
11. Saepe legimus Hannibalem, quī māgnū exercitū in Ītaliā dūxisset, ā Scīpiōne victū esse.
12. Caesar nārrat Cōnsidium, quī fuisset in exercitū Sullae, timōre perterritū esse.
13. Caesar respondit sē eās rēs, quās lēgātī commemorāvisent, memoriā tenēre.

**427.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. Great honors have always been awarded to brave soldiers.
2. We know that great honors have always been awarded to brave soldiers.
3. We ought to award honors to these soldiers who have freed our country from danger.
4. You say that we ought to award honors to the soldiers who have freed our country from danger.
5. All who heard the orator were delighted.
6. They say that all who heard the orator were delighted.
7. The poems of Homer, which boys now read in school, were read in ancient times by all the Greeks.
8. Our teacher says that the poems of Homer, which boys now read in school, were read in ancient times by all the Greeks.
9. The soldiers who were terrified did not have large experience in military affairs.
10. Caesar writes that the soldiers who were terrified did not have large experience in military affairs.

## LESSON CVII.

## POSSUM AND FERŌ.—ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

428. Learn in full the Paradigms of the irregular verbs **Possum** and **Ferō**, 481, 482, 483.

429. Examine the following sentences :

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Solōn <b>Serviō</b> rēgnante viguit.              | <i>Solon flourished</i> IN THE REIGN OF <b>SERVIVS</b> ( <i>Servius reigning</i> ).   |
| 2. <b>Rēgibus</b> exāctīs, cōsulēs cre-<br>ātī sunt. | AFTER THE BANISHMENT OF THE<br>KINGS ( <i>the kings having been<br/>banished</i> ), <i>consuls were elected</i> .             |
| 3. <b>Cōsumptō</b> frūmentō, cōsul-<br>tābant.       | AS THEIR GRAIN WAS EXHAUSTED<br>( <i>their grain having been ex-<br/>hausted</i> ), <i>they took counsel to-<br/>gether</i> . |
| 4. <b>Equitātū</b> praemissō, subseque-<br>bātur.    | HAVING SENT FORWARD HIS CAV-<br>ALRY ( <i>his cavalry having been<br/>sent forward</i> ), <i>he followed</i> .                |

In these sentences observe that each contains a NOUN and a PARTICIPLE IN THE ABLATIVE, denoting the TIME, CAUSE, or some other ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANCE of the action. Hence we derive the following rule :

RULE XXXII.—Ablative Absolute.<sup>1</sup>

A noun and a participle may be put in the Ablative to add to the predicate an attendant circumstance.

**Note.**—This Ablative is generally best rendered—(1) by a *noun* with a *preposition*—*in, during, after, by, with, through, etc.*; (2) by an *active participle* with its *object*; or (3) by a *clause* with *when, while, because, if, though, etc.* Thus :

1) **Serviō rēgnante**; literally, *Servius reigning*; render, *in the reign of Servius, or while Servius was reigning*.

2) **Rēgibus exāctīs**; literally, *the kings having been banished*; render, *after the banishment of the kings, or after the kings were banished*.

3) **Cōsumptō frūmentō**; literally, *their grain having been exhausted*; render, *as their grain was exhausted*.

4) **Equitātū praemissō**; literally, *his cavalry having been sent forward*; render, *having sent forward his cavalry*.

<sup>1</sup> This Ablative is called *absolute*, because it is not necessarily dependent for its construction upon any other word in the sentence; yet in many instances it can be readily explained as an *Ablative of Time, Cause, Means, etc.*

430. VOCABULARY.

af-ferō, ferre, attulī, allātum,	to bring, introduce.	
Antiochus, ī, m.	Antiochus, King of Syria.	
Ariovistus, ī, m.	Ariovistus, King of the Suevi.	
candēlābrum, ī, n.	candlestick, candelabrum.	
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum,	to bear, endure, carry, pro- pose (a law).	de-fer. gem.
gemma, ae, f.	jewel, precious stone, gem.	
Liscus, ī, m.	Liscus, a leader of the Aeduans.	
lucerna, ae, f.	lamp.	
per-ficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum,	to finish, perfect, make.	perfect.
possum, posse, potuī, —,	to be able; possum, I am able, I can.	possi-ble.
quam, adv.	as; quam diu, as long as.	
reperiō, ĩre, repperī, reperitum,	to find.	
Servius, ĩi, m.	Servius, a Roman king.	
taceō, ěre, uī, ĩtum,	to be silent, keep still.	tacit.
Tarquinius, ĩi, m.	Tarquin, a Roman king.	



Roman lamps.

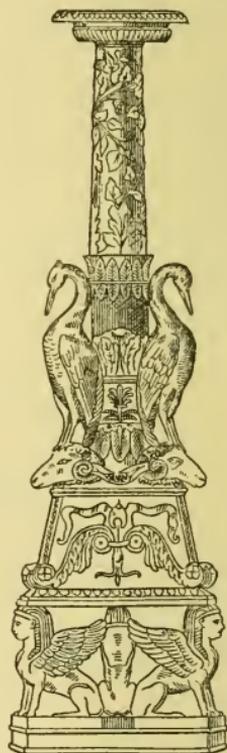
431. Translate into English.

1. Aeduī sē dēfendere nōn poterant.
2. Num imperātor Ītaliā metū liberāre potest? Dicit sē Ītaliā metū liberāre posse.
3. Gallī nostrōrum militum impetum sustinēre nōn potuerunt.

4. Graecī quīdam, Tarquiniō rēgnante, in Ītaliā vĕnērunt.
5. Labiēnus, monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectābat.
6. Mūnītis castrīs, Caesar legiōnēs in castra redūxit.
7. Hōc oppidum, paucīs dēfendentibus, expūgnāre nōn potuit.
8. Liscus dīcit sē quam diū potuerit tacuisse.
9. Hominēs liberī servitūtem ferre nōn possunt.
10. Hominēs liberī servitūtem nunquam ferent.
11. In exercitū Caesaris erant multī quī arma in Ītaliā tulerant.
12. Hīc homō arma nunquam feret.
13. Quis hanc lēgem tulit? Ā patre meō haec lēx ūtilis lāta est.
14. Multae lēgēs optimae ā cīvibus Rōmānīs lātae sunt.
15. Lēgēs optimae ā vōbīs ferantur.
16. Audiō tē Rōmae fuisse. Rōmae et Pompēiīs fuimus.
17. Dicunt multās lucernās Rōmānās Pompēiīs repertās esse.
18. Cicerō nārrat Antiochum candēlabrum ē gemmīs aurō-que perfectum in Ītaliā attulisse.

**432.** *Translate into Latin.*

1. The temple of Diana is said to have been built in Rome in the reign of Servius.<sup>1</sup>
2. After many had been wounded, Ariovistus led back his forces into camp.
3. My brothers are already able to read the works of Caesar.
4. You will soon be able to read the poems of Vergil.



*Roman candelabrum  
or candlestick.*

<sup>1</sup> In Latin, how do you say in the reign of Servius? See 429 and 431, 4.

5. It will be delightful to be able to read the poems of Vergil.
6. Our commander, having taken possession of the hill,<sup>1</sup> made an attack upon the enemy.
7. Our soldiers, having made an attack upon the enemy,<sup>1</sup> fought bravely.
8. This man is not able to bear arms.
9. Has he never borne arms? He says that he has never borne arms, and that he has never been able to bear arms.
10. The Gauls, having fortified the town, awaited the approach of our army.
11. Caesar, having heard the words of the ambassador, led back his army into camp.

## LESSON CVIII.

*THE IRREGULAR VERBS VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, AND MĀLŌ.—A  
DIALOGUE.*

**433.** Learn in full the Paradigms of the irregular verbs **Volō**, **Nōlō**, and **Mālō**, 484.

**434.** VOCABULARY.

dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum,	to doubt, hesitate.
mālō, malle, māluī,	to choose rather, prefer.
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī,	not to wish, to be unwilling.
rēctē, <i>adv.</i>	rightly, well.
volō, velle, voluī,	to wish, desire, like.

**435.** *Translate into English.*

1. Num bellī fortūnam tentāre vultis? Patriam dēfendere volumus.
2. Nōlīte dubitāre libertātem dēfendere.

---

<sup>1</sup> Remember that English *words* are not always to be rendered by corresponding Latin *words*. Consider by what Latin construction the *thought* may be best expressed. Here the *Ablative Absolute* should be used,

3. Multī hominēs volunt quidem rēctē facere, sed nōn rēctē faciunt.
4. Gallī eō tempore bellī fortūnam tentāre nōlēbant.
5. Sōcratēs esse bonus volēbat.
6. Hī cīvēs vidērī bonī volunt, sed Sōcratēs esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat.
7. Caesar montem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluit.
8. Cōnsidius timōre perterritus dīcit montem, quem Caesar ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī.

## 436. COLLOQUIUM.

QUINTUS ET SEXTUS.

Quīntus.—Quid tibi vīs?

Sextus.—Tēcum ambulāre velim.<sup>1</sup>

Q.—Ego hodiē māne ambulāre nōlō; domī manēre mālō.

S.—Cūr māvīs?

Q.—Ego et frāter vesperī cum patre ambulāre mālumus.

S.—Cūr mēcum per silvās vagārī nōn vultis?

Q.—Quod vesperī amoenitāte fruī mālumus quam sōlis ārdōre.

S.—At iam saepe mēcum ambulāre nōluistī.

Q.—Nōn rēctē dīcis; nōn est causa, cūr tēcum ambulāre nōlim.<sup>1</sup> At cum hortus avī satis amplus sit<sup>2</sup> et lacum silvam-que contineat,<sup>2</sup> ibī mālumus lūdere; sī vīs, nōbīscum venī.

S.—Cūr nōlim? Vōbīscum lūdere mālō quam sōlus vagārī.

Q.—Vesperī igitur venī.

S.—Veniam.

437. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Boys, what would you like to do? We should like to play ball.
2. Henry, would you like to take a walk with me through

<sup>1</sup> Notice the force of the *Subjunctive*: *velim*, 'I should like'; *cūr nōlim*, 'why I should be unwilling.'

<sup>2</sup> Render by the English Indicative. The *Subjunctive* is often so rendered.

- the woods? I should like to take a walk with you, but I ought to write to my father.
3. Charles says that he would like to take a walk with you.
  4. Do not the boys wish to speak Latin? They say that it is difficult to speak Latin.
  5. We all wish to know Latin. We should like to read the poems of Vergil.
  6. I should like to know Greek also, for I should like to read the poems of Homer.
  7. All soldiers wish to seem brave, but Frederick chooses to be brave rather than to seem brave.
  8. Would you, Albert, like to take a walk with us this morning? I should like to take a walk with you, but I prefer to walk in the evening.
  9. The consul was unwilling to try the fortune of war.
  10. He said that he was unwilling to try the fortune of war.

## LESSON CIX.

*THE IRREGULAR VERBS FĪŌ AND EŌ.—ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT.—PLACE FROM WHICH.*

**438.** Learn the Paradigms in full of the irregular verbs **FĪŌ** and **EŌ**, 485, 486.

**439.** Examine the following sentences :

1. Caesar **ad flūmen** exercitum *Caesar led his army TO THE RIVER.*  
dūxit.
2. **In Asiam** redit. *He returns INTO ASIA.*
3. Caesar **Rŏmam** redit. *Caesar returns TO ROME.*
4. Platŏ **Tarentum** vēnit. *Plato came TO TARENTUM.*

In these sentences observe—

1) That **ad flūmen**, **in Asiam**, **Rŏmam**, and **Tarentum** all designate the place in which the motion ends, the PLACE TO WHICH.

2) That in the first and second examples the ACCUSATIVE with **ad** or **in** is used. This is the general construction.

3) That in the third and fourth examples the ACCUSATIVE is used without any preposition, and that the places are NAMES OF TOWNS.

Hence we have the following rule :

**RULE X.—Accusative of Limit.**

The PLACE TO WHICH is designated by the Accusative :

- I. Generally with a preposition—**ad** or **in**.
- II. In names of towns without a preposition.

440. Examine the following sentences :

1. **Ab urbe** proficiscitur. *He sets out* FROM THE CITY.
2. **Ex Asiā** vēnit. *He came* FROM ASIA.
3. Platō **Athēnīs** vēnit. *Plato came* FROM ATHENS.
4. **Brundisiō** profecti sumus. *We set out* FROM BRUNDISIUM.

In these sentences observe—

- 1) That **ab urbe**, **ex Asiā**, **Athēnīs**, and **Brundisiō** all designate the PLACE FROM WHICH.
- 2) That in the first and second examples the ABLATIVE with a preposition is used. This is the general construction.
- 3) That in the third and fourth examples the ABLATIVE is used without any preposition, and that the places are NAMES OF TOWNS.

Hence we have the following rule :

**RULE XXI.—Place from which.**

The PLACE FROM WHICH is designated by the Ablative :

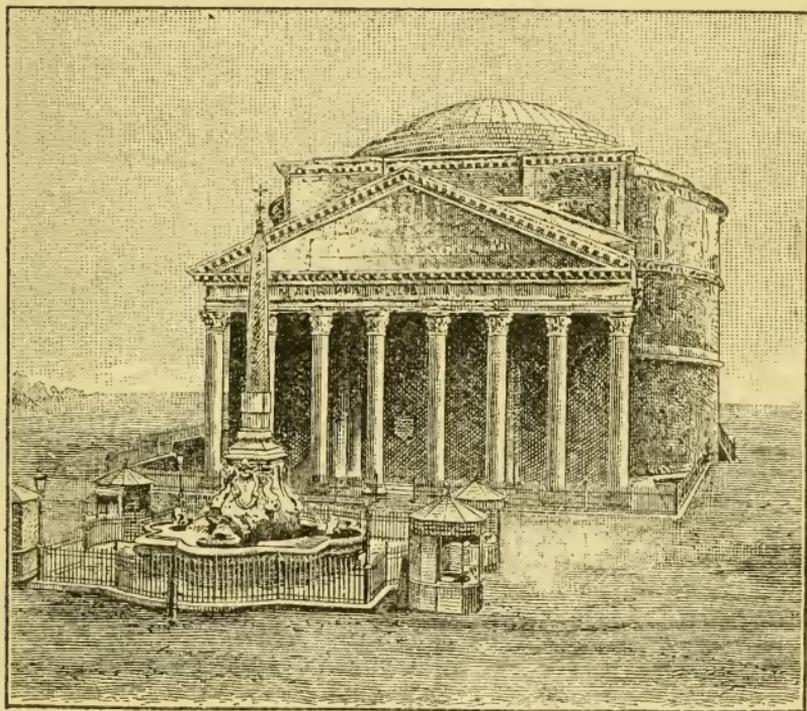
- I. Generally *with a preposition*—**ā**, **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**.
- II. In NAMES OF TOWNS *without a preposition*.

441. VOCABULARY.

eō, ire, ivi or ii, itum,	to go.	
red-eō, ire, ivi or ii, itum,	to go back, return.	
fīō, fieri, factus sum (pass. of faciō),	to be made, be done, happen.	<i>fact.</i>
Capua, ae, f.	Capua, a city of Italy.	
dē-dicō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to dedicate, consecrate.	<i>dedicate.</i>
fēlīciter, adv.	successfully, prosperously.	<i>felici-ty.</i>
fēlīciter nāvīgō, āre, āvi, ātum,	to have a prosperous voyage.	
Flōrentia, ae, f.	Florence, a city of Italy.	
Pantheum, i, n.	Pantheon, a temple at Rome dedicated to all the gods.	
proficiscor, i, fectus sum,	to start, set out, march.	

442. *Translate into English.*

1. Rōmā epistulās hodiē māne accēpī.
2. Ubī sunt amīcī nostrī? Rōmae sunt.
3. Ab Americā ad Eurōpam fēliciter nāvīgāvērunt.
4. Iter per Eurōpam fēcērunt et multās urbēs vīdērunt.  
Nūper Rōmam ivērunt.
5. Quid Rōmae vīdērunt? Scribunt dē forō et templis et statuīs.



*The Pantheon.*<sup>1</sup>

6. Quid dē Pantheō scribunt? Scribunt Pantheum esse templum pulcherrimum. Dicunt Rōmānōs antiquis temporibus hōc templum deīs omnibus dēdicāvisse.
7. Nōn-ne Athēnās ibunt? Mēse Decembrī Athēnās ibunt.

<sup>1</sup> Built by Agrippa in the time of Augustus.

8. Bostoniam crās ībō? Velīs-ne mēcum īre? Bostoniam tēcum īre velim. Ībis-ne? Ībō.
9. Temporibus Periclis multī sapientēs Athēnās ībant.
10. Saepe lēgimus virōs doctōs Athēnīs temporibus Augustī Rōmam vēnisse.
11. Hannibal exercitum in hīberna Capuam<sup>1</sup> mīsīt.
12. Caesar māgnum exercitum in Galliam dūxit.
13. Id quod vultis, puerī, fierī nōn potest.
14. Nōlīte id velle quod fierī nōn potest.
15. Haec omnia contrā lēgem facta sunt.
16. Fit equestre proelium; hostēs fugae sē mandant; fit māgna caedēs.

#### 443. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We shall start for the mountains<sup>2</sup> to-morrow.
2. Our friend Marcus sailed for Europe<sup>2</sup> yesterday.
3. From what city did he sail? He sailed from Boston.
4. Will he go into Italy? He wishes to go to Florence and Rome.
5. Your friend the senator is now in Rome; he has lately come from Florence.
6. The senator will remain in Rome three months. From Rome he will go to Athens.
7. I hear that your friends have returned from Europe. Did they have a prosperous voyage? They say that they had a very prosperous voyage from Europe to America.
8. We often wish that which can not be done.
9. That which I now wish has often been done.
10. Nothing ought to be done contrary to law.
11. Caesar started with five legions from Italy for Gaul.

<sup>1</sup> Notice the difference here between the Latin idiom and the English. LATIN IDIOM, *into winter-quarters to Capua* or *to Capua into winter-quarters*; ENGLISH IDIOM, *into winter-quarters at Capua*.

<sup>2</sup> Observe that after verbs implying motion the English word *for* is often used to denote the end of the motion, or the PLACE IN WHICH, and may accordingly be rendered into Latin by *ad*.

## LATIN SELECTIONS.

QUEEN ELIZABETH AND SIR WALTER RALEIGH.<sup>1</sup>

**444.** Elisabētha, rēgīna Britannōrum, semper gerēbat vestēs splendidās et pretiōsās. Forte cum māgnā catervā comitum ambulābat per vīcōs urbis. Subitō videt ante pedēs multum lutum. Rēgīna stat incerta,<sup>2</sup> quod timet lūbricam viam. At iuvenis exsilit ex turbā; umerīs<sup>3</sup> dētrahit novum pallium et vestīmentō<sup>4</sup> tegit locum; tum iterum recurrit ad sociōs. Rēgīna laeta super pallium ambulat nec maculat pedem. Statim grāta<sup>5</sup> adscribit iuvenem in numerum<sup>6</sup> amīcōrum.

## TOO CLEVER BY HALF.

**445.** Rōsciū, praeclārus iūris cōnsultus,<sup>7</sup> pūblicōs lūdōs quondam spectābat. Subitō vir rūsticus occurrit. “Da<sup>8</sup> mihi,” inquit,<sup>9</sup> “respōnsū, praeclāre Rōsci;<sup>10</sup> canis dīvitis vīcīnī meum agrum intrāvit, necāvit-que trēs pullōs. Quantam tū multam dominō canis<sup>11</sup> impōnis?” “Quattuor assēs,”<sup>12</sup> respondit Rōsciū. “Da mihi igitur assēs,” vir in-

1. **Sir Walter Raleigh** was a man of great versatility of talent. He won the favor of the queen, according to tradition, by the act of gallantry here described.

2. **Incerta** is a Predicate Adjective agreeing with *rēgīna*.

3. **Umerīs dētrahit**: *he takes from his shoulders*. By a difference of idiom the Latin here employs the Indirect Object.

4. **Vestīmentō** is Ablative of Means; see 114.

5. **Grāta** agrees with the omitted subject of *adscribit*.

6. **In numerum**, literally, *into the number*; render, *in the number*.

7. **Iūris cōnsultus** — **cōnsultus**, a *counselor*; **iūris**, of *law* — like our terms, *counselor-at-law*, or *attorney-at-law*.

8. **Da**; notice that the verb *dō* has a short vowel in the stem.

9. **Inquit**, like our expression “*says he*,” or “*said he*,” is preceded in the sentence by one or more words. *Inquit* is a defective verb.

10. **Rōsci**; notice the contracted form; see 90, 2.

11. **Canis** is in the Genitive Case.

12. **Assēs** is the Accusative, the object of *impōnō* to be supplied. See illustration, page 185.

quit, "tuus enim canis erat reus." "Rēs aequa est," iterum respondit Rōscius, "et libenter tibi quattuor assēs dabō. At tū<sup>1</sup> primum numerā mihi quinque assēs, nunquam enim iūris cōsultī sine mercēde dant respōnsa."

### SPARTAN BREVITY.

**446.** Samiī Spartam<sup>2</sup> vērunt, ut opem ā Lacedaemoniīs peterent.<sup>3</sup> Intrōductī<sup>4</sup> ad magistrātūs, sollicitīs animīs<sup>5</sup> multa verba faciēbant. Illī autem, primō<sup>6</sup> cōstitūtō conciliō,<sup>7</sup> Samiīs respondērunt sē<sup>8</sup> ea, quae prima<sup>9</sup> dīxissent,<sup>10</sup> oblītōs esse;<sup>11</sup> ea, quae secūta essent, nōn intellegere.<sup>8</sup> Posthāc iterum admissī Samiī, dum saccum offerunt, nihil aliud dīcunt nisi haec verba "Saccus farīnā indiget."<sup>12</sup> Quibus<sup>13</sup> Spartānī respondērunt eōs vocābulum "saccus"<sup>14</sup> omittēre potuisse. Nec tamen Samiīs auxilium praestāre nōluērunt, sed māgnū apparātū nāvalem mittere dēcrēvērunt.<sup>15</sup>

1. **Tū**; why is this pronoun expressed here? See 259, 2.

2. **Spartam**; notice the Accusative Case without a preposition; see 439.

3. **Peterent** is Subjunctive of Purpose; see 406.

4. **Intrōductī** agrees with the omitted subject of *faciēbant*.

5. **Sollicitīs animīs** is Ablative of Cause; see 503.

6. **Primō** is an adverb.

7. **Constitūtō conciliō** is Ablative Absolute; see 429.

8. **Sē . . . intellegere** is Indirect Discourse; see 424. **Sē** is the Subject and **ea** is the Object of *oblītōs esse*. **Sē** is also the Subject of *intellegere*.

9. **Prīma** is an Adjective, and agrees with *quae*. Translate by an adverb.

10. **Dīxissent**; the dependent verb in indirect discourse is put in the Subjunctive; see 424.

11. **Oblītōs esse** is from *oblīvīscor*. The principal verb in indirect discourse is here put in the Infinitive; see 424.

12. "**Saccus . . . indiget**" is direct discourse, in apposition with *haec verba*. *Farīnā* is Ablative Case with *indiget*. Verbs meaning to need, be without, take the Ablative.

13. **Quibus**, referring to *Samiī*, is Indirect Object of *respondērunt*; see 59.

14. **Saccus** is here quoted merely as a word without reference to its meaning, and is therefore indeclinable; here it is in the Accusative Case, in apposition with *vocābulum*.

15. **Dēcrēvērunt** is the Perfect Indicative of *dēcernō*.

## WITTICISM OF CICERO.

447. Cicerō cum Dolabellam, generum suum, exiguā statūrā<sup>1</sup> hominem, longō gladiō<sup>2</sup> accinctum vidēret :<sup>3</sup> “ Quis generum meum,” inquit, “ ad gladium alligāvit ? ”

SCIPIO NASICA<sup>4</sup> AND THE POET ENNIUS.<sup>5</sup>

448. Nāsīca, cum ad poētam Ennium vēnisset<sup>6</sup> eīque<sup>7</sup> ab ōstiō quaerenti<sup>8</sup> Ennium ancilla dīxisset<sup>9</sup> domī nōn esse,<sup>10</sup> sēnsit illam<sup>11</sup> dominī iussū<sup>12</sup> dīxisse et illum<sup>13</sup> intus esse. Paucīs post diēbus<sup>14</sup> cum ad Nāsīcam vēnisset<sup>15</sup> Ennius et eum ā iānuā quaereret, exclāmat Nāsīca, sē<sup>16</sup> domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius, “ Quid ?<sup>17</sup> ego nōn cōgnōscō,” inquit, “ vōcem tuam ? ” Hīc<sup>18</sup> Nāsīca, “ Homō<sup>19</sup> es impudēns. Ego cum tē quaererem, ancillae<sup>20</sup> tuae crēdidī tē domī nōn esse, tū mihi nōn crēdis ipsī ? ”<sup>21</sup>

1. **Exiguā statūrā** is Ablative of Characteristic, describing *hominem*; see 505, II.

2. **Gladiō** is Ablative of Means with *accinctum*; see 114, 2.

3. **Vidēret** is Subjunctive with *cum*; see 525.

4. **Scipio Nasica** belonged to one of the most distinguished families in ancient Rome. The name had already been made illustrious by Scipio Africanus, the Elder, who conquered Hannibal.

5. **Ennius** was an intimate friend of Scipio. He was regarded as the father of Latin poetry.

6. **Vēnisset**; see note 3 above.

7. **Eī** refers to *Nāsīca*, and is the Indirect Object of *dīxisset*.

8. **Quaerenti** agrees with *eī*.

9. **Dīxisset** is Subjunctive with *cum*.

10. **Domī nōn esse** is in Indirect Discourse.

11. **Illam** refers to *ancilla*.

12. **Iussū** is Ablative of Cause, *in accordance with the order*; see 503.

13. **Illum**; to whom does *illum* refer ?

14. **Paucīs post diēbus**. *Diēbus* is the Ablative, denoting the Measure of Difference; see 509. *Post* is here an adverb. Literally, *afterward, by a few days*; render, *after a few days*.

15. **Vēnisset**; see note 6.

16. **Sē**. Observe that this is the Reflexive Pronoun, and that it refers to the Subject of the principal verb.

17. **Quid** is adverbial Accusative.

18. **Hīc** is here an adverb; render, *hereupon*.

19. **Homō** is Predicate Nominative.

20. **Ancillae** is Indirect Object of *crēdidī*.

21. **Ipsī** agrees with *mihi*, and is made more emphatic by its position.

## THE GUARDS OUTWITTED.

**449.** Henricus, rēx Britannōrum, quī cum cīvibus turbulentis bellum gerēbat, filium suum equitātū praefēcerat. Hīc tamen, iuvenis ācer, quod<sup>1</sup> equitibus hostium effūsīs audācius<sup>2</sup> īnstiterat,<sup>3</sup> tandem captus est ab hostibus. Vīctōrēs autem quī captīvō<sup>4</sup> volēbant indulgēre, eum sinēbant cottidiē cum paucīs cūstōdibus in equō vehī.<sup>5</sup> Aliquandō cūstōdēs iussū<sup>6</sup> prīncipis inter sē cursū equōrum<sup>7</sup> contendēbant. Tandem postquam equī omnium cursū et labōre cōnfectī sunt, prīnceps, quī ā certāmine dē industriā abstinēbat, exclāmāvit, “Ēn vōbīs novum certāmen prōpōnō.” Cum hīs verbīs equum integrum incitāvit, celeriterque ē cōnspectū hostium fessōrum ad amīcōs vēctus est.

## AUGUSTUS CAESAR.

**450.** Post Actiacam vīctōriam<sup>8</sup> Caesarī Octāviānō<sup>8</sup> triumphanti occurrit inter grātulantēs<sup>9</sup> quīdam corvum tenēs, quem īstituerat, ut dīceret:<sup>10</sup> “Avē Caesar vīctor imperātor!” Mirātus Caesar avem māgnō pretiō<sup>11</sup> ēmit. Idem mirātus in pīcā hanc quoque ēmit. Haec exempla sūtōrem pauperem commōvērunt, ut corvum īstitueret

1. **Quod** is here a conjunction, meaning *because*.

2. **Audācius** is the comparative of *audācter*; render, *too boldly*.

3. **Īnstiterat** is from *īnsistō*.

4. **Captīvō** is Indirect Object of *indulgēre*; see 59 and 307.

5. **In equō vehī**, literally, *to be carried on a horse*; render, *ride*.

6. **Iussū** is Ablative of Cause; see 503.

7. **Cursū equōrum**. *Cursū* is Ablative of Means; render, *in racing*.

8. **Octavianus**, in the year 31 B. C., gained a complete victory over Antonius and Cleopatra at the battle of Actium, which made him master of the Roman world. In the year 27 B. C.

he received the title of Augustus, by which he is commonly known in history. The name of Augustus was originally Gaius Octavius, but on his adoption into the Julian family by his illustrious uncle, Julius Caesar, the name Octavius, in accordance with Roman usage, was changed to Octavianus, and Gaius Octavius became Gaius Octavianus Caesar, subsequently Gaius Octavianus Caesar Augustus.

9. **Grātulantēs** is a present participle, used substantively, just as adjectives are sometimes used.

10. **Ut dīceret**, *to say*. Subjunctive of Purpose; see 406.

11. **Māgnō pretiō** is Ablative of Price; see 508.

ad parem salūtātiōnem.<sup>1</sup> Saepe autem fatigātus labōre ad avem dīcere sōlēbat: “Oleum et operam perdidī.” Aliquandō tamen corvus salūtātiōnem dīcere coepit. Tum Octāviānō obtulit avem. Quī cum<sup>2</sup> audīvisset corvī salūtātiōnem: “Iam satis,” inquit, “salūtātōrum<sup>3</sup> tālium habeō.” Tum corvus subitō addidit: “Oleum et operam perdidī!” Rīsīt Caesar ēmitque avem.

### KING JAMES OF SCOTLAND IN DISGUISE.

451. Iacōbus, rēx Scotōrum, vir glōriæ<sup>4</sup> militāris avidus, saepe sine ūllō comite errābat, veste<sup>5</sup> suae fortūnae<sup>6</sup> dissimilī indūtus. Ōlim dum per quandam silvam iter facit, dē imprōvisō<sup>7</sup> ā tribus latrōnibus oppressus, in māximum capitis perīculum<sup>8</sup> adductus est. At rūsticus quīdam, quī clangōre armōrum audītō<sup>9</sup> occurrerat, secūrī<sup>10</sup> armātus, rēgī<sup>11</sup> vulneribus et labōre paene cōfectō<sup>12</sup> auxilium attulit, fugāvitque latrōnēs. Tum ubī rūsticus prō tantō beneficiō praemium accipere nōluit; rēx “Saltem,” inquit, “redī<sup>13</sup> mēcum<sup>14</sup> ad urbem, quā<sup>15</sup> tē accipiam dīgnō hospitiō,<sup>16</sup> quod<sup>17</sup> ipse<sup>18</sup> apud rēgem habitō.”

1. **Ut . . . salūtātiōnem** is a clause denoting Result; see 521.

2. **Quī cum**; notice the difference between the Latin and the English idiom: Latin idiom, *who when*; English idiom, *when he*.

3. **Salūtātōrum** is a Partitive Genitive depending upon *satis*.

4. **Glōriæ** is a Genitive depending upon *avidus*; see 500.

5. **Veste** is Ablative of Means; see 114.

6. **Fortūnae** is Dative depending upon *dissimilī*; see 498.

7. **Dē imprōvisō**; the adjective *imprōvisus*, used substantively, forms with the preposition *dē* an adverbial expression, meaning *on a sudden, unexpectedly*.

8. **Capitis perīculum**, literally, *peril of his head*; render, *peril of his life*.

9. **Clangōre audītō** is Ablative Absolute; see 429.

10. **Secūrī** is Ablative of Means; see 114.

11. **Rēgī** is Indirect Object of *attulit*.

12. **Cōfectō** agrees with *rēgī*.

13. **Redī** is from *redēō*.

14. **Mēcum**; see 265, note.

15. **Quā** is an adverb of place.

16. **Hospitiō** is Ablative of Manner; see 279.

17. **Quod** is a conjunction.

18. **Ipse**; the demonstrative *ipse*, meaning *self*, emphasizes the subject of the verb *habitō*: *I myself dwell*.

## WHICH IS THE KING?

452. Rūsticus, quī rēgem vidēre valdē cupiēbat, laetus<sup>1</sup> cum hospite ignōtō ad rēgiam iter fēcit. Post cēnam, rēx “Sī vīs,”<sup>2</sup> inquit, “mēcum in alteram partem aedium<sup>3</sup> ire, et rēgem et nōbilēs complūrēs tibi ostendam.” “Māximē,” respondit rūsticus, “sed quōmodo rēgem cōgnōscere poterō.” “Facile,” respondit ille, “nam cēterī sunt capite nūdātō,<sup>4</sup> rēx autem sōlus capite opertō manet.” Inde splendidum ineunt ātrium, ubī adstant virī complūrēs, ostrō insīgnēs et aurō. Frūstrā rūsticus oculīs rēgem per tōtum coetum exquirit. Tandem ad comitem versus;<sup>5</sup> “Ex nōbīs,”<sup>6</sup> inquit, “alter rēx necessāriō est, nam sōlī ex tantō coetū capite sumus opertō.”

## ANDROCLUS AND THE LION IN THE ARENA.

453. Populō Rōmānō quondam ā Caesare amplissimum spectāculum dabātur. Multae enim ferae ex omnibus terrīs aderant, praeterque cēterās leō terribilī fremitū oculōs omnium in sē convertit. Intrōdūcēbātur ad pūgnam bēstiārum servus virī nōbilis. Eī servō<sup>7</sup> Androclus nōmen fuit. Hunc<sup>8</sup> ille leō ubī vīdit procul,<sup>8</sup> repentē quasi admīrāns rēstitit, deinde sēnsim atque placidē accessit. Tum caudam mōre<sup>9</sup> adūlantium canum movet et manūs hominis prope iam exanimātī<sup>10</sup> metū linguā<sup>11</sup> lēniter dēmulcet. Androclus

1. **Laetus**; translate *gladly*. The Latin idiom very often demands an adjective where the English idiom requires an adverb.

2. **Vīs** is from *volō*.

3. **Aedium**, of the house or palace. *Aedēs* in the singular means temple.

4. **Capite nūdātō** is Ablative of Characteristic; see 505, II.

5. **Versus**, *turning*; literally, *having turned*.

6. **Ex nōbīs**, literally, *out of us*; render, *of us*.

7. **Eī servō** is Dative of Possessor; see 202.

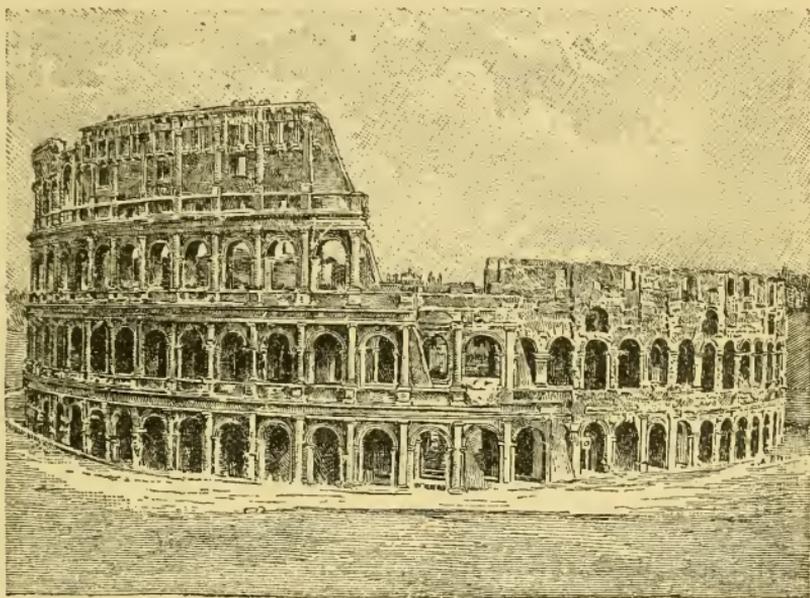
8. **Hunc . . . procul**; notice the difference between this order and the order of the English translation. The English order would be, *ubī ille leō vīdit hunc procul*.

9. **Mōre**, *after the manner*.

10. **Exanimātī** agrees with *hominis*.

11. **Metū** is Ablative of Means; connect with *exanimātī*. **Linguā** is Ablative of Means; connect with *dēmulcet*.

inter haec tam atrōcis bēstiae blandīmenta amissum animum recuperat et paulātīm oculōs ad leōnem convertit. Tum, quasi inter sē<sup>1</sup> cōgnōscerent,<sup>2</sup> laetī adstitērunt et homō et leō. Quā rē tam admirābilī<sup>3</sup> mākīmī<sup>4</sup> populī clāmōrēs cum excitātī essent, arcēssītus ā Caesare Androclus rem mīram nārrat.



*The Flavian amphitheatre or the Colosseum.\**

### THE STORY OF ANDROCLUS.

454. “Cum prōvinciam,” inquit, “Āfricam dominus meus obtinēret, ego ibī inīquīs ēius verberibus<sup>5</sup> ad fugam

1. **Inter sē**, literally means *between themselves*; render, *one another*.

2. **Cōgnōscerent** is Subjunctive after *quasi*; see 523.

3. **Quā . . . admirābilī**; *on*

*account of so remarkable an affair.*  
*Rē* is Ablative of Cause.

4. **Mākīmī** agrees with *clāmōrēs*.

5. **Verberibus** is Ablative of Means.

---

\* Begun by the Emperor Vespasian and finished by Titus. At the opening of the Colosseum five thousand wild beasts are said to have been slain in the arena.

sum coactus<sup>1</sup> et in arēnārum sōlitūdinēs mē contulī.<sup>2</sup> Ibī specum quendam nactus sum.<sup>3</sup> Neque multō post ad eundem specum vēnit hīc leō cruentō pede<sup>4</sup> gemitūs ēdēns. Prīmō cōspectū eius vehementer territū sum. Postquam vērō leō mē vidit, accessit ac sublātum<sup>5</sup> pedem mihi opem petēns porrēxit. Ibī cum spīnam māgnam in vestigiō pedis eius haerentem revellissem, ille tunc meā operā levātus recubuit et quievit. Atque ex eō diē triennium<sup>6</sup> tōtum ego et leō in eōdem specū eōdemque victū vīximus. Nam eārum, quās vēnābātur, ferārum membra pinguissima ad specum mihi congerēbat, quae ego sōle meridiānō tosta<sup>7</sup> edēbam.<sup>8</sup> Sed cum aliquandō specum reliquissem, ā militibus vīsus comprehēsusque sum<sup>9</sup> et ex Āfricā hūc ad dominum dēductus. Is mē statim ad bēstiās dedit. Iam vidēs, quōmodo hīc leō mihi prō beneficiō et medicīnā grātiā rettulerit.”<sup>10</sup> Haec dixit Androclus. Tum vērō māgnō cum populī gaudiō dīmissus et poenā<sup>11</sup> solūtus est, leōque eī dōnātus est. Postea Androclus et leō lōrō tenuī revinctus per multōs annōs in urbe ambulābant.

#### SCIPIO AFRICANUS IMPEACHED: HIS ANSWER.

455. Mārcus Naevius tribūnus plēbis accūsāvit Scīpiōnem ad populum, dīxitque eum accēpisse ā rēge Antiochō pecūniā, ut condiciōnibus<sup>12</sup> mollibus pāx cum eō<sup>13</sup> populī

1. **Sum coactus** is the Perfect Passive of *cōgō*.

2. **Contulī** is from *cōn-ferō*.

3. **Nactus sum** is from *nancī-scor*.

4. **Pede** is Ablative of Cause; see 503. Connect with *ēdēns*.

5. **Sublātum** is used as the perfect passive of *tollō*.

6. **Triennium** is Accusative denoting Duration of Time; see 494.

7. **Tosta** is the perfect passive of *torrēō*.

8. **Edēbam**; notice the difference between *edō* and *ēdō*.

9. **Sum** belongs to *vīsus* as well as to *comprehēsus*.

10. **Grātiā rettulerit** means *to make return, to repay*. **Rettulerit** is Subjunctive in Indirect Question; see 411.

11. **Poenā** is Ablative of Separation; see 300.

12. **Condiciōnibus** is Ablative of Means; see 114.

13. **Eō** refers to Scipio.

Rōmānī nōmine<sup>1</sup> fieret, et quaedam item alia indīgna tālī virō<sup>2</sup> addidit. Tum Scīpiō pauca praefātus, quae<sup>3</sup> dīgnitās vītae suae atque glōria postulābat, “Memoriā,”<sup>4</sup> inquit, “Quirītēs, repetō, diem esse hodiernum, quō Hannibalem Poenum, imperiō vestrō inimicissimum, māgnō proeliō in Āfricā vicī, pācemque et vīctōriam vōbīs peperī<sup>5</sup> praeclāram.<sup>6</sup> Nōn igitur sīmus<sup>7</sup> adversum deōs ingrātī, relinquāmus hunc nebulōnem, eāmus hinc prōtinus Iovī optimō māximō grātulātum.”<sup>8</sup> Id cum dīxisset, āvertit et ire ad Capitōlium coepit. Tum cōntiō ūniversa, quae ad sententiam dē Scīpiōne ferendam<sup>9</sup> convēnerat, relīctō tribūnō Scīpiōnem in Capitōlium comitāta, atque inde ad aedēs<sup>10</sup> eius cum laetitiā et grātulātiōne sollemnī prōsecūta est.

#### THE ERUPTION OF MOUNT VESUVIUS IN THE YEAR 79.

456. In Ītaliā Vesuvius mōns est; postquam diū quiēvit, subitō ignem et lapidēs et pulverem et cinerem ēvomit. Tunc regiō tōta tremit, fūmus tōtum montem occulit; flammae interdiū cernuntur. Annō post Chrīstum nātum<sup>11</sup> LXXIX tōta Campānia terrae mōtū vehementissimō concussa est,<sup>12</sup> simulque Vesuviī ēruptiōne loca illa vāstāta sunt. Cōgnōvimus autem hanc ēruptiōnem ex Pliniī epistulis, quī ipse vīdit. Tōta regiō tenebrīs dēnsīs occulta, longē lātēque cineribus et lapidibus cōnstrāta fuit; mōns tremuit, flammās et ignium rīvōs ēvomuit; trēs urbēs flōrentissimae, Pompēiī et Herculāneum et Stabiae, obrutae dēlētāeque

1. **Nōmine** is Ablative of Cause; see 503.

2. **Tālī virō** is Ablative after *indīgna*; see 507.

3. **Quae** is Accusative.

4. **Memoriā** is Ablative of Means.

5. **Peperī** is from *pariō*.

6. **Praeclāram**; note the position.

7. **Sīmus** is Subjunctive of *Desire*; see 401.

8. **Grātulātum** is the Supine in *um*, used after verbs of motion to express Purpose; see 533.

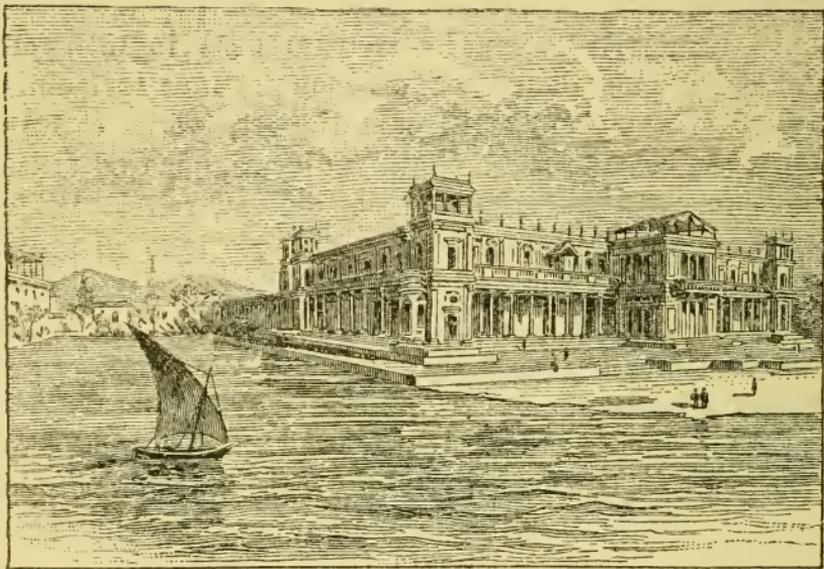
9. **Ferendam**, literally, *for judgment to be rendered*; translate, *to render judgment*.

10. **Aedēs**; see 452, note 3.

11. **Post . . . nātum**, literally, *after Christ born*; render, *after the birth of Christ*.

12. **Concussa est** is from *concutiō*.

sunt. In Pliniī<sup>1</sup> epistulā scriptūm est hīs ferē verbīs: “Ē Vesuviō monte plūribus in locīs altae flammae relūcēbant, quōrum fulgor tenebrīs noctis excitābātur. Crēbrīs vās-tisque tremōribus tēctā nūtābant et quasi ēmovērī sēdibus suīs vidēbantur.”



*Pliny's villa at Laurentum.*

#### LETTER OF CICERO TO HIS WIFE TERENTIA.

457. Sī valēs, bene est, ego valeō.<sup>2</sup> Valētūdinem tuam velim<sup>3</sup> cūrēs<sup>4</sup> dīligentissimē; nam mihi et scriptum et

1. **Pliniī.** The younger Pliny, who gives us the account of the remarkable eruption of Mount Vesuvius, belonged by rank and fortune to the highest Roman society, and was a frequent guest at the palace. He possessed great wealth, and had numerous country houses in different parts of Italy. Our illustration represents his famous villa at Laurentum, on the sea-coast, of which he has left us a minute description. “It contained every appliance for comfort, but nothing for luxury. He describes the ju-

icious arrangement of rooms, looking out upon the sea or the mountains, where sunshine is found in the autumn, coolness in the summer, and at all times calm and peace.”

2. **Sī . . . valeō;** this is a formula often used in beginning letters.

3. **Velim** is Potential Subjunctive; see 519. A polite way of expressing a wish, corresponding to the English idiom, *I should wish, I hope.*

4. **Cūrēs** is Subjunctive of Purpose, without *ut*.

nūntiātum est tē in febrim subitō incidisse. Quod celeriter mē fēcistī dē Caesaris litterīs certiōrem,<sup>1</sup> fēcistī mihi grātum.<sup>2</sup> Item posthāc, sī quid<sup>3</sup> opus erit, sī quid acciderit novī,<sup>4</sup> faciēs, ut sciam.<sup>5</sup> Cūrā, ut valeās, Valē.

## LETTER OF BALBUS TO CICERO.

458. Caesar nōbīs litterās perbrevēs mīsīt, quārum exemplum subscripsī. Brevitāte<sup>6</sup> epistulae scire poteris eum valdē esse distentum, quī<sup>7</sup> tantā dē rē tam breviter scripserit.<sup>8</sup> Sī quid praetereā novī fuerit,<sup>9</sup> statim tibi scribam. “Ante diem VII Idūs Mārtiās<sup>10</sup> Brundisium<sup>11</sup> vēnī, ad mūrū castra posuī. Pompēius est Brundisiī:<sup>12</sup> mīsīt ad mē Numerium Magium dē pāce; quae<sup>13</sup> vīsa sunt, respondī. Hōc vōs statim scire voluī; cum in spem vēnerō dē compositionē aliquid mē cōficere,<sup>14</sup> statim vōs certiōrēs faciam.”

## THE BATTLE OF MARATHON, 490 B. C.

459. Darēus, hortantibus amīcīs,<sup>15</sup> ut Graeciam redigeret in suam potestātem, clāssem quīngentārum nāvium comparāvit, eīque<sup>16</sup> Datim praefēcit et Artaphernem; hīsque ducenta peditum, decem mīlia equitum dedit. Hī celeriter Eretriam cēpērunt, omnēsque cīvēs in Asiam ad rēgem

1. **Certiōrem** agrees with *mē*.

2. **Grātum** is here a noun.

3. **Quid** is the Indefinite Pronoun.

4. **Novī** is Partitive Genitive, depending upon *quid*. Literally, *if anything of new*.

5. **Faciēs . . . sciam**, lit., *you will make that I may know*; render *you will let me know*.

6. **Brevitāte** is Ablative of Cause; see 503.

7. **Quī**, equivalent in meaning to the two words **cum is**, *since he*.

8. **Scripserit** is Subjunctive of Cause with *quī*; see 524.

9. **Fuerit** is Future Perfect; may

be rendered by the Future in English.

10. **Ante . . . Mārtiās**, an idiomatic expression meaning on the seventh day before the Ides of March; the 9th of March.

11. **Brundisium**, Accusative of Limit of Motion; see 495.

12. **Brundisiī**, Locative; see 393, II.

13. **Quae**; the Antecedent is the omitted Object of *respondī*.

14. **Mē cōficere** depends upon *in spem vēnerō*.

15. **Hortantibus amīcīs**, Ablative Absolute; see 429.

16. **Eī** refers to *clāssem*.

mīsērunt. Inde ad Atticam accessērunt, ac suās cōpiās in campum Marathōna<sup>1</sup> dēdūxērunt. Is<sup>2</sup> abest ab oppidō circiter mīlia passuum decem. Hōc tumultū Athēniēnsēs tam propīnquō tamque māgnō permōtī auxiliū ā Lacedaemoniīs petīvērunt, Phīdippumque Lacedaemōnem mīsērunt, ut nūntiāret, quam<sup>3</sup> celerī opus esset<sup>4</sup> auxiliō.<sup>5</sup> Domī autem creant decem praetōrēs, quī exercitū praessent,<sup>6</sup> in eīs Miltiadem. Hōc in tempore nūlla civitās Athēniēnsibus auxiliō<sup>7</sup> fuit praeter Plataeēnsēs. Ea mille mīsīt militum. Itaque hōrum adventū decem mīlia armātōrum complēta sunt: quae manus<sup>8</sup> mīrābilī flagrābat pūgnandī cupiditāte. Miltiadis auctōritāte impulsī<sup>9</sup> Athēniēnsēs cōpiās ex urbe ēdūxērunt, locōque<sup>10</sup> idōneō castra fēcērunt. Deinde posterō diē sub montis rādīcibus, aciē instrūctā, proelium commīsērunt. Datis, etsī nōn aequum locum vidēbat suīs,<sup>11</sup> tamen, frētus numerō<sup>12</sup> cōpiārum suārum, cōnfligere cupiēbat. Itaque in aciem peditum centum, equitum decem mīlia prōdūxit, proeliumque commisit. In quō tantō plūs<sup>13</sup> virtūte valuērunt Athē-



Miltiades, the victor at Marathon.

1. **Marathōna** is in Apposition with *campum*; see 51.

2. **Is** refers to *campum*.

3. **Quam** is here an Interrogative Adverb modifying *celerī*.

4. **Esset** is Indirect Question; see 411.

5. **Auxiliō** is Ablative after *opus*. *Opus*, meaning need, takes the Ablative of Separation; see 300.

6. **Quī exercitū praessent** is a Clause of Purpose.

7. **Athēniēnsibus** and *auxiliō* are both in the Dative with *fuit*; *Athēniēnsibus* is the Dative to which,

and *auxiliō* the Dative for which; see 497.

8. **Quae manus**, literally, *which force*; render, *this force*. The Latin often uses the relative where we use the demonstrative.

9. **Impulsī** is from *impellō*.

10. **Locō**, denoting Place, does not require the preposition *in*.

11. **Suīs**, for *his men*, is Dative depending upon *aequum*; see 104.

12. **Numerō** is Ablative depending upon *frētus*, involving the idea of Means.

13. **Tantō plūs**, so much more.

niēnsēs, ut decemplicem numerum hostium prōflīgārint;<sup>1</sup> adeōque perterruērunt, ut Persae nōn castra, sed nāvēs petierint. Quā pūgnā<sup>2</sup> nihil adhūc est nōbilius; nūlla enim umquam tam exigua manus tantās opēs prōstrāvīt.<sup>3</sup>

## GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR.

## CAESAR'S EARLY LIFE.

460. Gāius Iūlius Caesar annum agēns sextum et decimum patrem amīsīt. Cornēliam, Cinnæ filiā, in mātīmōnium dūxit. Mortuō Sullā,<sup>4</sup> Rhodum<sup>5</sup> sēcēdere statuit, ut per ōtium Apollōniō, tunc clārissimō dīcendī magistrō, operam daret. Hūc dum trāicit,<sup>6</sup> ā praedōnibus captus est mānsitque apud eōs prope quadrāgintā diēs. Comitēs interim servōsque ad expediendās pecūniās,<sup>7</sup> quibus redimerētur, dīmīsīt. Vigintī talenta pīrātae postulāverant: ille quīnquāgintā datūrum sē spondit.<sup>8</sup> Quibus numerātīs<sup>9</sup> cum expositus esset in lītore, cōnfestim Milētum properāvit ibique contractā clāsse invēctus<sup>10</sup> in eum locum, in quō ipsī praedōnēs erant, aliquot nāvēs cēpit pīrātāsque<sup>11</sup> in potestātem redāctōs crucī suffixit.

## CAESAR'S PUBLIC CAREER.

461. Caesar aedīlis forum et Capitōlium ōrnāvit portīcibus. Vēnātiōnēs autem lūdōsque ēdidit. Hīs autem rēbus patīmōnium effūdīt tantumque cōnflāvit aes aliēnum,

1. **Prōflīgārint** is a contracted form for *prōflīgāverint*, and is Subjunctive of Result; see 521.

2. **Quā pūgnā** is Ablative after *nōbilius*; see 193.

3. **Prōstrāvīt** from *prō-sternō*.

4. **Mortuō Sullā** is Ablative Absolute denoting time; see 429.

5. **Rhodum**, Accusative of Limit of Motion; see 439.

6. **Dum trāicit**, *dum* meaning

*while*, generally takes the Present Tense.

7. **Ad . . . pecūniās**; *pecūniās* depends upon *ad*; *expediendās* is Gerundive agreeing with *pecūniās*.

8. **Spondit** is from *spondeō*.

9. **Quibus numerātīs**, Ablative Absolute.

10. **Invēctus** is from *in-vehō*.

11. **Pīrātās**, Direct Object of

*sufficit*.

ut ipse diceret,<sup>1</sup> sibi<sup>2</sup> opus esse milies sestertium, ut haberet<sup>3</sup> nihil. Cōsul<sup>4</sup> deinde creātus societātem cum Gnaeō Pompēiō et Mārcō Crassō iūxit.

**462.** Fūctus cōsulātū<sup>5</sup> Caesar Galliam prōvinciam accēpit. Gallōs vīcit; Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, aggressus māximīs affēcit clādibus. Aggressus est Britannōs, ignōtōs antea, superātisque<sup>6</sup> pecūniās et obsidēs imperāvit. Hīc cum<sup>7</sup> multa Rōmānōrum militum īnsignia narrantur, tum<sup>7</sup> illud ēgregium ipsius Caesaris, quod<sup>8</sup> aquiliferum fugientem faucibus comprehēsum<sup>9</sup> in contrāriam partem dētraxit dextramque ad hostem tendēs: “Quōrsum tū,” inquit, “abīs? Illīc sunt,<sup>10</sup> cum quibus dīmicāmus.” Quā adhortātiōne omnium legiōnum trepidātiōnem corrēxit.

**463.** Caesar, cum adhūc in Galliā dētinerētur, postulāvit ut sibi liceret, quamvis absentī, secundum cōsulātum petere; quod eī ā senātū est negātum. Eā rē commōtus, in Italiam rediit plūrimisque urbibus occupātis Brundisium contendit, quō<sup>11</sup> Pompēius cōsulēsque cōfūgerant. Deinde Thessaliam petiit, ubī Pompēium Pharsalicō proeliō fūdīt.

**464.** Bellis cīvilibus cōfectis, Caesar, dictātor in perpetuum creātus, agere insolentius coepit. Cum<sup>12</sup> Antōnius, Caesaris in omnibus expeditiōnibus comēs, et tunc in cōsulātū collēga, eī<sup>13</sup> in sellā aureā sedentī prō rōstris, dia-

1. **Diceret**, Subjunctive of Result; see 521.

2. **Sibi**, Dative of Possessor; see 202.

3. **Haberet**, Subjunctive of Purpose.

4. **Cōsul**, Predicate Nominative after *creātus*; see 63.

5. **Cōsulātū**, Ablative depending upon *Fungor*; see 371.

6. **Superātis** agrees with the Dative of the Pronoun understood which refers to *Britannōs*, and is the Indirect Object of *imperāvit*.

7. **Cum . . . tum**, not only . . . but also.

8. **Quod**, namely, that.

9. **Comprehēsum dētraxit**, literally, he forced him seized; render, he seized and forced.

10. **Sunt**; the Subject is the omitted antecedent of *quibus*.

11. **Quō**, whither or to which.

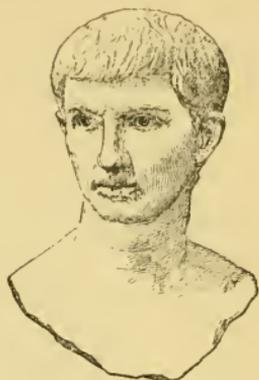
12. **Cum**; connect with *impōneret*.

13. **Ei**, with which *sedentī* agrees, is the Indirect Object of *impōneret*.

dēma, īnsigne rēgium, impōneret, nōn vīsus est eō factō offēnsus. Quārē coniūrātum est<sup>1</sup> in eum ā sexāgintā virīs, Cassiō et Brūtō ducibus<sup>2</sup> cōspīratiōnis. Cum igitur Caesar Īdibus Mārtiis<sup>3</sup> in senātum vēnisset, tribus et vīgintī plāgīs cōnfossus est.

#### CAESAR'S APPEARANCE AND CHARACTER.

465. Fuisse trāditur excelsā statūrā,<sup>4</sup> ōre paulō plēniōre,<sup>5</sup> nigrīs vegetīsque oculīs, capite calvō; quam calvitīī dēfōrmitātem, quod saepe obtrectātōrum iocīs<sup>6</sup> obnoxia erat, aegrē ferēbat. Ideō ex omnibus dēcrētīs<sup>7</sup> sibi ā senātū populōque honōribus nōn alium aut recēpit aut ūsūrpāvit libentius quam iūs laureae perpetuō gestandae.<sup>8</sup> Vīnī<sup>9</sup> parcissimum eum fuisse nē inimicī quidem<sup>10</sup> negāvērunt. Verbum Catōnis est, ūnum ex omnibus<sup>11</sup> Caesarem ad ēvertendam rem pūblicam sōbriūm<sup>12</sup> accessisse.<sup>13</sup> Armōrum et equitandī<sup>14</sup> perītissimus, labōris ūltrā fidem patiēns; in



Marcus Junius Brutus,  
one of the leaders of  
the conspiracy against  
Caesar.

1. **Coniūrātum est**, literally, *it was conspired*; render, *a conspiracy was formed*.

2. **Cassiō et Brūtō ducibus**, Ablative Absolute; see 429.

3. **Īdibus Mārtiis**, the 15th of March.

4. **Excelsā statūrā** and the following ablatives are Ablatives of Characteristic; see 505, II.

5. **Ōre paulō plēniōre**, with *a face somewhat full*.

6. **Iocīs**, Dative depending upon *obnoxia*; see 104.

7. **Dēcrētīs** is a Participle agreeing with *honōribus*.

8. **Laureae gestandae**, literally, *of the laurel to be worn*; ren-

der, *of wearing the laurel*, i. e., the laurel crown.

9. **Vīnī**, Genitive depending upon *parcissimum*; see 500.

10. **Nē . . . quidem** takes the emphatic word or words between the two parts.

11. **Unum ex omnibus**, *alone of all*.

12. **Sōbriūm** agrees with *Caesarem*.

13. **Ad . . . rem pūblicam accessisse**. Consult the vocabulary under *accēdō*.

14. **Equitandī**, Genitive of the Gerund depending upon *perītissimus*; see 500.

āgmīne nōnnunquam equō, saepius pedibus anteibat, capite dētēctō,<sup>1</sup> seu sōl, seu imber erat. Longissimās viās incredibīlī celeritatē cōnfiēbat.

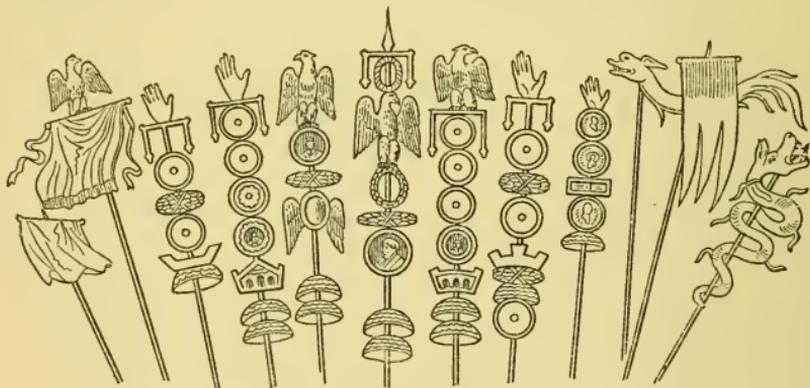
### WAR WITH THE HELVETII.

#### CAESAR PREPARES FOR A GENERAL ENGAGEMENT.

**466.** Caesar cōpiās suās in prōximū collem subdūxit, equitātumque, quī sustinēret<sup>2</sup> hostiū impetum, mīsīt. Ipse interim in colle mediō<sup>3</sup> triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnū quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō iūgō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā ceteriōre cōnscrīperat, et omnia auxilia collocārī iussit. Helvētīi, cum omnibus suis carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnū locū contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē,<sup>4</sup> sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

#### THE HELVETII ARE DEFEATED AND PUT TO FLIGHT.

**467.** Caesar cohortātus suōs proelium commīsīt. Mīlītēs, ē locō superiōre pīlis missīs, facile hostiū phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā<sup>5</sup> disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs<sup>6</sup> impe-



Roman standards.

1. **Capite dētēctō**, Ablative Absolute. *the hill*; render, *midway up the hill*.
2. **Quī sustinēret**, a clause of Purpose.
3. **In colle mediō**, means not *the middle hill*, but *the middle of*
4. **Cōnfertissimā aciē**, Ablative of Manner; see 279.
5. **Eā** refers to *phalangem*.
6. **Eōs** refers to *hostiū*.

tum fecerunt. Diū atque acriter pugnatum est.<sup>1</sup> Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā<sup>2</sup> ad vesperum pugnatum esset, āversum<sup>3</sup> hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem<sup>4</sup> etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod prō vallō carrōs obiēcerant, et ē locō superiore in nostrōs venientēs tēla cōiciēbant, et nōnnulli inter carrōs rotāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant, nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis<sup>5</sup> castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ex eō proeliō circiter mīlia hominum centum et trīgintā superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem<sup>6</sup> noctis itinere intermissō, in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum,<sup>7</sup> et propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūram occisōrum<sup>8</sup> nostrī trīduum morātī, eōs sequī nōn potuissent.<sup>7</sup> Caesar ad Lingonēs litterās nūntiōsque misit, nē eōs frumentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent. Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequī coepit.

#### THE HELVETII RETURN TO THEIR COUNTRY.

468. Helvētiī, omnium rērum inopiā adductī, lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum miserunt. Caesar eōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit, et Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iīs frumentī cōpiam facerent.<sup>9</sup>

1. **Pugnatum est**, literally, *it was fought*; render, *they fought*.

2. **Ab hōrā septimā**. As the Romans divided the day, from sunrise to sunset, into twelve hours, the seventh hour began at noon.

3. **Āversum**, literally, *turned away*; render, *retreating* or *in retreat*.

4. **Ad multam noctem**, until late at night.

5. **Impedimentis** depends upon *potitī sunt*; see 371.

6. **Partem**, Accusative of Duration of Time; see 385.

7. **Cum . . . potuissent**, Subjunctive of Cause; see 524.

8. **Occisōrum** is used substantively; render, *of the slain*.

9. **Ut facerent**, a Clause of Purpose.

469. Sum, *I am*.—STEMS, *es, fu*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

sum                      esse                      fuē

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## SINGULAR.

sum,<sup>1</sup>    *I am,*  
es,        *thou art,*<sup>2</sup>  
est,      *he is;*

## PRESENT TENSE.

## PLURAL.

sumus,    *we are,*  
estis,     *you are,*  
sunt,      *they are.*

## IMPERFECT.

eram,     *I was,*  
erās,     *thou wast,*<sup>2</sup>  
erat,      *he was;*

erāmus,    *we were,*  
erātis,     *you were,*  
erant,      *they were.*

## FUTURE.

erō,        *I shall be,*  
eris,       *thou wilt be,*  
erit,       *he will be;*

erimus,    *we shall be,*  
eritis,     *you will be,*  
erunt,      *they will be.*

## PERFECT.

fuī,         *I have been,*<sup>3</sup>  
fuistī,      *thou hast been,*  
fuit,        *he has been;*

fuius,      *we have been,*  
fuistis,     *you have been,*  
fuērunt,    } *they have been.*  
fuēre,      }

## PLUPERFECT.

fueram,    *I had been,*  
fuerās,    *thou hadst been,*  
fuerat,     *he had been;*

fuerāmus,    *we had been,*  
fuerātis,     *you had been,*  
fuerant,      *they had been.*

## FUTURE PERFECT.

fuerō,      *I shall have been,*  
fuerīs,     *thou wilt have been,*  
fuerit,     *he will have been;*

fuerīmus,    *we shall have been,*  
fuerītis,     *you will have been,*  
fuerint,      *they will have been.*

<sup>1</sup> *Sum* is for *esum*, *eram* for *esam*. The pupil will observe that the endings which are added to the roots *es* and *fu* are distinguished by the type.

<sup>2</sup> Or *you are*, and in the Imperfect, *you were*; *thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse.

<sup>3</sup> Or *I was*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## SINGULAR.

## PRESENT.

## PLURAL.

<b>sim,</b>	<i>may I be,<sup>1</sup></i>	<b>sīmus,</b>	<i>let us be,</i>
<b>sis,</b>	<i>mayst thou be,<sup>2</sup></i>	<b>sītis,</b>	<i>be ye, may you be,</i>
<b>sit,</b>	<i>let him be, may he be ;</i>	<b>sīnt,</b>	<i>let them be.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

<b>essem,</b>	<i>I should be,<sup>1</sup></i>	<b>essēmus,</b>	<i>we should be,</i>
<b>essēs,</b>	<i>thou wouldst be,</i>	<b>essētis,</b>	<i>you would be,</i>
<b>esset,</b>	<i>he would be ;</i>	<b>essent,</b>	<i>they would be.</i>

## PERFECT.

<b>fuerim,</b>	<i>I may have been,<sup>1</sup></i>	<b>fuerīmus,</b>	<i>we may have been,</i>
<b>fuerīs,</b>	<i>thou mayst have been,</i>	<b>fuerītis,</b>	<i>you may have been,</i>
<b>fuerit,</b>	<i>he may have been ;</i>	<b>fuerint,</b>	<i>they may have been.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

<b>fuissem,</b>	<i>I should have been,</i>	<b>fuissemus,</b>	<i>we should have been,</i>
<b>fuisēs,</b>	<i>thou wouldst have been,</i>	<b>fuisētis,</b>	<i>you would have been,</i>
<b>fuisset,</b>	<i>he would have been ;</i>	<b>fuisent,</b>	<i>they would have been.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. es,</i>	<i>be thou,</i>	<b>este,</b>	<i>be ye.</i>
<i>Fut. estō,</i>	<i>thou shalt be,<sup>3</sup></i>	<b>estōte,</b>	<i>ye shall be,</i>
	<i>estō, he shall be ;<sup>3</sup></i>	<b>suntō,</b>	<i>they shall be.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres. esse,</i>	<i>to be.</i>		
<i>Perf. fuisse,</i>	<i>to have been.</i>		
<i>Fut. futūrus esse,<sup>4</sup></i>	<i>to be</i>	<i>Fut. futūrus,<sup>4</sup></i>	<i>about to be.</i>
	<i>about to be.</i>		

1. In the Paradigm all the forms beginning with *e* or *s* are from the stem *es*; all others from the stem *fu*.

<sup>1</sup> On the translation of the Subjunctive, see Lessons CI, CII, and CIII, and remember that it is sometimes best rendered by the Indicative. Thus, *sim* may sometimes be rendered *I am*, and *fuerim*, *I have been*.

<sup>2</sup> Or *may you be*.

<sup>3</sup> The Future may also be rendered like the Present, or with *let*: *be thou*; *let him be*.

<sup>4</sup> *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus*. So in the Infinitive: *futūrus, a, um, esse*.

## FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

470. ACTIVE VOICE.—Amō, *I love*.VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, amā.<sup>1</sup>

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

amō

amāre

amāvī

amātum

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PRESENT TENSE.	PLURAL.
amō, <sup>1</sup>	<i>I love,</i> <sup>2</sup>	amāmus,	<i>we love,</i>
amās,	<i>you love,</i> <sup>3</sup>	amātis,	<i>you love,</i>
amat,	<i>he loves;</i>	amant,	<i>they love.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

amābam,	<i>I was loving,</i>	amābāmus,	<i>we were loving,</i>
amābās,	<i>you were loving,</i>	amābātis,	<i>you were loving,</i>
amābat,	<i>he was loving;</i>	amābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

## FUTURE.

amābō,	<i>I shall love,</i>	amābimus,	<i>we shall love,</i>
amābis,	<i>you will love,</i>	amābitis,	<i>you will love,</i>
amābit,	<i>he will love;</i>	amābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

## PERFECT.

amāvī,	<i>I have loved,</i> <sup>4</sup>	amāvimus,	<i>we have loved,</i>
amāvistī,	<i>you have loved,</i>	amāvistis,	<i>you have loved,</i>
amāvit,	<i>he has loved;</i>	amāvērunt, ēre,	<i>they have loved.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

amāveram,	<i>I had loved,</i>	amāverāmus,	<i>we had loved,</i>
amāverās,	<i>you had loved,</i>	amāverātis,	<i>you had loved,</i>
amāverat,	<i>he had loved;</i>	amāverant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

amāverō,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>	amāverīmus,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
amāverīs,	<i>you will have loved,</i>	amāverītis,	<i>you will have loved,</i>
amāverit,	<i>he will have loved;</i>	amāverint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

<sup>1</sup> The final *ā* of the stem disappears in certain forms.<sup>2</sup> Or *I am loving, I do love*. So in the Imperfect, *I loved, I was loving, I did love*.<sup>3</sup> Or *thou lovest*. So in the other tenses, *thou wast loving, thou wilt love, etc*.<sup>4</sup> Or *I loved*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## SINGULAR.

amem, *may I love,*<sup>1</sup>  
 amēs, *may you love,*  
 amet, *let him love;*

## PRESENT.

amēmus, *let us love,*  
 amētis, *may you love,*  
 ament, *let them love.*

## PLURAL.

## IMPERFECT.

amārem, *I should love,*  
 amārēs, *you would love,*  
 amāret, *he would love;*  
 amārēmus, *we should love,*  
 amārētis, *you would love,*  
 amārent, *they would love.*

## PERFECT.

amāverim, *I may have loved,*<sup>2</sup>  
 amāveris, *you may have loved,*  
 amāverit, *he may have loved;*  
 amāverimus, *we may have loved,*  
 amāveritis, *you may have loved,*  
 amāverint, *they may have loved.*

## PLUPERFECT.

amāvissē, *I should have loved,*  
 amāvissēs, *you would have loved,*  
 amāvisset, *he would have loved;*  
 amāvissēmus, *we should have loved,*  
 amāvissētis, *you would have loved,*  
 amāvissent, *they would have loved.*

## IMPERATIVE.

Pres. amā, *love thou;*  
 Fut. amātō, *thou shalt love,*  
 amātō, *he shall love;*  
 amāte, *love ye.*  
 amātōte, *ye shall love,*  
 amantō, *they shall love.*

## INFINITIVE.

Pres. amāre, *to love.*  
 Perf. amāvisse, *to have loved.*  
 Fut. amātūrus<sup>3</sup> esse, *to be about to love.*

## PARTICIPLE.

Pres. amāns,<sup>4</sup> *loving.*  
 Fut. amātūrus,<sup>3</sup> *about to love.*

## GERUND.

Gen. amandī, *of loving,*  
 Dat. amandō, *for loving,*  
 Acc. amandum, *loving,*  
 Abl. amandō, *by loving.*

## SUPINE.

Acc. amātum, *to love,*  
 Abl. amātū, *to love, to be loved.*

<sup>1</sup> On the translation of the Subjunctive, see page 275, foot-note 1.

<sup>2</sup> Often best rendered *I have loved*. So in the Pluperfect, *I had loved*.

<sup>3</sup> Decline like *bonus*, 101.

<sup>4</sup> For declension, see 182.

## FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

471. PASSIVE VOICE.—Amor, *I am loved.*VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, *amā.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

amor	amāri	amātus sum
------	-------	------------

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am loved.*

## SINGULAR.

amor  
amāris, or re  
amātur

## PLURAL.

amāmur  
amāmini  
amantur

## IMPERFECT.

*I was loved.*

amābar  
amābaris, or re  
amābatur

amābāmur  
amābāmini  
amābantur

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be loved.*

amābor  
amāberis, or re  
amābitur

amābimur  
amābimini  
amābuntur

## PERFECT.

*I have been loved or I was loved.*

amātus sum<sup>1</sup>  
amātus es  
amātus est

amātī sumus  
amātī estis  
amātī sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been loved.*

amātus eram<sup>1</sup>  
amātus erās  
amātus erat

amātī erāmus  
amātī erātis  
amātī erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been loved.*

amātus erō<sup>1</sup>  
amātus eris  
amātus erit

amātī erimus  
amātī eritis  
amātī erunt

<sup>1</sup> *Fuī, fuistī*, etc., are sometimes used for *sum, es*, etc.; *amātus fuī* for *amātus sum*. So *fueram, fuerās*, etc., for *eram*, etc.: also *fuerō*, etc., for *erō*, etc.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I be loved, let him be loved.*<sup>1</sup>

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amē	amēmur
amēris, or re	amēminī
amētur	amentur

## IMPERFECT.

*I should be loved, he would be loved.*<sup>1</sup>

amārer	amārēmur
amārēris, or re	amārēminī
amārētur	amārentur

## PERFECT.

*I may have been loved, or I have been loved.*<sup>1</sup>

amātus sim <sup>2</sup>	amātī sīmus
amātus sis	amātī sītis
amātus sit	amātī sint

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have been loved, he would have been loved.*<sup>1</sup>

amātus essem <sup>2</sup>	amātī essēmus
amātus essēs	amātī essētis
amātus esset	amātī essent

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> amāre, be thou loved;	amāminī, be ye loved.
<i>Fut.</i> amātor, thou shalt be loved.	
amātor, he shall be loved;	amantor, they shall be loved.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> amārī, to be loved.	
<i>Perf.</i> amātus esse, <sup>2</sup> to have been loved.	<i>Perf.</i> amātus, having been loved.
<i>Fut.</i> amātum irī, to be about to be loved.	<i>Ger.</i> <sup>3</sup> amandus, to be loved, deserv- ing to be loved.

<sup>1</sup> But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see page 275, foot-note 1.

<sup>2</sup> *Fuerim, fueris*, etc., are sometimes used for *sim, sis*, etc.—So also *fuissem, fuissēs*, etc., for *essem, essēs*, etc.: rarely *fuisse* for *esse*.

<sup>3</sup> *Ger.* = Gerundive.

## SECOND CONJUGATION: E VERBS.

472. ACTIVE VOICE.—Moneō, *I advise*.VERB STEM, *mon, moni*; PRESENT STEM, *monē*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

moneō                  monēre                  monuī                  monitum

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	<i>I advise.</i>	PLURAL.
moneō		monēmus
monēs		monētis
monet		monent

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advising, or I advised.*

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbās	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will advise.*

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

## PERFECT.

*I have advised, or I advised.*

monuī	monuimus
monuisti	monuistis
monuit	monuerunt, or ēre

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised.*

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have advised.*

monuerō	monuerīmus
monuerīs	monuerītis
monuerit	monuerint

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I advise, let him advise.*<sup>1</sup>

## SINGULAR.

moneam

moneās

moneat

## PLURAL.

moneāmus

moneātis

moneant

## IMPERFECT.

*I should advise, he would advise.*

monērem

monērēs

monēret

monērēmus

monērētis

monērent

## PERFECT.

*I may have advised, or I have advised.*<sup>1</sup>

monuerim

monuerīs

monuerit

monuerīmus

monuerītis

monuerint

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have advised, he would have advised.*<sup>2</sup>

monuissē

monuissēs

monuisset

monuissēmus

monuissētis

monuissent

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres.* monē, *advise thou;*monēte, *advise ye.**Fut.* monētō, *thou shalt advise,*monētōte, *ye shall advise,*monētō, *he shall advise.*monentō, *they shall advise.*

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* monēre, *to advise.**Perf.* monuisse, *to have advised.**Fut.* monitūrus esse, *to be about to advise.*

## PARTICIPLE.

*Pres.* monēns, *advising.**Fut.* monitūrus, *about to advise.*

## GERUND.

*Gen.* monendī, *of advising,**Dat.* monendō, *for advising,**Acc.* monendum, *advising,**Abl.* monendō, *by advising.*

## SUPINE.

*Acc.* monitum, *to advise.**Abl.* monitū, *to advise, to be advised.*<sup>1</sup> But on the translation of the Subjunctive, see page 275, foot-note 1.<sup>2</sup> The Pluperfect, like the Perfect, is often rendered by the Indicative: *I had advised, you had advised, etc.*

SECOND CONJUGATION: **E** VERBS.**473.** PASSIVE VOICE.—Moneor, *I am advised.*VERB STEM, *mon, moni*; PRESENT STEM, *monē*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<b>mon</b> eor	<b>mon</b> ēri	<b>monitus</b> sum
----------------	----------------	--------------------

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am advised.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<b>mon</b> eor		<b>mon</b> ēmur
<b>mon</b> ēris, or <b>re</b>		<b>mon</b> ēmini
<b>mon</b> ētur		<b>mon</b> entur

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advised.*

<b>mon</b> ēbar	<b>mon</b> ēbāmur
<b>mon</b> ēbāris, or <b>re</b>	<b>mon</b> ēbāmini
<b>mon</b> ēbātur	<b>mon</b> ēbantur

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be advised.*

<b>mon</b> ēbor	<b>mon</b> ēbimur
<b>mon</b> ēberis, or <b>re</b>	<b>mon</b> ēbimini
<b>mon</b> ēbitur	<b>mon</b> ēbuntur

## PERFECT.

*I have been advised, I was advised.*

<b>monitus</b> sum	<b>monitī</b> sumus
<b>monitus</b> es	<b>monitī</b> estis
<b>monitus</b> est	<b>monitī</b> sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been advised.*

<b>monitus</b> eram	<b>monitī</b> erāmus
<b>monitus</b> erās	<b>monitī</b> erātis
<b>monitus</b> erat	<b>monitī</b> erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been advised.*

<b>monitus</b> erō	<b>monitī</b> erimus
<b>monitus</b> eris	<b>monitī</b> eritis
<b>monitus</b> erit	<b>monitī</b> erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I be advised, let him be advised.*

## SINGULAR.

mon**ear**  
mon**eāris**, or **re**  
mon**eātur**

## PLURAL.

mon**eāmur**  
mon**eāminī**  
mon**eantur**

## IMPERFECT.

*I should be advised, he would be advised.*

mon**ērer**  
mon**ērēris**, or **re**  
mon**ērētur**

mon**ērēmur**  
mon**ērēminī**  
mon**ērentur**

## PERFECT.

*I may have been advised, or I have been advised.*

monit**us sīm**  
monit**us sīs**  
monit**us sīt**

monit**ī sīmus**  
monit**ī sītis**  
monit**ī sīnt**

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have been advised, he would have been advised.<sup>1</sup>*

monit**us essem**  
monit**us essēs**  
monit**us esset**

monit**ī essēmus**  
monit**ī essētis**  
monit**ī essent**

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres.* mon**ēre**, be thou advised; mon**ēminī**, be ye advised.

*Fut.* mon**ētor**, thou shalt be advised,

mon**ētor**, he shall be advised; mon**entor**, they shall be advised.

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* mon**ērī**, to be advised.

*Perf.* monit**us esse**, to have been advised.

*Fut.* monit**um īrī**, to be about to be advised.

## PARTICIPLE.

*Perf.* monit**us**, having been advised.

*Ger.* mon**endus**, to be advised, deserving to be advised.

<sup>1</sup> Or I had been advised, you had been advised, etc.

## THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

474. ACTIVE VOICE.—Regō, *I rule.*VERB STEM, *reg*; PRESENT STEM, *rege*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

regō	regere	rēxī <sup>1</sup>	rēctum <sup>1</sup>
------	--------	-------------------	---------------------

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I rule.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
regō	regimus
regis	regitis
regit	regunt

## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruling, or I ruled.*

regēbam	regēbāmus
regēbās	regēbātis
regēbat	regēbant

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will rule.*

regam	regēmus
regēs	regētis
reget	regent

## PERFECT.

*I have ruled, or I ruled.*

rēxī	rēximus
rēxistī	rēxistis
rēxit	rēxerunt, or ēre

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had ruled.*

rēxeram	rēxerāmus
rēxerās	rēxerātis
rēxerat	rēxerant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have ruled.*

rēxerō	rēxerimus
rēxerīs	rēxeritis
rēxerit	rēxerint

<sup>1</sup> Rēxī is for *regsi*; rēctum for *regtum*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I rule, let him rule.*

## SINGULAR.

reg**am**reg**ās**reg**at**

## PLURAL.

reg**āmus**reg**ātis**reg**ant**

## IMPERFECT.

*I should rule, he would rule.*reger**em**reger**ēs**reger**et**reger**ēmus**reger**ētis**reger**ent**

## PERFECT.

*I may have ruled, or I have ruled.*rēx**erim**rēx**erīs**rēx**erit**rēx**erīmus**rēx**erītis**rēx**erint**

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have ruled, he would have ruled.*rēx**issem**rēx**issēs**rēx**isset**rēx**issēmus**rēx**issētis**rēx**issent**

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. reg**e**, rule thou;**reg**ite**, rule ye.**Fut. reg**itō**, thou shalt rule,  
reg**itō**, he shall rule.**reg**itōte**, ye shall rule,  
reg**untō**, they shall rule.*

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres. reg**ere**, to rule.**Perf. rēx**isse**, to have ruled.**Fut. rēct**ūrus esse**, to be about  
to rule.*

## PARTICIPLE.

*Pres. reg**ēns**, ruling.**Fut. rēct**ūrus**, about to rule.*

## GERUND.

*Gen. reg**endī**, of ruling.**Dat. reg**endō**, for ruling.**Acc. reg**endum**, ruling.**Abl. reg**endō**, by ruling.*

## SUPINE.

*Acc. rēct**um**, to rule.**Abl. rēct**ū**, to rule, to be ruled.*

## THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

475. PASSIVE VOICE.—Regor, *I am ruled.*VERB STEM, *reg*; PRESENT STEM, *rege*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<b>regor</b>	<b>regī</b>	<b>rēctus sum</b>
--------------	-------------	-------------------

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

	<i>I am ruled.</i>	
SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<b>regor</b>		<b>regimur</b>
<b>regeris, or re</b>		<b>regimini</b>
<b>regitur</b>		<b>reguntur</b>

## IMPERFECT.

	<i>I was ruled.</i>	
<b>regēbar</b>		<b>regēbāmur</b>
<b>regēbāris, or re</b>		<b>regēbāmini</b>
<b>regēbātur</b>		<b>regēbantur</b>

## FUTURE.

	<i>I shall or will be ruled.</i>	
<b>regar</b>		<b>regēmur</b>
<b>regēris, or re</b>		<b>regēmini</b>
<b>regētur</b>		<b>regentur</b>

## PERFECT.

	<i>I have been ruled, or I was ruled.</i>	
<b>rēctus sum</b>		<b>rēctī sumus</b>
<b>rēctus es</b>		<b>rēctī estis</b>
<b>rēctus est</b>		<b>rēctī sunt</b>

## PLUPERFECT.

	<i>I had been ruled.</i>	
<b>rēctus eram</b>		<b>rēctī erāmus</b>
<b>rēctus erās</b>		<b>rēctī erātis</b>
<b>rēctus erat</b>		<b>rēctī erant</b>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

	<i>I shall or will have been ruled.</i>	
<b>rēctus erō</b>		<b>rēctī erimus</b>
<b>rēctus eris</b>		<b>rēctī eritis</b>
<b>rēctus erit</b>		<b>rēctī erunt</b>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I be ruled, let him be ruled.*

## SINGULAR.

**regar**  
**regāris, or re**  
**regātur**

## PLURAL.

**regāmur**  
**regāminī**  
**regantur**

## IMPERFECT.

*I should be ruled, he would be ruled.*

**regerer**  
**regerēris, or re**  
**regerētur**

**regerēmur**  
**regerēminī**  
**regerentur**

## PERFECT.

*I may have been ruled, or I have been ruled.*

**rēctus sim**  
**rēctus sis**  
**rēctus sit**

**rēctī simus**  
**rēctī sitis**  
**rēctī sint**

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have been ruled, he would have been ruled.*

**rēctus essem**  
**rēctus essēs**  
**rēctus esset**

**rēctī essēmus**  
**rēctī essētis**  
**rēctī essent**

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. regere, be thou ruled;      regimini, be ye ruled.*  
*Fut. regitor, thou shalt be ruled,      reguntor, they shall be ruled.*

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

*Pres. regī, to be ruled.*  
*Perf. rēctus esse, to have been ruled.*  
*Fut. rēctum irī, to be about to be ruled.*

*Perf. rēctus, ruled.*  
*Ger. regendus, to be ruled, deserv-  
 ing to be ruled.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

476. ACTIVE VOICE.—Audiō, *I hear.*VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, *audi*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

audiō                  audi*re*                  audi*vi*                  audi*tum*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	<i>I hear.</i>	PLURAL.
audiō		audi <i>mus</i>
audi <i>s</i>		audi <i>tis</i>
audi <i>t</i>		audi <i>unt</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing, or I heard.*

audi <i>ebam</i>	audi <i>ebāmus</i>
audi <i>ebās</i>	audi <i>ebātis</i>
audi <i>ebat</i>	audi <i>ebant</i>

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will hear.*

audi <i>am</i>	audi <i>ēmus</i>
audi <i>ēs</i>	audi <i>ētis</i>
audi <i>et</i>	audi <i>ent</i>

## PERFECT.

*I have heard, or I heard.*

audi <i>vi</i>	audi <i>vimus</i>
audi <i>isti</i>	audi <i>istis</i>
audi <i>it</i>	audi <i>erunt, or ēre</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard.*

audi <i>veram</i>	audi <i>verāmus</i>
audi <i>verās</i>	audi <i>verātis</i>
audi <i>verat</i>	audi <i>verant</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have heard.*

audi <i>verō</i>	audi <i>verīmus</i>
audi <i>verīs</i>	audi <i>verītis</i>
audi <i>verit</i>	audi <i>verint</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I hear, let him hear.*

SINGULAR.  
 aud**iam**  
 aud**ias**  
 aud**iat**

PLURAL.  
 aud**iamus**  
 aud**iatis**  
 aud**iant**

## IMPERFECT.

*I should hear, he would hear.*

aud**irem**  
 aud**irēs**  
 aud**iret**

aud**irēmus**  
 aud**irētis**  
 aud**irent**

## PERFECT.

*I may have heard, or I have heard.*

audiver**im**  
 audiver**is**  
 audiver**it**

audiver**imus**  
 audiver**itis**  
 audiver**int**

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have heard, he would have heard.*

audiv**issem**  
 audiv**issēs**  
 audiv**isset**

audiv**issēmus**  
 audiv**issētis**  
 audiv**issent**

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. aud**i**, hear thou;**aud**ite**, hear ye.**Fut. aud**itō**, thou shalt hear,**aud**itōte**, ye shall hear,**aud**itō**, he shall hear;**aud**iuntō**, they shall hear.*

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres. aud**ire**, to hear.*

## PARTICIPLE.

*Pres. aud**iēns**, hearing.**Perf. audiv**isse**, to have heard.**Fut. aud**itūrus esse**, to be about to hear.**Fut. aud**itūrus**, about to hear.*

## GERUND.

*Gen. aud**iendī**, of hearing,**Dat. aud**iendō**, for hearing,**Acc. aud**iendum**, hearing,**Abl. aud**iendō**, by hearing.*

## SUPINE.

*Acc. aud**itum**, to hear,**Abl. aud**itū**, to hear, to be heard.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

477. PASSIVE VOICE.—Audior, *I am heard*.VERB STEM AND PRESENT STEM, *audī*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

audior            audīrī            audītus sum

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	<i>I am heard.</i>	PLURAL.
audior		audīmur
audīris, or re		audīmini
audītur		audiuntur

## IMPERFECT.

	<i>I was heard.</i>	
audiēbar		audiēbāmur
audiēbāris, or re		audiēbāmini
audiēbātur		audiēbantur

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be heard.*

audiar	audiēmur
audiēris, or re	audiēmini
audiētur	audientur

## PERFECT.

*I have been heard, or I was heard.*

audītus sum	audītī sumus
audītus es	audītī estis
audītus est	audītī sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.*

audītus eram	audītī erāmus
audītus erās	audītī erātis
audītus erat	audītī erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been heard.*

audītus erō	audītī erimus
audītus eris	audītī eritis
audītus erit	audītī erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*May I be heard, let him be heard.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audi <b>ar</b>	audi <b>āmur</b>
audi <b>āris</b> , or <b>re</b>	audi <b>āmini</b>
audi <b>ātur</b>	audi <b>antur</b>

## IMPERFECT.

*I should be heard, he would be heard.*

audi <b>rer</b>	audi <b>rēmur</b>
audi <b>rēris</b> , or <b>re</b>	audi <b>rēmini</b>
audi <b>rētur</b>	audi <b>rentur</b>

## PERFECT.

*I may have been heard, or I have been heard.*

audi <b>tus sim</b>	audi <b>tī sīmus</b>
audi <b>tus sis</b>	audi <b>tī sītis</b>
audi <b>tus sit</b>	audi <b>tī sint</b>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I should have been heard, he would have been heard.*

audi <b>tus essem</b>	audi <b>tī essēmus</b>
audi <b>tus essēs</b>	audi <b>tī essētis</b>
audi <b>tus esset</b>	audi <b>tī essent</b>

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> audi <b>re</b> , be thou heard;	audi <b>mini</b> , be ye heard.
<i>Fut.</i> audi <b>tor</b> , thou shalt be heard, audi <b>tor</b> , he shall be heard;	audi <b>untor</b> , they shall be heard.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> audi <b>ri</b> , to be heard.	
<i>Perf.</i> audi <b>tus esse</b> , to have been heard.	<i>Perf.</i> audi <b>tus</b> , having been heard.
<i>Fut.</i> audi <b>um iri</b> , to be about to be heard.	<i>Ger.</i> audi <b>endus</b> , to be heard, deserving to be heard.

478. ACTIVE VOICE.—Capiō, *I take*.VERB STEM, *cap*; PRESENT STEM, *cape*.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<b>capiō</b>	<b>capere</b>	<b>cēpī</b>	<b>captum</b>
--------------	---------------	-------------	---------------

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<b>capiō</b>	<b>capimus</b>
<b>capis</b>	<b>capitis</b>
<b>capit</b>	<b>capiunt</b>

## IMPERFECT.

<b>capiēbam</b>	<b>capiēbāmus</b>
<b>capiēbās</b>	<b>capiēbātis</b>
<b>capiēbat.</b>	<b>capiēbant</b>

## FUTURE.

<b>capiam</b>	<b>capiemus</b>
<b>capies</b>	<b>capietis</b>
<b>capiet</b>	<b>capient</b>

## PERFECT.

<b>cēpī</b>	<b>cēpimus</b>
<b>cēpisti</b>	<b>cēpistis</b>
<b>cēpit</b>	<b>cēperunt, or ēre</b>

## PLUPERFECT.

<b>cēperam</b>	<b>cēperāmus</b>
<b>cēperās</b>	<b>cēperātis</b>
<b>cēperat</b>	<b>cēperant</b>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

<b>cēperō</b>	<b>cēperimus</b>
<b>cēperis</b>	<b>cēperitis</b>
<b>cēperit</b>	<b>cēperint</b>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

SINGULAR.  
**capiam**  
**capias**  
**capiat**

PLURAL.  
**capiamus**  
**capiatis**  
**capiant**

## IMPERFECT.

**caperem**  
**caperēs**  
**caperet**

**caperēmus**  
**caperētis**  
**caperent**

## PERFECT.

**cēperim**  
**cēperīs**  
**cēperit**

**cēperimus**  
**cēperītis**  
**cēperint**

## PLUPERFECT.

**cēpīsem**  
**cēpīssēs**  
**cēpīset**

**cēpīsemus**  
**cēpīssētis**  
**cēpīssent**

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres.* **cape**  
*Fut.* **capitō**  
**capitō**

**capite**  
**capitōte**  
**capiantō**

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* **capere**  
*Perf.* **cēpisse**  
*Fut.* **captūrus esse**

## PARTICIPLE.

*Pres.* **capiens**  
*Fut.* **captūrus**

## GERUND.

*Gen.* **capienti**  
*Dat.* **capientō**  
*Acc.* **capientum**  
*Abl.* **capientō**

## SUPINE.

*Acc.* **captum**  
*Abl.* **captū**

479. PASSIVE VOICE.—Capior, *I am taken.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

capior                      capī                      captus sum

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
capior	capimur
caperis, <i>or re</i>	capimini
capitur	capiuntur

## IMPERFECT.

capiēbar	capiebāmur
capiēbāris, <i>or re</i>	capiebāmini
capiebātur	capiebantur

## FUTURE.

capiar	capiemur
capieris, <i>or re</i>	capiemini
capietur	capientur

## PERFECT.

captus sum	capti sumus
captus es	capti estis
captus est	capti sunt

## PLUPERFECT.

captus eram	capti erāmus
captus erās	capti erātis
captus erat	capti erant

## FUTURE PERFECT.

captus erō	capti erimus
captus eris	capti eritis
captus erit	capti erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

SINGULAR.

**capiar****capīāris, or re****capīātur**

PLURAL.

**capīāmur****capīāminī****capīantur**

## IMPERFECT.

**caperer****caperēris, or re****caperētur****caperēmur****caperēminī****caperentur**

## PERFECT.

**captus sim****captus sis****captus sit****capti simus****capti sitis****capti sint**

## PLUPERFECT.

**captus essem****captus essēs****captus esset****capti essēmus****capti essētis****capti essent**

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres.* **capere***Fut.* **capitor****capitor****capiminī****capiantor**

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* **capī***Perf.* **captus esse***Fut.* **captum irī**

## PARTICIPLE.

*Perf.* **captus***Ger.* **capendus**

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

**480.** A few verbs which have special irregularities are called, by way of pre-eminence, *Irregular* or *Anomalous Verbs*.

**481.** Possum,<sup>1</sup> posse, potuī, to be able.

SINGULAR.	INDICATIVE.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i> possum, potes, potest;		possumus, potestis, possunt.
<i>Imp.</i> poteram; <sup>2</sup>		poterāmus.
<i>Fut.</i> poterō;		poterimus.
<i>Perf.</i> potuī;		potuimus.
<i>Plup.</i> potueram;		potuerāmus.
<i>F. P.</i> potuerō;		potuerīmus.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> possim, possīs, possit;	possīmus, possītis, possint.
<i>Imp.</i> possem;	possēmus.
<i>Perf.</i> potuerim;	potuerīmus.
<i>Plup.</i> potuissem;	potuissēmus.

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* posse.  
*Perf.* potuisse.

## PARTICIPLE.

*Pres.* potēns (*as an adjective*).

**482.** Ferō, ferre, tūlī, lātum, to bear.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

SINGULAR.	INDICATIVE.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i> ferō, fers, fert:		ferimus, fertis, <sup>3</sup> ferunt.
<i>Imp.</i> ferēbam; <sup>2</sup>		ferēbāmus.
<i>Fut.</i> feram;		ferēmus.
<i>Perf.</i> tūlī;		tulimus.
<i>Plup.</i> tuleram;		tulerāmus.
<i>F. P.</i> tulerō;		tulerīmus.

<sup>1</sup> *Possum* is compounded of *potis*, 'able,' and *sum*, 'I am.'

<sup>2</sup> Inflected regularly through the different persons: *poteram*, *poterās*, *poterat*, etc.; *ferēbam*, *ferēbās*, etc.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 297, foot-note.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i> feram ;	ferāmus.
<i>Imp.</i> ferrem ;	ferrēmus. <sup>1</sup>
<i>Perf.</i> tulerim ;	tulerīmus.
<i>Plup.</i> tulissem ;	tulissēmus.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> fer ; <sup>1</sup>	ferte.
<i>Fut.</i> fertō, fertō,	fertōte, feruntō.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> ferre. <sup>1</sup>
<i>Perf.</i> tulisse.
<i>Fut.</i> lātūrus esse.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> ferēns.
<i>Fut.</i> lātūrus.

## GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i> ferendī,
<i>Dat.</i> ferendō,
<i>Acc.</i> ferendum,
<i>Abl.</i> ferendō.

## SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i> lātum,
<i>Abl.</i> lātū.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

**483.** Feror, ferrī, lātus sum, *to be borne.*

## INDICATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i> feror, ferris, fertur ;	ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.
<i>Imp.</i> ferēbar ;	ferēbāmur.
<i>Fut.</i> ferar ;	ferēmur.
<i>Perf.</i> lātus sum ;	lātī sumus.
<i>Plup.</i> lātus eram ;	lātī erāmus.
<i>F. P.</i> lātus erō ;	lātī erimus.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> ferar ;	ferāmur.
<i>Imp.</i> ferrer ;	ferrēmur.
<i>Perf.</i> lātus sim ;	lātī sīmus.
<i>Plup.</i> lātūs essem ;	lātī essēmus.

<sup>1</sup> *Fer-s, fer-t, fer-tis, for feris, ferit, feritis ; fer for fere, ferre for ferere, ferrem for fererem.*

## IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i> ferre ;	feriminī.
<i>Fut.</i> fertor,	—
fertor ;	feruntor.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> ferrī.	
<i>Perf.</i> lātus esse.	<i>Perf.</i> lātus.
<i>Fut.</i> lātum irī.	<i>Ger.</i> ferendus.

<b>484.</b> Volō,	velle,	voluī,	<i>to be willing.</i>
Nōlō, <sup>1</sup>	nōlle,	nōluī,	<i>to be unwilling.</i>
Mālō, <sup>1</sup>	mālle,	māluī,	<i>to prefer.</i>

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> volō,	nōlō,	mālō,
vīs,	nōn vīs,	māvīs,
vult ;	nōn vult ;	māvult ;
volumus,	nōlumus,	mālumus,
vultis,	nōn vultis,	māvultis,
volunt.	nōlunt.	mālunt.
<i>Imp.</i> volēbam. <sup>2</sup>	nōlēbam.	mālēbam.
<i>Fut.</i> volam.	nōlam.	mālam.
<i>Perf.</i> voluī.	nōluī.	māluī.
<i>Plup.</i> volueram.	nōlueram.	mālueram.
<i>F. P.</i> voluerō.	nōluerō.	māluerō.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> velim. <sup>3</sup>	nōlim.	mālim.
<i>Imp.</i> vellem. <sup>4</sup>	nōllem.	māllem.
<i>Perf.</i> voluerim.	nōluerim.	māluerim.
<i>Plup.</i> voluissem.	nōluissem.	māluissem.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> nōlī,	nōlīte.
<i>Fut.</i> nōlītō,	nōlītōte,
nōlītō,	nōluntō,

<sup>1</sup> NŌLŌ is compounded of *nē* or *nōn* and *volō* ; MĀLŌ, of *magis* and *volō*.

<sup>2</sup> Inflect the several tenses in full.

<sup>3</sup> *Velim* is inflected like *sim*, and *vellem* like *essem*.

<sup>4</sup> *Vellem* and *velle* are syncopated forms for *velerem*, *velere*. So *nōllem* and *nōlle*, for *nōlerem* and *nōlere* ; *māllem* and *mālle*, for *mālerem* and *mālere*.

	INFINITIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i> velle.	nōlle.	mālle.
<i>Perf.</i> voluisse.	nōluisse.	māluisse.
	PARTICIPLE.	
<i>Pres.</i> volēns.	nōlēns.	

**485.** Fīō, fierī, factus sum, *to become, be made.*<sup>1</sup>

SINGULAR.	INDICATIVE.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i> fīō, fīs, fit;	fīmus, fītis, fiunt.	
<i>Imp.</i> fīēbam; <sup>2</sup>	fīēbāmus.	
<i>Fut.</i> fīam;	fīēmus.	
<i>Perf.</i> factus sum;	factī sumus.	
<i>Plup.</i> factus eram;	factī erāmus.	
<i>F. P.</i> factus erō;	factī erimus.	

SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i> fīam;	fīāmus.
<i>Imp.</i> fierem;	fierēmus.
<i>Perf.</i> factus sim;	factī sīmus.
<i>Plup.</i> factus essem;	factī essēmus.

IMPERATIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i> fī;	fīte.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> fierī.	
<i>Perf.</i> factus esse.	<i>Perf.</i> factus.
<i>Fut.</i> factum irī.	<i>Ger.</i> faciendus.

**486.** Eō, ire, ivī, or iū, itum, *to go.*

INDICATIVE.	
<i>Pres.</i> eō, īs, it;	īmus, ītis, eunt.
<i>Imp.</i> ībam; <sup>2</sup>	ībāmus.
<i>Fut.</i> ībō;	ībīmus.
<i>Perf.</i> ivī, or iū;	ivīmus, or iīmus.
<i>Plup.</i> īveram, or ieram;	īverāmus, or ierāmus.
<i>F. P.</i> īverō, or ierō;	īverīmus, or ierīmus.

<sup>1</sup> This verb supplies the Passive of *faciō*, 'to make,' 'do.'

<sup>2</sup> Inflect the several tenses in full.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Pres.</i> eam ;	eāmus.
<i>Imp.</i> irem ;	irēmus.
<i>Perf.</i> iyerim, or ierim ;	iyerīmus, or ierīmus.
<i>Plup.</i> iuissem, or iissem ;	iuissēmus, or iissēmus.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> ī ;	ite.
<i>Fut.</i> itō,	itōte,
itō ;	euntō.

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> ire.
<i>Perf.</i> iuisse, or iisse.
<i>Fut.</i> itūrus esse.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i> iēns,	<i>Gen.</i> euntis.
<i>Fut.</i> itūrus.	

## GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i> eundī,
<i>Dat.</i> eundō,
<i>Acc.</i> eundum,
<i>Abl.</i> eundō.

## SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i> itum,
<i>Abl.</i> itū,

## GENERAL RULES OF SYNTAX.

## AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

**RULE I.—Predicate Nouns.**

**487.** A noun predicated of another noun denoting the same person or thing agrees with it in CASE; see 63.<sup>1</sup>

**RULE II.—Appositives.**

**488.** An appositive agrees in CASE with the noun or pronoun which it qualifies; see 51.

## NOMINATIVE.—VOCATIVE.

**RULE III.—Subject Nominative.**

**489.** The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative; see 37.

**RULE IV.—Case of Address.**

**490.** The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative; see 85.

## ACCUSATIVE.

**RULE V.—Direct Object.**

**491.** The DIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Accusative; see 37.

**RULE VI.—Two Accusatives—Same Person.**

**492.** Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit—

I. In the Active Voice TWO ACCUSATIVES of the SAME PERSON OR THING; see 362.

II. In the Passive Voice a SUBJECT NOMINATIVE and a PREDICATE NOMINATIVE; see 362.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Roman numeral in each instance designates the number of the rule as it stands in the author's Latin Grammar; the Arabic numeral refers to the article in this work where the rule is illustrated.

**RULE VII.—Two Accusatives—Person and Thing.**

**493.** Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING admit two Accusatives—one of the *person* and the other of the *thing*:

*Mē sententiam rogāvit, he asked me my opinion.*

**RULE IX.—Accusative of Time and Space.**

**494.** DURATION OF TIME AND EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative; see 385.

**RULE X.—Accusative of Limit.**

**495.** The PLACE TO WHICH is designated by the Accusative:

I. Generally with a preposition—**ad** or **in**; see 439.

II. In names of towns without a preposition; see 439.

## DATIVE.

**RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.**

**496.** The INDIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Dative; see 59.

**RULE XIII.—Two Datives—To which and for which.**

**497.** Two Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT OR END FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs:

*Malō est hominibus avāritia, avarice is (for) an evil to men.*

**RULE XIV.—Dative with Adjectives.**

**498.** Many adjectives take an INDIRECT OBJECT in the DATIVE; see 104.

## GENITIVE.

**RULE XVI.—Genitive with Nouns.**

**499.** Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive; see 51.

**RULE XVII.—Genitive with Adjectives.**

**500.** Many adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning:

*Avidus laudis, desirous of praise.*

**RULE XX.—Accusative and Genitive.**

501. The ACCUSATIVE of the PERSON and the GENITIVE of the THING are used with a few transitive verbs:

- I. With verbs of *reminding, admonishing*:  
*Tē amicitiae commonfacit, he reminds you of friendship.*
- II. With verbs of *accusing, convicting, acquitting*:  
*Virōs scelcris arguis, you accuse men of crime.*

## ABLATIVE PROPER.

**RULE XXI.—Place from which.**

502. The PLACE FROM WHICH is denoted by the Ablative:

- I. Generally *with a preposition*—*ā, ab, dē, or ex*; see 440.
- II. In NAMES OF TOWNS *without a preposition*; see 440.

**RULE XXII.—Separation, Source, Cause.**

503. Separation, Source, and Cause are denoted by the Ablative *with or without a preposition*; see 300.

**RULE XXIII.—Case with Comparatives.**

504. I. Comparatives **with quam** are followed by the case of the corresponding noun before them; see 193.

II. Comparatives **without quam** are followed by the Ablative; see 193.

## INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE.

**RULE XXIV.—Ablative of Accompaniment.**

505. The Ablative is used—

- I. To denote ACCOMPANIMENT. It then takes the preposition **cum**:  
*Vivit cum Balbō, he lives with Balbus.*
- II. To denote CHARACTERISTIC or QUALITY. It is then modified by an Adjective or by a Genitive:  
*Summā virtūte adulēscēns, a youth of the highest virtue.*
- III. To denote MANNER. It then takes either (1) the preposition **cum**, with or without an adjective modifier, or (2) an adjective modifier without **cum**; see 279.

**RULE XXV.—Ablative—Agent and Means.**

506. I. The AGENT of an action is denoted by the Ablative with *ā* or *ab*; see 114.

II. The INSTRUMENT and MEANS are denoted by the Ablative without the preposition; see 114.

**RULE XXVI.—Ablative in Special Constructions.**

507. The Ablative is used—

I. With *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*; see 371.

II. With *dignus*, *indignus*, and *contentus*:

*Dignī sunt amicitīā, they are worthy of friendship.*

**RULE XXVII.—Ablative of Price.**

508. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative:

*Vēdidit aurō patriam, he sold his country for gold.*

**RULE XXVIII.—Ablative of Difference.**

509. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative:

*Ūnō diē longiōrem mēnsem faciunt, they make the month one day longer.*

**RULE XXIX.—Specification.**

510. A noun, adjective, or verb may take an Ablative to define its application:

*Nōmine, nōn potestāte, fuit rēx, he was king in name, not in power.*

## LOCATIVE ABLATIVE:

**RULE XXX.—Place in which.**

511. The PLACE IN WHICH is denoted—

I. Generally by the Ablative with the preposition *in*; see 393.

II. In NAMES OF TOWNS by the Locative; see 393.

**RULE XXXI.—Time.**

512. The TIME of an action is denoted by the Ablative; see 230.

**RULE XXXII.—Ablative Absolute.**

513. A noun and a participle may be put in the Ablative to add to the predicate an attendant circumstance; see 429.

## CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

**RULE XXXIII.—Cases with Prepositions.**

514. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with prepositions; see 166.

## AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES, PRONOUNS, AND VERBS.

**RULE XXXIV.—Agreement of Adjectives.**

515. An adjective agrees with its noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE; see 74.

**RULE XXXV.—Agreement of Pronouns.**

516. A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON; see 355.

**RULE XXXVI.—Agreement of Verb with Subject.**

517. A finite verb agrees with its subject in NUMBER and PERSON; see 249.

## MOODS IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.

**RULE XXXVIII.—Subjunctive of Desire, Command.**

518. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS DESIRED; see 401.

**RULE XXXIX.—Potential Subjunctive.**

519. The Subjunctive is used to represent the action NOT AS REAL, but AS POSSIBLE:

*Hic quaerat quispiam, here some one may inquire.*

## MOODS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

**RULE XLII.—Purpose.**

520. The Subjunctive is used to denote PURPOSE—

I. With the relative *quī*, and with relative adverbs; see 406.

II. With *ut*, *nē*, *quō*, *quōminus*; see 406.

**RULE XLIII.—Result.**

521. The Subjunctive is used to denote RESULT:

I. With the relative *quī*, and with relative adverbs:

*Nōn is sum quī (= ut ego) hīs ūtar, I am not such a one as to use these things.*

II. With **ut, ut nōn, quīn** :

Ita vixit ut Athēniēnsibus esset cārissimus, *he so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.*

**RULE XLIV.—Conditional Sentences with sī, nisi, nī, sīn.**

**522.** Conditional sentences with **sī, nisi, nī, sīn**, take—

I. The INDICATIVE in both clauses *to assume* the supposed case :

SI spīritum dūcit, vīvit, *if he breathes, he is alive.*

II. The PRESENT or PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses to represent the supposed case *as possible* :

Dies dēficiat, sī velim causam dēfendere, *the day would fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause.*

III. The IMPERFECT or PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses to represent the supposed case *as contrary to fact* :

Plūribus verbis ad tē scriberem. sī rēs verba dēsīderāret, *I should write to you more fully (with more words), if the case required words.*

**RULE XLV.—Conditional Clauses with dum, āc sī, etc.**

**523.** Conditional clauses take the Subjunctive—

I. With **dum, modo, dummodo**, “if only,” “provided that”; **dum nē, modo nē, dummodo nē**, “if only not,” “provided that not” :

Manent ingenia, modo permaneat industria, *mental powers remain, if only industry remains.*

II. With **āc sī, ut sī, quam sī, quasi, tanquam, tanquam sī, velut, velut sī**, “as if,” “than if,” involving an ellipsis of the real conclusion :

Perinde habēbō, āc sī scripsissēs, *I shall regard it just as if (i. e., as I should if) you had written.*

**RULE XLVIII.—Causal Clauses with cum and quī.**

**524.** Causal clauses with **cum** and **quī** generally take the Subjunctive in writers of the best period :

Cum vita metūs plēna sit, *since life is full of fear.*

**RULE LII.—Temporal Clauses with cum.**

**525.** In temporal clauses with **cum**—

I. Any tense except the Imperfect and the Pluperfect is put in the INDICATIVE :

Cum quīescunt, probant, *while they are silent, they approve.*

II. The Imperfect and the Pluperfect are put—

1. In the INDICATIVE, when the temporal clause ASSERTS AN HISTORICAL FACT :

*Páruit eum necesse erat, he obeyed when it was necessary.*

2. In the SUBJUNCTIVE, when the temporal clause simply DEFINES THE TIME of the principal action :

*Cum epistolam complicārem, while I was folding the letter.*

**RULE LIII.—Moods in Principal Clauses.**

**526.** The principal clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE, except *questions* and *commands*, on becoming INDIRECT take the INFINITIVE WITH A SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE ; see 424.

**RULE LIV.—Moods in Subordinate Clauses.**

**527.** The subordinate clauses of the DIRECT DISCOURSE, on becoming INDIRECT, take the *Subjunctive* ; see 424.

**RULE LV.—Moods in Indirect Clauses.**

**528.** The Subjunctive is used in INDIRECT QUESTIONS ; see 411.

INFINITIVE.

**RULE LVI.—Infinitive.**

**529.** Many verbs admit an Infinitive to complete or qualify their meaning :

*Hæc vitare cupimus, we desire to avoid these things.*

**RULE LVII.—Accusative and Infinitive.**

**530.** Many transitive verbs admit an Infinitive with A SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE ; see 416.

**RULE LVIII.—Subject of Infinitive.**

**531.** The Infinitive sometimes takes an Accusative as its subject ; see 416 :

*Platōnem Tarentum vēnisse reperiō, I find that Plato came to Tarentum.*

SUPINE.

**RULE LIX.—Supine in Um.**

**532.** The Supine in **um** is used with verbs of motion to express PURPOSE :

*Lēgātī vēnērunt rēs repetitum, deputies came to demand restitution.*

**RULE LX.—Supine in ū.**

**533.** The Supine in ū is generally used as an Ablative of Specification :

Quid est tam jucundum auditū, *what is so agreeable to hear* (in hearing)?

## ADVERBS.

**RULE LXI.—Use of Adverbs.**

**534.** Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS :

Sapientēs feliciter vivunt, *the wise live happily.*

# LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

## A

**Ā** or **ab**, prep. with Abl. ; from, by.

**ab-dūcō**, *ere, dūxī, ductum* ; to lead away, carry away, carry off.

**ab-eō**, *ire, ivi, or ii, itum* ; to go away, go off.

**ab-igō**, *ere, ēgī, āctum* ; to drive away, carry off.

**absēns**, *absentis* ; away, absent.

**abs-tineō**, *ēre, tinuī, tentum* ; to hold back, refrain.

**ab-sum**, *esse, fui* ; to be away, be absent, be distant.

**ac**, conj. ; and ; see *atque*.

**ac-cēdō**, *ere, cessī, cessum* ; to go to or toward, approach ; *accēdere ad*, to undertake ; *ad ēvertendum rem pūblicam accēdere*, to undertake the overthrow of the republic.

**ac-cendō**, *ere, cendī, cēsum* ; to kindle, inflame, arouse, encourage.

**ac-cidō**, *ere, cidī* ; to happen, take place.

**ac-cingō**, *ere, cinxī, cinctum* ; to put on, gird on, equip.

**ac-cipiō**, *ere, cepī, ceptum* ; to take, receive, derive.

**accūsant** ; (they) accuse.

**accūsantur** ; (they) are accused.

**accūsat** ; (he) accuses.

**accūsātur** ; (he) is accused.

**accūsō**, *āre, āvī, ātum* ; to accuse, bring to trial.

**ācer**, *ācris, ācre* ; active, spirited, fierce.

**aciēs**, *ēī, f.* ; line of battle.

**ācritēr**, adv. ; sharply, vigorously.

**Actiacus**, *a, um* ; of Actium, relating to Actium.

**ad**, prep. with Acc. ; to, toward, near, at ; (with numbers) about.

**ad-dō**, *ere, didī, ditum* ; to give in addition, add.

**ad-dūcō**, *ere, dūxī, ductum* ; to lead toward, carry, move, influence.

**ad-eō**, *ire, ivi or ii, itum* ; to go to or toward, approach.

**adeō**, adv. ; so, so greatly.

**adhortātiō**, *ōnis, f.* ; encouragement.

**adhūc**, adv. ; as yet, still.

**administer**, *trī, m.* ; attendant, officer.

**admīrābilis**, *e* ; wonderful, remarkable.

**admīrātiō**, *ōnis, f.* ; admiration, wonder.

**ad-mīror**, *ārī, ātus sum* ; to wonder at, admire.

**ad-mittō**, *ere, mīsī, missum* ; to receive, admit.

**ad-orior**, *īrī, ortus sum* ; to attack.

**ad-scribō**, *ere, scripsī, scriptum* ; to enroll, class.

**ad-stō**, *āre, stitī* ; to stand by, or near.

**ad-sum**, *esse, fui* ; to be at hand, be present.

**adūlor**, *ārī, ātus sum* ; to fawn.

**adventō**, *āre, —* ; to approach, go near.

**adventus**, *ūs*, m.; approach, arrival.

**adversārius**, *īī*, m.; opponent, enemy.

**adversum** or **adversus**, prep. with Acc.; against, opposite, toward.

**aedēs**, *is*, f.; temple; *plur.*, dwelling, house.

**aedificant**; (they) build.

**aedificat**; (he) builds.

**aedificium**, *īī*, n.; building, edifice.

**aedificō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to build, erect.

**aedīlis**, *is*, m.; aedile, commissioner of buildings.

**Aeduī**, *ōrum*, m. plur.; Aeduans, a people of Gaul.

**aeger**, *aegra, aegrum*; sick, ill.

**aegrē**, adv.; with grief, unwillingly; *aegrē ferre*, to bear with difficulty, feel grieved at.

**aequus**, *a, um*; fair, impartial, equitable, just, favorable.

**aes**, *aeris*, n.; copper, money; *aes aliēnum*, debt.

**aestās**, *ātis*, f.; summer.

**aestimō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to estimate, value, esteem.

**aestus**, *ūs*, m.; heat, passion.

**Aetna**, *ae*, f.; Aetna, Mt. Aetna.

**af-ferō**, *ferre, at-tulī, al-lātum*; to bring, carry, introduce.

**af-ficiō**, *ere, fēcī, fectum*; to treat, affect; *supplicio afficere*, to punish.

**Āfrica**, *ae*, f.; Africa.

**ager**, *agrī*, m.; field, farm, territory.

**ag-gredior**, *ī*, *gressus sum*; to approach, attack.

**āgmen**, *āgminis*, n.; an army (on the march).

**ā-gnōscō**, *ere, āgnōvī, āgnitum*; to recognize.

**agō**, *ere, egī, āctum*; to lead, do, act, spend, pass.

**agricola**, *ae*, m.; farmer, husbandman.

**Agrippa**, *ae*, m.; Agrippa, a Roman name.

**Albertus**, *ī*, m.; Albert.

**albus**, *a, um*; white.

**Alexander**, *drī*, m.; Alexander the Great, King of Macedon.

**Alexandriā**, *ae*, f.; Alexandria, a city in Egypt.

**alibī**, adv.; elsewhere, in other places.

**aliēnus**, *a, um*; belonging to another, another's; *aes aliēnum*, another's money, debt.

**aliquandō**, adv.; once, at one time, upon one occasion.

**aliquis**, *aliqua, aliquid*; some one, something, any one, anything.

**aliquot**, *indeclinable*; several, some.

**alius**, *alia, aliud*; other, another, else; for declension see 378.

**Allia**, *ae*, f.; Allia, river near Rome.

**alligō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*, to bind to, tie to.

**Allobrogēs**, *um*, m. plur.; Allobroges, a people of Gaul.

**Alpēs**, *ium*, f. plur.; Alps.

**alter**, *altera, alterum*; one, the one, the other (of two).

**altitudō**, *dinis*, f.; height, altitude.

**altus**, *a, um*; high, lofty, tall, deep.

**amant**; (they) love.

**amantur**; (they) are loved.

**amat**; (he) loves.

**amātor**, *ōris*, m.; lover.

**amātur**; (he) is loved.

**amāvit**; (he) loved, has loved.

**ambulant**; (they) walk.

**ambulat**; (he) walks.

**ambulō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to walk, take a walk.

**Amelia**, *ae*, f.; Amelia.

**America**, *ae*, f.; America.

**Americānī**, *ōrum*, m. plur.; Americans.

**Americānus**, *a, um*; American.  
**amicitia**, *ae, f.*; friendship.  
**amicus**, *ī, m.*; friend.  
**ā-mittō**, *ere, mīsi, missum*; to lose.  
**amō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to love.  
**amoenitās**, *ātis, f.*; pleasantness.  
**amoenus**, *a, um*; pleasant.  
**amor**, *oris, m.*; love.  
**ā-moveō**, *ere, mōvī, mōtum*; to take away, remove.  
**amplus**, *a, um*; great, spacious, broad, magnificent.  
**ancilla**, *ae, f.*; maid - servant, maid.  
**Ancus**, *ī, m.*; Ancus, a Roman name.  
**Ancus Mārtius**, *Ancī Mārtiī*, *m.*; Ancus Martius, reputed King of Rome.  
**Androclus**, *ī, m.*; Androclus.  
**angulus**, *ī, m.*; angle, corner, secret place.  
**animal**, *ālis, n.*; animal.  
**animus**, *ī, m.*; mind, soul, spirit, courage.  
**annus**, *ī, m.*; year.  
**ānser**, *eris, m.*; goose.  
**ante**, prep. with Acc.; before, in front of.  
**anteā**, adv.; before, previously.  
**ante-eō**, *īre, īvī, or īī*; to go before, precede.  
**Antiochus**, *ī, m.*; Antiochus, King of Syria.  
**antīquus**, *a, um*; ancient, old.  
**Antōnīnus**, *ī, m.*; Antoninus, a Roman emperor.  
**Antōnius**, *īī, m.*; Antonius, a Roman family name.  
**aper**, *apri, m.*; wild boar.  
**Apollō**, *Apollīnis, m.*; Apollo, the sun-god.  
**Apollōnius**, *īī, m.*; Apollonius, a Greek rhetorician.  
**apparātus**, *ūs, m.*; preparation, implements, supplies, expedition.  
**appellō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to call, name.

**ap-pellunt**; (they) bring to land.  
**ap-propīnquant**; (they) approach, draw near.  
**ap-propīnquat**; (he) approaches, draws near.  
**apud**, prep. with Acc.; before, in presence of, among, at the house of, with.  
**aqua**, *ae, f.*; water.  
**aquila**, *ae, f.*; eagle.  
**aquilifer**, *erī, m.*; eagle-bearer, standard-bearer.  
**arant**; (they) plow.  
**arat**; (he) plows.  
**arbor**, *oris, f.*; tree.  
**arceō**, *ēre, uī*; to keep off, banish.  
**arcēssō**, *ēre, īvī, ītum*; to call, send for, summon.  
**arcus**, *ūs, m.*; bow, arch.  
**ārdeō**, *ēre, ārsī, ārsum*; to burn.  
**ārdor**, *ōris, m.*; heat.  
**arduus**, *a, um*; high, lofty, difficult, hard.  
**arēna**, *ae, f.*; sand; *plur.*, desert.  
**argentum**, *ī, n.*; silver, silver money.  
**Ariovistus**, *ī, m.*; Ariovistus, king of the Suevi.  
**arma**, *ōrum, n. plur.*; arms, weapons, armor.  
**armātus**, *a, um*; armed, equipped with arms.  
**armō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to arm, equip with arms.  
**arō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to plow.  
**ars**, *artis, f.*; skill, art.  
**Artaphernēs**, *īs, m.*; Artaphernes, a Persian general.  
**artē**, adv.; firmly, soundly.  
**arvum**, *ī, n.*; cultivated land, field.  
**arx**, *arcis, f.*; citadel.  
**ās**, *assis, m.*; as, a Roman coin; see 326.  
**ascendō**, *ere, scendī, scēsum*; to go up, mount, ascend.  
**Asia**, *ae, f.*; Asia.

**aspectus**, *ūs*, m.; sight, view, glance, look.

**asper**, *aspera*, *asperum*; rough, hard, harsh.

**at**, conj.; but, yet, on the other hand.

**Athēnae**, *ārum*, f. plur.; Athens.

**Athēniēnsis**, *is*, m.; an Athenian.

**atque**, **ac**, conj.; and.

**ātrium**, *īi*, n.; front court, hall; see 210 and 215.

**atrōx**, *ōcis*; savage, fierce, cruel.

**Attica**, *ae*, f.; Attica, a state in Greece.

**auctōritās**, *ātis*, f.; authority, influence.

**audācter**, adv.; desperately, boldly; *comparative*, *audācius*.

**audāx**, *ācis*; bold, daring.

**audiō**, *īre*, *īvī*, or *īi*, *ītum*; to hear, listen.

**audītor**, *ōris*, m.; hearer, listener.

**augeō**, *ēre*, *auxī*, *auctum*; to increase, extend.

**Augustus**, *ī*, m.; Augustus, first Roman emperor.

**Aulus**, *ī*, m.; Aulus, a Roman name.

**aureus**, *a*, *um*; golden, of gold.

**aurum**, *ī*, n.; gold.

**aut**, conj.; or; *aut . . . aut*, either . . . or.

**autem**, conj.; but, moreover, however.

**auxilium**, *īi*, n.; help, aid; *plur.*, *auxilia*, auxiliaries.

**avāritia**, *ae*, f.; greed, avarice.

**aveō**, *ēre*, —, —; to be well, fare well, be happy; *imperative*, *acē*, hail!

**a-vertō**, *ere*, *tī*, *sum*; to turn, turn away.

**avidē**, adv.; eagerly, greedily.

**avidus**, *a*, *um*; desirous, eager.

**avis**, *is*, f.; bird.

**avus**, *ī*, m.; grandfather.

## B

**barbarus**, *a*, *um*; foreign, strange, barbarous; as noun, *barbarī*, barbarians, savages.

**beātus**, *a*, *um*; happy.

**bellicōsus**, *a*, *um*; warlike.

**bellum**, *ī*, n.; war.

**bene**, adv.; well.

**beneficium**, *īi*, n.; favor, service, benefit.

**benīgnē**, adv.; kindly.

**benīgnus**, *a*, *um*; kind, obliging.

**bēstia**, *ae*, f.; beast, animal.

**bibliothēca**, *ae*, f.; library.

**Bibulus**, *ī*, m.; Bibulus, colleague of Caesar.

**blandimenta**, *ōrum*, n. plur.; caresses.

**bonus**, *a*, *um*; good.

**Bostonia**, *ae*, f.; Boston.

**Brennus**, *ī*, m.; Brennus, leader of the Gauls.

**brevī**, adv.; in a short time, soon.

**brevis**, *e*; short, brief.

**brevitās**, *ātis*, f.; shortness, brevity.

**breviter**, adv.; briefly.

**Britannī**, *ōrum*, m. plur.; the Britons, inhabitants of Great Britain.

**Brundisium**, *īi*, n.; Brundisium, a town of Italy.

**Brūtus**, *ī*, m.; Brutus, one of the conspirators against Caesar.

## C.

**cadō**, *ere*, *ccidī*, *cāsum*; to fall.

**caedēs**, *is*, f.; slaughter.

**caelō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; to engrave, carve.

**caelum**, *ī*, n.; sky, heaven.

**Caesar**, *aris*, m.; Caesar.

**calcar**, *āris*, n.; spur.

**calvitium**, *īi*, n.; baldness.

**calvus**, *a*, *um*; bald.

**Camillus**, *ī*, m.; Camillus, a Roman general.

**Campania**, *ae*, f.; Campania, a province of Italy.

**Campānus**, *a, um*; of Campania.  
**Campus**, *i, m.*; Campus Martius at Rome.  
**campus**, *ī, m.*; plain.  
**candēlabrum**, *ī, n.*; candlestick, candelabrum.  
**canis**, *is, m. and f.*; dog.  
**canō**, *ere, cecinī, cantum*; to sing, sound, play.  
**cantant**; (they) sing.  
**cantat**; (he) sings.  
**cantus**, *ūs, m.*; singing, song.  
**capio**, *ere, cepī, captum*; to take, capture.  
**Capitōlium**, *iī, n.*; Capitol, citadel of Rome.  
**captivus**, *ī, m.*; prisoner, captive.  
**Capua**, *ae, f.*; Capua, a city of Italy.  
**caput**, *capitis, n.*; head, capital.  
**carcer**, *eris, m.*; prison, jail.  
**carmen**, *carminis, n.*; song, verse, poem.  
**Carolus**, *ī, m.*; Charles.  
**carrus**, *ī, m.*; wagon.  
**Carthāginiēnsēs**, *ium, m. plur.*; the Carthaginians.  
**Carthāgō**, *Carthāginis, f.*; Carthage.  
**cārus**, *a, um*; dear, precious.  
**Cassius**, *iī, m.*; Cassius, one of the conspirators against Caesar.  
**castra**, *ōrum, n. plur.*; camp.  
**catēna**, *ae, f.*; chain, bond.  
**caterva**, *ae, f.*; crowd, throng, company.  
**Catō**, *ōnis, m.*; Cato, a noted Roman.  
**cauda**, *ae, f.*; tail.  
**causa**, *ae, f.*; cause, reason.  
**cavea**, *ae, f.*; cage, den.  
**celeber**, *bris, bre*; frequented, populous, celebrated.  
**celebrō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to honor, celebrate.  
**celer**, *celeris, celere*; quick, swift, fast, speedy.

**celeritās**, *ātis, f.*; swiftmess, quickness, speed.  
**celeriter**, *adv.*; quickly, swiftly, fast.  
**cēna**, *ae, f.*; feast, dinner.  
**centum**, *indecl.*; hundred.  
**Ceres**, *eris, f.*; Ceres, goddess of agriculture.  
**cernō**, *ere, crēvī, crētum*; to distinguish, see, perceive.  
**certāmen**, *minis, n.*; struggle, contest, race.  
**certē**, *adv.*; certainly, surely.  
**certus**, *a, um*; certain, fixed, permanent; *certiōrem facere*, to make more certain, inform.  
**cervus**, *ī, m.*; stag, deer.  
**cessō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to cease, stop.  
**cēterī**, *ae, a.*; the rest, remaining, others.  
**Christus**, *ī, m.*; Christ.  
**Cicerō**, *ōnis, m.*; Cicero, the famous orator.  
**cinis**, *cineris, m.*; ashes.  
**cingō**, *ere, cinxī, cinctum*; to surround, inclose.  
**Cinna**, *ae, m.*; Cinna, a family name.  
**circiter**, *adv.*; about.  
**circumdant**; (they) surround, collect about.  
**circus**, *ī, m.*; circus.  
**citerior**, *ius*; nearer, hither.  
**cīvicus**, *a, um*; of citizens, civic, civil.  
**cīvilis**, *e*; of citizens, civic, civil.  
**cīvis**, *is, m. and f.*; citizen.  
**cīvitās**, *ātis, f.*; state.  
**clādēs**, *is, f.*; disaster, defeat.  
**clāmor**, *ōris, m.*; shout, shouting, cry, noise.  
**clangor**, *ōris, m.*; sound, clang, noise.  
**clārus**, *a, um*; illustrious, famous.  
**clāssis**, *is, f.*; class, fleet, navy.  
**claudō**, *ere, clausī, clausum*; to shut, close.

**clēmēntia**, *ae, f.*; kindness, mercy.

**coepī**, *isse*; to begin.

**coetus**, *ūs, m.*; assemblage, company.

**cōgnōscō**, *ere, nōvī, nitum*; to know, recognize, ascertain.

**cōgō**, *ere, coēgī, coāctum*; to force, compel, drive.

**co-hortor**, *ārī, ātus sum*; to encourage, exhort.

**cō-iciō**, *ere, iēcī, iectum*; to throw, hurl.

**collēga**, *ae, m.*; associate, colleague.

**collis**, *is, m.*; hill.

**collocō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to place, station.

**colloquium**, *iī, n.*; dialogue, conversation.

**colōnus**, *ī, m.*; founder, colonist, settler.

**color**, *ōris, m.*; color.

**comes**, *itis, m. and f.*; companion, associate.

**comitor**, *ārī, ātus sum*; to attend, follow.

**commemorō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to mention, relate.

**com-mittō**, *ere, mīsī, missum*; to join, commit, intrust.

**commodum**, *ī, n.*; convenience, advantage.

**com-moveō**, *ēre, mōvī, mōtum*; to move, arouse, influence.

**commūnis**, *e*; common.

**com-parō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to prepare, make ready, fit out.

**com-pellō**, *ere, pulī, pulsum*; to drive, force, compel.

**cōm-pleō**, *ēre, plēvī, plētum*; to fill, make full, complete.

**complūrēs**, *a, or ia*; several, many.

**compositiō**, *ōnis, f.*; arrangement, agreement, compact.

**com-prehendō**, *ere, dī, sum*; to snatch, seize, catch, arrest.

**concilium**, *iī, n.*; meeting, assembly, council.

**concutiō**, *ere, cussī, cussum*; to shake, disturb.

**condiciō**, *ōnis, f.*; agreement, terms, condition.

**condiscipulus**, *ī, m.*; school-mate.

**con-dūcō**, *ere, dūxī, ductum*; to hire.

**cōn-ferō**, *ferre, tulī, collātum*; to gather, collect; *sē cōnferre*, to betake one's self.

**cōnferthus**, *a, um*; crowded, close, compact.

**cōnfestim**, *adv.*; at once, immediately.

**cōn-ficiō**, *ere, fecī, factum*; to accomplish, finish, weaken, wear out.

**cōn-fligō**, *ere, flīxī, flīctum*; to contend, fight.

**cōn-flō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to acquire, contract.

**cōn-fodiō**, *ere, fōdī, fossum*; to stab, pierce.

**cōn-fugiō**, *ere, fugī*; to flee, take refuge.

**con-gerō**, *ere, gessī, gestum*; to bring together, collect, bring.

**coniūrātus**, *ī, m.*; conspirator.

**con-iūrō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to form a conspiracy, to conspire.

**cōnor**, *ārī, ātus sum*; to try, attempt, undertake.

**con-scribō**, *ere, scripsī, scriptum*; to enroll, enlist.

**cōn-sequor**, *ī, secūtus sum*; to follow, pursue, obtain.

**Cōnsidius**, *iī, m.*; Considius, an officer in Caesar's army.

**cōnsilium**, *iī, n.*; plan, counsel, council, assembly.

**cōnspectus**, *ūs, m.*; sight, view.

**cōn-spiciō**, *ere, spēcī, spectum*; to get sight of, notice.

**cōnspirātiō**, *ōnis, f.*; plot, conspiracy.

**Cōstantīnus**, *ī*, m.; Constantine, a Roman emperor.

**cōn-sternō**, *ere, strāvī, strātum*; to strew, cover.

**cōn-stituō**, *ere, uī, ūtum*; to arrange, decide, determine, appoint.

**cōnstrātus**, *a, um*; strewed, covered.

**cōnsul**, *is*, m.; consul, a chief magistrate of the Roman Republic.

**cōnsulātus**, *ūs*, m.; office of consul, consulship.

**cōnsultus**, *ī*, m.; counselor.

**con-tendō**, *ere, dī, tum*; to struggle, strive, hasten.

**contentiō**, *ōnis*, f.; strife, quarrel.

**contentus**, *a, um*; satisfied, pleased.

**continenter**, adv.; continuously, without interruption.

**con-tineō**, *ēre, uī, tentum*; to bound, surround, restrain.

**cōntiō**, *ōnis*, f.; meeting, assembly.

**contrā**, prep. with Acc.; against, contrary to.

**con-trahō**, *ere, traxī, tractum*; to draw together, collect.

**contrārius**, *a, um*; opposite, contrary.

**con-veniō**, *īre, vēnī, ventum*; to come together, assemble.

**con-vertō**, *ere, tī, sum*; to turn, turn round.

**con-vocō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to call together, summon.

**cōpia**, *ae*, f.; abundance, plenty; plur., *cōpiae*, forces, troops.

**Corinthus**, *ī*, f.; Corinth.

**Cornēlia**, *ae*, f.; Cornelia, a Roman name.

**corōna**, *ae*, f.; wreath, garland, crown.

**corpus**, *corporis*, n.; body.

**cor-rigō**, *ere, rēxī, rēctum*; to improve, correct, set right.

**corvus**, *ī*, m.; raven.

**cotidiē**, adv.; daily, every day.

**crās**, adv.; to-morrow; *crās māne*, to-morrow morning.

**Crassus**, *ī*, m.; Crassus, a family name.

**creber**, *crebris, crebre*; frequent, numerous, repeated.

**crēdō**, *ere, didī, ditum*; to believe, trust.

**creō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to make, choose, elect.

**Croesus**, *ī*, m.; Croesus, King of Lydia.

**cruentus**, *a, um*; bloody.

**crux**, *crucis*, f.; gallows, cross.

**cum**, conj.; when, while, since, although.

**cum**, prep. with Abl.; with, in company with.

**cupiditās**, *ātis*, f.; desire, eagerness.

**cupiō**, *ere, ivī or iī, itum*; to desire, long for.

**cūr**, adv.; why? for what reason?

**cūra**, *ae*, f.; care, trouble.

**cūria**, *ae*, f.; senate, senate-house.

**cūrō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to care, take care, be careful.

**currus**, *ūs*, m.; chariot.

**cursus**, *ūs*, m.; course, running.

**cūstōdiō**, *īre, ivī or iī, itum*; to guard, defend.

**cūstōs**, *ōdis*, m.; keeper, guard, guardian.

**Cȳrus**, *ī*, m.; Cyrus, King of Persia.

## D

**dabunt**; (they) will give.

**dant**; (they) give.

**dantur**; (they) are given.

**Darēs**, *ēs*, m.; Darius, king of the Persians.

**dat**; (he) gives.

**Datis**, *is*, m.; Datis, a Persian general.

**datur**; (he) is given.

**dē**, prep. with Abl.; in regard to, concerning, about, from.

**dea**, *ae*, f.; goddess.

**dēbent**; (they) owe, ought.  
**dēbeō**, *ēre, uī, itum*; to owe, be under obligation.  
**dēbet**; (he) owes, ought.  
**dēbētur**; (it) is owed, is due.  
**dēbitum**, *ī, n.*; debt.  
**dē-cēdō**, *ere, cessī, cessum*; to go away, depart.  
**decem**, indecl.; ten.  
**December**, *bris, bre*; of December; *mēnsis December*, December.  
**decemplex**, *plīcis*; tenfold.  
**dē-cernō**, *ere, crēvī, crētum*; to decide, determine, resolve.  
**decimus**, *a, um*; tenth.  
**dēcrētum**, *ī, n.*; decree, vote, resolve.  
**decus**, *decoris, n.*; honor, glory, adornment.  
**dē-dicō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to dedicate, consecrate.  
**dēditio**, *ōnis, f.*; surrender.  
**dē-dūcō**, *ere, dūxī, ductum*; to lead off or away.  
**dē-fendō**, *ere, fendī, fēsum*; to defend, guard, protect.  
**dēficiť**; (it) fails, is wanting.  
**dēfōrmitās**, *ātis, f.*; defect, ugliness.  
**deinde**, adv.; then, next.  
**dēlectābit**; (it) will please, delight.  
**dēlectant**; (they) please, delight.  
**dēlectantur**; (they) are pleased, delighted.  
**dēlectat**; (he) pleases, delights.  
**dēlectātur**; (he) is pleased, delighted.  
**dēlectō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to please, delight.  
**dēlēō**, *ēre, ēvī, ētum*; to destroy.  
**delībērō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to liberate.  
**dēlictum**, *ī, n.*; fault, offense.  
**dē-mulceō**, *ēre, mulsi, mulsum*; to stroke, lick.  
**dē-negō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to deny, refuse.

**dēnsus**, *a, um*; thick, dense.  
**dē-scendō**, *ere, scendī, scēsum*; to go down, descend.  
**dē-stringō**, *ere, strinxī, strictum*; to unsheathe, draw.  
**dē-tegō**, *ere, texī, tectum*; to uncover, expose.  
**dē-tineō**, *ēre, uī, tentum*; to keep back, detain.  
**dē-trahō**, *ēre, traxī, tractum*; to pull off, take away.  
**deus**, *ī, m.*; god; see 372, note.  
**dextra**, *ae, f.*; right hand.  
**diadēma**, *ātis, n.*; royal crown, diadem.  
**Diāna**, *ae, f.*; Diana, goddess of the moon.  
**dīcit**; (he) speaks, talks, says, tells.  
**dīcō**, *ere, dixī, dictum*; to speak, talk, say, tell.  
**dictātor**, *ōris, m.*; dictator, a Roman magistrate.  
**dīcunt**; (they) speak, say, tell.  
**diēs**, *ēī, f.*; day; *dīes nātālis*, birthday.  
**difficilis**, *e*; difficult.  
**difficultās**, *ātis, f.*; difficulty.  
**dignitās**, *ātis, f.*; worth, merit, reputation, dignity.  
**dignus**, *a, um*; worthy, suitable, proper.  
**dīligēns**, *tis*; diligent, industrious.  
**dīliger**, adv.; diligently, industriously.  
**dīligentia**, *ae, f.*; diligence, industry.  
**dīmīcō**, *are, āvī, ātum*; to fight, contend.  
**dī-mittō**, *ere, misi, missum*; to send away, send off, release.  
**dī-ripiō**, *ere, ripuī, reptum*; to lay waste, spoil, plunder.  
**dis-cēdō**, *ere, cessī, cessum*; to leave, go away, depart.  
**disciplīna**, *ae, f.*; training, discipline.  
**discipulus**, *ī, m.*; learner, pupil, scholar.

**discō**, *ere, didicī*; to learn.  
**discrīmen**, *discrīmīnis*, n.; distance, interval.  
**disiciō**, *ere, iēcī, iectum*; to scatter, rout.  
**displiceō**, *ēre, uī, itum*; to displease, be displeasing.  
**dissimilis**, *e*; unlike, different, unsuited to.  
**distentus**, *a, um*; engaged, occupied, busy.  
**disturbō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to disturb.  
**dītissimus**; superlative of *dives*.  
**dīn**, adv.; a long time, long.  
**dīves**, *ītis*, rich, wealthy.  
**dīvidō**, *ere, vīsī, visum*; to divide, distribute.  
**dīvīnus**, *a, um*; divine.  
**dīvitiae**, *ārum*, f. plur.; riches, wealth.  
**dō**, *dare, dedī, datum*; to give.  
**doceō**, *ēre, uī, doctum*; to teach, instruct.  
**docilis**, *e*; docile, teachable.  
**doctus**, *a, um*; learned.  
**Dolabella**, *ae, m.*; Dolabella, son-in-law of Cicero.  
**domicilium**, *īi*, n.; home, abode.  
**dominus**, *ī, m.*; master, owner.  
**domō**, *āre, uī, itum*; to tame, subdue.  
**domus**, *ūs, f.*; house, home; for declension, see 209.  
**dōnō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to give as a present, present.  
**dōnum**, *ī, n.*; gift, present.  
**dormiō**, *īre, īvī or īī, itum*; to sleep.  
**Dracō**, *ōnis, m.*; Draco, Athenian lawgiver.  
**duae**, f. plur.; two.  
**dūbitō**, *āre āvī, ātum*; to doubt, hesitate.  
**dubium**, *īi, n.*; doubt.  
**dubius**, *a, um*; uncertain, doubtful.  
**ducentī**, *ae, a*; two hundred.

**dūcō**, *ere, dūxī, ductum*; to lead; *in matrīmōnium dūcere*, to lead into marriage, to marry.  
**dulcis**, *e*; sweet, pleasant.  
**dum**, conj.; while.  
**duo**, *ae, o*; two; see 381.  
**duodecim**; twelve.  
**dux**, *ducis, m.*; leader, commander.

## E

**Ē** or **ex**; from, out of, of; *ex hīs*, out of these, of these.  
**ecce**, adv.; behold! look!  
**ē-dō**, *ere, didī, ditum*; to give forth, announce, perform, exhibit.  
**edō**, *ere or esse, edī, ēsum*; to eat.  
**ē-dūcit**; (he) leads out.  
**ē-dūcō**, *ere, dūxī, ductum*; to lead out or from.  
**ē-dūcunt**; (they) lead out.  
**efficiō**, *ere, fēcī, fectum*; to cause, accomplish.  
**effundō**, *ere, fūdī, fūsum*; to pour out, scatter, squander, waste.  
**ego**; I; see 265.  
**ēgregiō**, adv.; remarkably, excellently.  
**ēgregius**, *a, um*; remarkable, excellent.  
**elephantus**, *ī, m.*; elephant.  
**Elisabētha**, *ae, f.*; Elizabeth, Queen of England.  
**ē-lūceō**, *ēre, lūxī, —*; to shine forth or out.  
**emō**, *ere, emī, emptum*; to buy.  
**ē-moveō**, *ēre, mōvī, mōtum*; to move out or away, remove.  
**en**, interjection; look! see!  
**enim**, conj.; for.  
**Ennius**, *īi, m.*; Ennius, a Roman poet.  
**eō**, *īre, īvī or īī, itum*; to go.  
**eō**; that; *eō tempore*, at that time.  
**eō**, adv.; there, in that place.  
**Ephesius**, *a, um*; of Ephesus, Ephesian.  
**epistula**, *ae*; letter, epistle.

**eques**, *equitis*, m.; horseman, trooper, knight; *plur.*, *equites*, horsemen, cavalry, knights.

**equester**, *tris*, *tre*; of cavalry, equestrian.

**equitant**; (they) ride.

**equitat**; (he) rides.

**equitatus**, *us*, m.; cavalry.

**equitō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; to ride.

**equis**, *i*, m.; horse.

**erant**; (they) were.

**erat**; (he) was.

**Eretria**, *ae*, f.; Eretria, a city on the island Euboea.

**errō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; to wander, roam about.

**ērudīō**, *īre*, *īvī* or *īī*, *ītum*; to educate, instruct, teach.

**ēruptiō**, *ōnis*, f.; breaking out, bursting forth, eruption.

**est**; (he) is.

**et**, conj.; and, also; *et—et*, both—and.

**etiam**, conj.; even, also.

**etsī**, conj.; although.

**Eurōpa**, *ae*, f.; Europe.

**ē-vādō**, *ere*, *vāsī*, *vāsum*; to go out, escape.

**ē-vertō**, *ere*, *tī*, *sum*; to overthrow, destroy.

**ē-vomō**, *ere*, *uī*, *ītum*; to belch forth, throw out.

**ex**, prep. with Abl.; from, out of, of; *ex hīs*, out of these, of these.

**exanimō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; to weaken, terrify; *exanimatus*, breathless, lifeless.

**ex-cēdō**, *ere*, *cessī*, *cessum*; to go away, depart.

**excelsus**, *a*, *um*; high, tall.

**ex-cipiō**, *ere*, *cēpī*, *ceptum*; to receive.

**ex-citō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; to call forth, arouse, awaken, increase.

**ex-clāmō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; to call out, cry aloud.

**exemplum**, *i*, n.; example, incident.

**ex-eo**, *īre*, *īvī* or *īī*, *ītum*; to go forth or out.

**exerceō**, *ēre*, *uī*, *ītum*; to exercise, practice, cultivate.

**exercitātiō**, *ōnis*, f.; practice, exercise, drill.

**exercitus**, *us*, m.; army.

**exiguus**, *a*, *um*; small, short.

**expediō**, *īre*, *īvī* or *īī*, *ītum*; to release, procure.

**expeditiō**, *ōnis*, f.; expedition, campaign.

**explōrātor**, *ōris*, m.; scout, spy.

**ex-pōnō**, *ere*, *posuī*, *positum*; to set forth, set on shore, land.

**ex-pūgnō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; to take by storm, capture.

**exquīrō**, *ere*, *quīsivī*, *quīsītum*; to search out, look for.

**exsiliō**, *īre*, *siluī*, *sultum*; to spring out, leap up, start up.

**expectant**; (they) expect, wait for.

**expectantur**; (they) are expected.

**expectat**; (he) expects, waits for.

**expectātur**; (he) is expected.

**ex-spectō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; to expect, wait for, await.

**ex-stinguō**, *ere*, *stinxi*, *stinctum*; to put out, quench, destroy.

**extemplō**, adv.; at once, immediately.

**ex-torqueō**, *ēre*, *torsi*, *tortum*; to wrest from, extort.

## F

**faber**, *fabrī*, m.; workman, smith, carpenter.

**fabricō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; to make, build.

**fābula**, *ae*, f.; story, tale, fable.

**facētus**, *a*, *um*; fine, witty, facetious.

**faciēs**, *ēī*, f.; form, look, face.

**facile**, adv.; easily, readily.

**facilis**, *e*; easy.

**faciō**, *ere, fecī, factum*; to do, make, perform, celebrate; *iter facere*, to make a journey, travel; *certiorem facere*, to make more certain, inform.

**facit**; (he) does, makes, performs, celebrates.

**faciunt**; (they) do, make, perform, celebrate.

**factum**, *ī, n.*; deed, act.

**fāgus**, *ī, f.*; beech-tree.

**falsus**, *a, um*; false, unfounded.

**familia**, *ae, f.*; family.

**farīna**, *ae, f.*; flour, meal.

**fatīgō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to weary, tire.

**faucēs**, *ium, f. plur.*; jaws, throat.

**febris**, *is, f.*; fever.

**Februārius**, *a, um*; of February.

**fēliciter**, *adv.*; successfully, prosperously; *fēliciter nāvīgāre*, to have a prosperous voyage.

**fēlix**, *icis*; happy, fortunate.

**fenestra**, *ae, f.*; window.

**fera**, *ae, f.*; wild beast, wild animal.

**ferē**, *adv.*; almost, nearly.

**fēriæ**, *ārum, f. plur.*; holidays.

**ferō**, *ferre, tulī, lātum*; to bear, carry, endure, cast (a vote), propose (a law); *aegrē ferre*, to bear with difficulty, be grieved at.

**ferrum**, *ī, n.*; iron, weapon, sword.

**fertilis**, *e*; fertile.

**ferus**, *a, um*; wild, savage.

**fessus**, *a, um*; wearied, tired, exhausted.

**fēstus**, *a, um*; festive, festal.

**fidēs**, *eī, f.*; trust, belief.

**fīdus**, *a, um*; faithful, trustworthy.

**fīlia**, *ae, f.*; daughter.

**fīlius**, *īī, m.*; son.

**fīniō**, *ire, īvī or īī, itum*; to end, put an end to, finish, bring to a close.

**fīnis**, *is, m.*; end, boundary, limit; *plur., fīnēs*, territory, district, land.

**fīō**, *fieri, factus sum*; to be made, become, take place.

**firmus**, *a, um*; strong, steady, steadfast, true.

**flagrō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to flame, burn, blaze, be excited.

**flamma**, *ae, f.*; flame, fire.

**flōrēō**, *ere, uī, —*; to flourish, bloom, be in bloom.

**flōrēns**, *entis*; flourishing, blooming, prosperous.

**Flōrentia**, *ae, f.*; Florence, a city of Italy.

**Flōrida**, *ae, f.*; Florida.

**flōs**, *flōris, m.*; flower.

**flūmen**, *flūminis, n.*; river, stream; *Taurī flūmen*, Bull Run.

**fluvius**, *īī, m.*; stream.

**fōns**, *fontis, m.*; fountain.

**fōrma**, *ae, f.*; figure, form, nature.

**fōrmōsus**, *a, um*; beautiful, handsome.

**fortasse**, *adv.*; perchance, perhaps.

**forte**, *adv.*; by chance, accidentally.

**fortis**, *e*; brave, valiant.

**fortiter**, *adv.*; bravely, valiantly.

**fortūna**, *ae, f.*; chance, fortune, success.

**forum**, *ī, n.*; forum, market-place.

**fossa**, *ae, f.*; ditch, trench.

**frāter**, *frātris, m.*; brother.

**Frederīcus**, *ī, m.*; Frederick.

**fremitus**, *ūs, m.*; loud noise, roar.

**frētus**, *a, um*; trusting, relying.

**frīgidus**, *a, um*; cold.

**frīgus**, *oris, n.*; cold.

**frondeō**, *ere, uī, —*; to put forth leaves, be in leaf.

**frūmentum**, *ī, n.*; corn, grain.

**fruor**, *ī, fructus sum*; to enjoy.

**frūstrā**, *adv.*; in vain.

**fuērunt**; (they) were.

**fuga**, *ae, f.*; flight.

**fugiō**, *ere, fugī, itum*; to flee, fly.

**fugō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to rout, put to flight.

**fuit**; (he) was.

**fulgor**, *ōris, m.*; brightness, gleam.

**Fulvius**, *īī*, m.; Fulvius, a Roman name.

**fūmus**, *ī*, m.; smoke.

**fundō**, *ere, fūdī, fūsum*; to pour, rout, put to flight.

**fundus**, *ī*, m.; farm, estate.

**fungor**, *ī, fūctus sum*; to perform, do, administer.

**fūr**, *fūris*, m.; thief.

**fūrtum**, *ī*, n.; theft.

## G

**Gāius**, *īī*, m.; Gaius, a Roman name.

**Gallī**, *ōrum*, m. plur.; the Gauls, the inhabitants of Gaul.

**Gallia**, *ae*, f.; Gaul, the province of Gaul.

**Gallicus**, *a, um*; Gallic, belonging to Gaul.

**gaudium**, *īī*, n.; joy.

**gemitus**, *ūs*, m.; groan.

**gemma**, *ae*, f.; jewel, precious stone, gem.

**gener**, *generī*, m.; son-in-law.

**genus**, *generis*, n.; race, kind, class.

**Germānī**, *ōrum*, m. plur.; the Gerinans.

**Germānia**, *ae*, f.; Germany.

**gerō**, *ere, gessī, gestum*; to carry on, wage, do, administer, wear.

**gestō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to carry, have, wear.

**gīguō**, *ere, genuī, genitum*; to give birth to, bear.

**gladius**, *īī*, m.; sword.

**glāns**, *glandis*, f.; acorn, acorn-shaped ball, missile, bullet.

**glōria**, *ae*, f.; glory, honor, fame.

**Gnaeus**, *ī*, m.; Gnaeus, a Roman name.

**Graecē**, adv.; in the Greek language, in Greek.

**Graecī**, *ōrum*, m. plur.; the Greeks.

**Graecia**, *ae*, f.; Greece.

**Graecus**, *a, um*; Greek, Grecian.

**grāmen**, *grāminis*, n.; grass.

**grātia**, *ae*, f.; gratitude, thanks.

**grātulātiō**, *ōnis*, f.; joy, rejoicing, congratulation.

**grātulor**, *ārī, ātus sum*; to rejoice, congratulate, give thanks.

**grātum**, *ī*, n.; favor.

**grātus**, *a, um*; acceptable, welcome, grateful.

**gravis**, *e*; heavy, weighty, severe.

**Guilielmus**, *ī*, m.; William.

## H

**habent**; (they) have, hold.

**habeō**, *ere, uī, itum*; to have, possess, regard.

**habet**; (he) has, holds.

**habitant**; (they) dwell, live.

**habitat**; (he) dwells, lives.

**habitō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to live, dwell, inhabit.

**habuit**; (he) had.

**Hadriānus**, *ī*, m.; Hadrian, a Roman emperor.

**haereō**, *ēre, haesī, haesum*; to stick, stick fast, be fixed.

**Hannibal**, *alis*, m.; Hannibal, a Carthaginian general.

**Helvétīī**, *ōrum*, m. plur.; Helvetians, a people of Gaul.

**Henricus**, *ī*, m.; Henry.

**Herculaneum**, *ī*, n.; Herculaneum, a town in Italy.

**hērēs**, *edis*, m. and f.; heir, heiress.

**herī**, adv.; yesterday; *herī māne*, yesterday morning.

**Hērodotus**, *ī*, m.; Herodotus, a Greek historian.

**hēsternus**, *a, um*; of yesterday; *hēsternus diēs*, yesterday.

**heus**, interjec.; ho! holloa!

**hiberna**, *ōrum*, n. plur.; winter-quarters.

**hīc**, *haec, hōc*; this; see 390.

**hīc**, adv.; here, in this place.

**hiems**, *hiemis*, f.; winter.

**hinc**, adv.; from this place, hence.

**historia**, *ae*, f.; history.

**hodiē**; to-day; *hodiē māne*, this morning.

**hodiernus**, *a, um*; of this day; *diēs hodiernus*, to-day.

**Homērus**, *ī, m.*; Homer, the famous Greek poet.

**homō**, *homīnis, m.*; man, a human being.

**honestus**, *a, um*; honorable.

**honor** or **honōs**, *ōris, m.*; honor, glory.

**honōrō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to honor, respect.

**hōra**, *ae, f.*; hour.

**Hortēnsius**, *īī, m.*; Hortensius, a Roman orator.

**hortor**, *ārī, ātus sum*; to urge, encourage, exhort.

**hortus**, *ī, m.*; garden, ground.

**hospes**, *hospitis, m. and f.*; guest, visitor.

**hospitium**, *īī, n.*; hospitality.

**hostis**, *īs, m. and f.*; enemy.

**hūc**, adv.; hither, to this place.

**hūmānus**, *a, um*; human.

## I

**iaceō**, *ēre, uī, itum*; to lie, lie low, lie on the ground, lie dead, be prostrate.

**iacet**; (he) is lying, lies.

**Iacōbus**, *ī, m.*; James.

**iactō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to throw, hurl.

**iam**, adv.; already, now.

**iānuā**, *ae, f.*; door, house-door.

**Iānuārius**, *a, um*; of January.

**ibī**, adv.; there, in that place.

**icō**, *ere, icī, ictum*; to strike, hit.

**idem**, *eadem, idem*; the same; see 390.

**ideō**, adv.; for that reason, therefore.

**idōneus**, *a, um*; fit, suitable.

**Idūs**, *īduum, f.*; the ides, middle of the month.

**igitur**, conj.; therefore, accordingly.

**ignāvus**, *a, um*; indolent, idle, lazy.

**ignis**, *īs, m.*; fire.

**ignōtus**, *a, um*; unknown.

**ilicō**, adv.; immediately, at once.

**ille**, *illa, illud*; that, that one, he; see 390.

**illīc**, adv.; there, in that place.

**iuver**, *imbris, m.*; rain, storm.

**immō**, adv.; nay, on the contrary.

**impedīmenta**, *ōrum, n. plur.*; baggage.

**impediō**, *īre, īvī or īī, itum*; to hinder, detain, check.

**impellō**, *ere, pulī, pulsum*; to drive, move, urge.

**imperātor**, *ōris, m.*; commander, general, emperor.

**imperfectus**, *a, um*; unfinished; incomplete.

**imperītus**, *a, um*; unskillful, ignorant, inexperienced.

**imperium**, *īī, n.*; command, empire, reign.

**imperō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to command, order, levy.

**impetrō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to get, obtain.

**impetus**, *ūs, m.*; attack, charge.

**impōuō**, *ere, posuī, positum*; to set, place upon, impose.

**improbus**, *a, um*; wicked, unjust.

**imprōvīsus**, *a, um*; unforeseen; *dē imprōvīsō*, unexpectedly, suddenly.

**impudēns**, *entis*; shameless, impudent, saucy.

**in**, prep. with Acc., Abl.; (1) *with Acc.*, into, to; (2) *with Abl.*, in, within, on.

**incendium**, *īī, n.*; fire, conflagration.

**in-cendō**, *ere, cendi, censum*; to set on fire, burn.

**incertus**, *a, um*; hesitating, undecided, doubtful.

**incidō**, *ere, cidī*; to happen, meet, fall into, fall in with.

**in-citō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to urge on, spur.

**incola**, *ae, m.*; inhabitant.

**in-colō**, *ere, coluī, cultum*; to dwell in, live.

**incrēdibilis**, *e*; incredible, extraordinary.

**inde**, *adv.*; from that place, then.

**India**, *ae, f.*; India.

**Indiānī**, *ōrum, m. plur.*; Indians.

**indigeō**, *ēre, uī*; with Abl., to need, want.

**indignus**, *a, um*: unworthy.

**indulgeō**, *ēre, dulsī, dultum*; to indulge, be indulgent.

**induō**, *ere, uī, ūtum*; to clothe, dress, deck.

**industria**, *ae, f.*; diligence, industry; *dē industriā*, on purpose.

**industrius**, *a, um*; diligent, industrious.

**in-eō**, *īre, īvī or īī, itum*: to go into, enter.

**infēlix**, *īcis*; unhappy, unfortunate.

**in-flō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to blow, inflate.

**ingēns**, *entis*; great, huge, vast.

**ingrātus**, *a, um*; ungrateful.

**in-gredior**, *ī, gressus sum*; to advance, march.

**inimicus**, *a, um*; unfriendly, hostile.

**inīquus**, *a, um*; unjust.

**iniūria**, *ae, f.*; wrong, injury.

**in-uītor**, *ī, nīxus sum*; to lean upon, support one's self on.

**inopia**, *ae, f.*; want, lack.

**inquit**, present and perfect; he says or says he; he said or said he.

**in-ruō**, *ere, uī*; to rush into.

**insidiae**, *ārum, f. plur.*; plot, stratagem; *ex insidiis*, by stratagem, by artifice.

**insigne**, *is, n.*; badge, emblem; *insigne rēgium*, emblem of royalty.

**insignis**, *e*; distinguished, remarkable, fine.

**insolenter**, *adv.*; haughtily, insolently.

**instat**; (he) is at hand, pursues.

**instigō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to goad, stir up.

**instituō**, *ere, uī, ūtum*; to teach.

**in-stō**, *āre, stitī, statum*; to pursue, press upon.

**instruit**; (he) draws up, arranges.

**in-struō**, *ere, ūvī, ūctum*; to draw up, arrange.

**instruunt**; (they) draw up, arrange.

**insula**, *ae, f.*; island.

**integer**, *gra, grum*; sound, fresh, whole.

**intelligō**, *ere, ēvī, ēctum*: to know, understand.

**inter**, *prep.* with Acc.; between, among.

**inter-cipiō**, *ere, cēpī, ceptum*; to cut off, intercept.

**interdiū**, *adv.*; in the day-time, by day.

**interdam**, *adv.*; sometimes.

**intereā**, *adv.*; meanwhile.

**inter-ficiō**, *ere, fēcī, fectum*; to kill.

**interim**, *adv.*; meanwhile.

**inter-mittō**, *ere, misī, missum*; to omit, interrupt, pass, elapse.

**inter-rogō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to ask, question.

**intrat**; (he) enters.

**intrō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to go into, enter.

**intrō-dūcō**, *ere, dūxī, ductum*; to bring in, admit, conduct within.

**intus**, *adv.*; within, inside.

**in-vehō**, *ere, vēcī, vēctum*; to carry.

**invītō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to invite.

**iocus**, *ī, m.—plur., ioca, ōrum, n.*; jest, joke.

**ipse**, *ipsa, ipsum*; self, himself, etc.; see 390.

**is**, *ea, id*; he, this one, that one, that; see 390.

**ita**, adv.; thus, so.

**Italia**, *ae, f.*; Italy.

**itaque**, conj.; and so, accordingly.

**item**, adv.; likewise, besides.

**iter**, *itineris, n.*; journey, road, march; *iter facere*, to make a journey, travel.

**iterum**, adv.; again, a second time.

**iubeō**, *ēre, iussī, iussum*; to order.

**iūcundus**, *a, um*; pleasing, agreeable, delightful, interesting.

**iūdex**, *iūdicis, m.*; judge.

**iūdicō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to judge, think.

**iugum**, *ī, n.*; yoke, ridge.

**Iūlia**, *ae, f.*; Julia.

**Iūlius**, *īī, m.*; Julius, a family name.

**iungō**, *ere, iūnxī, iūctum*; to join.

**Iūnō**, *ōnis, f.*; Juno, queen of the gods.

**Iuppiter**, *Iovis, m.*; Jupiter, king of the gods.

**iūs**, *iūris, n.*; right, justice, law; *iūris cōsultus*, counselor-at-law.

**iussū**, abl. sing., *m.*; by the command.

**iūstitia**, *ae, f.*; justice.

**iūstus**, *a, um*; just.

**iuvenis**, *is, m.*; young man, youth.

**iuvō**, *āre, iūvī, iūtum*; to help, aid.

## L

**Labiēnus**, *ī, m.*; Labienus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**labor**, *ōris, m.*; labor, toil, exertion.

**labōrō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to toil, labor, work.

**Lacedaemōn**, *ōnis, f.*; Lacedaemon, Sparta.

**Lacedaemoniī**, *ōrum, m. plur.*; Lacedaemonians, Spartans.

**lacerō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to mangle, wound.

**lacus**, *ūs, m.*; lake, pond.

**laetē**, adv.; joyfully, gladly.

**laetitia**, *ae, f.*; joy, gladness.

**laetus**, *a, um*; joyful, glad.

**lapis**, *lapidis, m.*; stone.

**latebra**, *ae, f.*; hiding-place, lurking-place, retreat; often plural.

**Latīnē**, adv.; in the Latin language, in Latin.

**Latīnus**, *a, um*; Latin.

**latrō**, *ōnis, m.*; robber, brigand.

**lātus**, *a, um*; broad, wide.

**laudant**; (they) praise.

**laudantur**; (they) are praised.

**laudat**; (he) praises.

**laudātur**; (he) is praised.

**laudō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to praise, laud, extol.

**laurea**, *ae, f.*; laurel, laurel crown, laurel wreath.

**laurus**, *ī, f.*; laurel-tree, laurel.

**laus**, *laudis, f.*; praise, commendation.

**lavantur**; (they) are bathing.

**Lāvīnia**, *ae, f.*; Lavinia, a Roman name.

**lēgātus**, *ī, m.*; ambassador, lieutenant.

**legiō**, *ōnis, f.*; a body of soldiers, legion.

**legit**; (he) reads.

**legitur**; (it) is read.

**legō**, *ere, legī, lectum*; to read.

**legunt**; (they) read.

**leguntur**; (they) are read.

**lēnis**, *e*; smooth, soft, gentle.

**lēniter**, adv.; softly, gently.

**leō**, *ōnis, m.*; lion.

**levis**, *e*; light, slight, trivial.

**levō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to lighten, relieve, ease.

**lēx**, *lēgis, f.*; law.

**libenter**, adv.; willingly, gladly.

**liber**, *libera, liberum*; free.

**liber**, *librī, m.*; book.

**liberalitās, ātis, f. ;** liberality, generosity.

**liberat ;** (he) liberates, frees.

**liberē, adv. ;** freely.

**liberī, ōrum, m. plur. ;** children.

**liberō, āre, āvī, ātum ;** to free, liberate, set free.

**libertās, ātis, f. ;** freedom, liberty.

**licet, ēre, licuit, and licitum est,** impersonal ; it is allowed, permitted, is lawful.

**lignārius, īī, m. ;** carpenter.

**Lingonēs, um, m. plur. ;** Lingones, a people of Gaul.

**lingua, ae, f. ;** tongue, language.

**Liscus, ī, m. ;** Liscus, a leader of the Aeduans.

**littera, ae, f. ;** letter (of the alphabet) ; *plur.*, letter, epistle.

**litus, oris, n. ;** sea-shore, beach.

**locus, ī, m.—*plur.*, loca, ōrum, n. ;** place.

**longē, adv. ;** at a distance, far.

**longus, a, um ;** long.

**loquor, ī, locūtus sum ;** to speak, talk, say.

**lōrum, ī, n. ;** reins, strap.

**lūbricus, a, um ;** slippery.

**lucerna, ae, f. ;** lamp.

**Lūcius, īī, m. ;** Lucius, a Roman name.

**lucrum, ī, n. ;** profit, gain.

**lūcus, ī, m. ;** grove, sacred grove.

**lūdō, ere, sī, sum ;** to play.

**lūdus, ī, m. ;** game, play.

**lūna, ae, f. ;** moon.

**lutum, ī, n. ;** mud.

**lūx, lūcis, f. ;** light, daylight.

**Lydī, ōrum, m. plur. ;** the Lydians, people of Lydia.

## M

**maculō, āre, āvī, ātum ;** to spot, soil.

**Madisōnius, a, um ;** of Madison, Madison.

**magis, adv. ;** more, in a higher degree, rather.

**magister, trī, m. ;** master, teacher.  
**magistrātus, ūs, m. ;** magistrate, public officer.

**Magius, īī, m. ;** Magius.

**māgnificē, adv. ;** magnificently, splendidly.

**māgnificus, a, um ;** magnificent, splendid.

**māgnitūdō, tūdinis, f. ;** greatness.

**māgnus, a, um ;** great, large.

**māior, ōris, compar. of māgnus ;** greater, larger.

**mālō, malle, mālui ;** to choose rather, prefer.

**mālum, ī, n. ;** apple.

**mālus, ī, f. ;** apple-tree.

**malus, a, um ;** bad, vicious.

**mandat ;** (he) commits, intrusts.

**mandō, āre, āvī, ātum ;** to commit, intrust.

**māne, adv. ;** in the morning, early ; *bene māne*, very early.

**maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūm ;** to stay, remain.

**manipulus, ī, m. ;** handful, company, maniple.

**manus, ūs, f. ;** hand, band, company, force.

**Marathōn, ōnis, f. ;** Marathon, a plain and a town in Greece.

**Marathōnius, a, um ;** of Marathon.

**Mārcus, ī, m. ;** Marcus, a Roman name.

**mare, maris, n. ;** sea.

**Mārtius, a, um ;** of March.

**matara, ae, f. ;** a javelin, lance.

**māter, mātris, f. ;** mother.

**mātrimōnium, īī, n. ;** marriage ; *in mātrimōnium dūcere*, to marry.

**māximē, adv. ;** exceedingly, very much.

**māximus, a, um ;** superl. of *māgnus* ; greatest, largest, most important.

**mē, Acc. of ego ;** me.

**medicīna, ae, f. ;** medicine.

**medicus, ī, m. ;** physician.

**medius, a, um ;** middle.

**melior**, *ōris*, compar. of *bonus*; better.

**melius**, adv., compar. of *bene*; better.

**membrum**, *ī*, n.; part, portion.

**memoria**, *ae*, f.; memory, recollection.

**mēnsis**, *īs*, m.; month.

**mercātor**, *ōris*, m.; merchant, trader.

**mercēs**, *cēdis*, f.; reward, pay, wages.

**Mercurius**, *iī*, m.; Mercury, messenger of the gods.

**merent**; (they) deserve, earn.

**mereō**, *ēre, uī, itum*; to deserve, merit, earn.

**mereor**, *ēvī, meritum sum, deponent*; to deserve, merit.

**meret**; (he) deserves, earns.

**mergō**, *ere, mersī, mersum*; to sink.

**merīdiānus**, *a, um*; of mid-day, of noon.

**metus**, *ūs*, m.; fear.

**meus**, *a, um*; my, mine; voc. sing. m., *mī*.

**mīles**, *mīlītis*, m.; soldier.

**Mīlētus**, *ī*, f.; Miletus, a city of Asia Minor.

**mīlia**, *iūm*, n. plur.; thousands.

**mīliēs**; a thousand times.

**mīlitāris**, *e*, military; *rēs mīlitāris*, military affairs, military system, military service.

**mīlle**, indecl.; thousand; *mīlle passuum*, a thousand paces, a mile.

**Miltiadēs**, *īs*, m.; Miltiades, a Grecian general.

**Minerva**, *ae*, f.; Minerva, goddess of wisdom.

**minimē**, adv.; least of all, not at all.

**minor**, *ōris*, compar. of *parvus*; less.

**minor**, *ārī, ātus sum*; to threaten.

**minuō**, *ere, uī, ūtum*; to lessen, diminish.

**mīrābilis**, *e*; wonderful, remarkable.

**mīror**, *ārī, ātus sum*; to wonder at, admire.

**mīrus**, *a, um*; strange, wonderful.

**miser**, *mīsera, mīserum*; wretched, unhappy.

**miseria**, *ae*, f.; wretchedness, misery.

**mittō**, *ere, mīsī, missum*; to send.

**modestus**, *a, um*; moderate, modest, gentle.

**modo**, adv.; just now, now; *modo . . . modo*, now . . . now, sometimes . . . sometimes.

**molestus**, *a, um*; troublesome, annoying.

**mollis**, *e*; soft, mild, easy.

**moneō**, *ere, uī, itum*; to advise.

**monīle**, *is*, n.; necklace, collar.

**mōns**, *montis*, m.; mountain.

**mōnstrant**; (they) show, point out.

**mōnstrantur**; (they) are shown, pointed out.

**mōnstrat**; (he) shows, points out.

**mōnstrātur**; (he) is shown, pointed out.

**mōnstrō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to show, point out.

**monumentum**, *ī*, n.; monument, memorial.

**mora**, *ae*, f.; delay.

**morbus**, *ī*, m.; disease, sickness.

**moriōr**, *ī, mortuus sum*; to die.

**moror**, *ārī, ātus sum*; to delay, tarry.

**mors**, *mortis*, f.; death.

**morsus**, *ūs*, m.; bite.

**mortuus**, *a, um*; dead.

**mōs**, *mōris*, m.; custom; *plur.*, *mōrēs*, customs, manners, character.

**mōtus**, *ūs*, m.; motion, movement.

**moveō**, *ēre, mōvī, mōtum*; to move.

**mox**, adv.; presently, soon.

**mulier**, *mulieris*, f.; woman.

**multa**, *ae*, f.; penalty, fine.

**multitūdō**, *tūdinis*, f. ; multitude, great number.

**multō**, adv. ; much, by much.

**multum**, adv. ; much.

**multus**, *a, um* ; much, many.

**mūniō**, *ire, ivi* or *ii, itum* ; to fortify.

**mūrālis**, *e* ; of a wall, mural.

**mūrus**, *i, m.* ; wall.

**mūtō**, *āre, avi, atum* ; to change, alter.

## N

**Naevius**, *ii, m.* ; Naevius, a family name.

**nam**, conj. ; for.

**nanciscor**, *i, nactus sum* ; to obtain, find.

**nārrant** ; (they) tell, relate.

**nārrantur** ; (they) are told, related.

**nārrat** ; (he) tells, relates.

**nārrātur** ; (it) is told, narrated.

**nārrō**, *āre, avi, atum* ; to tell, narrate, relate.

**nāscor**, *i, natus sum* ; to be born.

**Nāsica**, *ae, m.* ; Nasica, a Roman name.

**nātālis**, *e* ; of birth, natal ; *dies nātālis*, birthday.

**natant** ; (they) swim.

**natat** ; (he) swims.

**natō**, *āre, avi, atum* ; to swim, float.

**nātūra**, *ae, f.* ; nature.

**nauta**, *ae, m.* ; sailor.

**nāvālis**, *e* ; pertaining to a ship, naval.

**nāvigō**, *āre, avi, atum* ; to sail, cruise ; *fēliciter nāvigāre*, to have a prosperous voyage.

**nāvis**, *is, f.* ; ship ; *nāvis longa*, long ship, ship of war.

**nē**, adv. and conj. with subj. ; not, that not, lest.

**ne**, *enclitic* ; see 95.

**nebulō**, *ōnis, m.* ; idler, scamp.

**nec**, conj. ; nor, and not ; *nec . . . nec*, neither . . . nor.

**necessāriō**, adv. ; unavoidably, necessarily.

**necesse**, neut. adj. ; necessary.

**necō**, *āre, avi, atum* ; to kill, put to death.

**nefāriē**, adv. ; abominably, wickedly.

**negant** ; (they) deny, refuse.

**negat** ; (he) denies, refuses.

**negō**, *āre, avi, atum* ; to deny, refuse.

**nēmō**, *nēmīnī, nēmīnem*, m. and f. ; no one, nobody.

**nepōs**, *ōtis, m.* ; grandson.

**neque**, conj. ; nor, and not.

**nē-sciō**, *ire, ivi* or *ii* ; not to know, to be ignorant.

**nēve**, conj. ; and not, nor.

**niger**, *nigra, nigrum* ; black, dark.

**nihil**, indecl. ; nothing.

**nisi**, conj. ; if not, unless, except.

**nō**, *nāre, nāvī* ; to swim, float.

**nōbilis**, *e* ; high-born, noble, famous ; *plur., nōbiles*, the nobles.

**noctū**, adv. ; by night, at night.

**nōlī** ; be unwilling ; *nōlī intrāre*, do not enter.

**nōlō**, *nōlle, nōlū* ; not to wish, to be unwilling.

**nōmen**, *nōmīnis, n.* ; name.

**nōminō**, *āre, avi, atum* ; to name, give a name,

**nōn**, adv. ; not.

**nōndum** ; adv. ; not yet.

**nōn-ue** ; not ? See 95.

**nōn-nūllus**, *a, um* ; some, several.

**nōn-nunquam**, adv. ; sometimes.

**noster**, *nostra, nostrum* ; our.

**nōtus**, *a, um* ; known, well known.

**novem** ; nine ; see 382.

**novus**, *a, um* ; new.

**nox**, *noctis, f.* ; night.

**nūbēs**, *is, f.* ; cloud.

**nūdō**, *āre, avi, atum* ; to lay bare, expose, uncover.

**nūlla**, f. sing. ; not any, no.

**nūllus**, *a, um* ; not any, no. See 378.

**num**, interrog. particle; see 95.

**Numa Pompilius**, *Numae Pompiliū*, m.; Numa Pompilius, a Roman king.

**Numerius**, *ii*; Numerius.

**numerō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to count, enumerate, count out, pay.

**numerus**, *i*, m.; number.

**nunc**, adv.; now.

**nanquam**, adv.; never.

**nūntiō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to report, announce, make known.

**nūntius**, *ii*, m.; messenger, message.

**nūper**, adv.; recently, lately.

**nūtō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to nod, shake.

## O

**Ō**, interjection; O! oh!

**ob-iciō**, *ere, icēi, iectum*; to throw before, throw up.

**oblīvīscor**, *i*, *litus sum*; to forget.

**obnoxius**, *a, um*; liable, subject to.

**obruō**, *ere, uī, utum*; to overwhelm, cover.

**obses**, *idis*, m. and f.; hostage.

**ob-sideō**, *ere, sedī, sessum*; to besiege, blockade.

**ob-tineō**, *ere, uī, tentum*; to acquire, obtain.

**obtrectātor**, *ōris*, m.; traducer, slanderer, enemy.

**occidō**, *ere, cīdī, cīsum*; to strike down, cut down, kill.

**occīsus**, *a, um*, partic.; slain; *plur.*, *occīsī*, the slain.

**occulō**, *ere, uī, tum*; to hide, conceal.

**occupant**; (they) take possession of, seize.

**occupat**; (he) takes possession of, seizes.

**occupō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to take possession of, seize, occupy.

**occurrō**, *ere, currī, cursum*; to run up, hasten toward, meet.

**Octāviānus**, *i*, m.; Octavianus, afterward Emperor Augustus.

**oculus**, *i*, m.; eye.

**odor**, *ōris*, m.; odor.

**of-fendō**, *ere, fendī, fēsum*; to offend, vex, displease.

**of-ferō**, *ferre, ob-tulī, ob-lātum*; to bring before, to offer.

**officium**, *ii*, n.; service, duty.

**oleum**, *i*, n.; oil.

**ōlim**, adv.; formerly, once upon a time.

**o-mittō**, *ere, mīsi, missum*; to leave out, omit.

**omnis**, *e*; all, every.

**onus**, *oneris*, n.; burden, load.

**opera**, *ae*, f.; work, service, aid.

**operārius**, *ii*, m.; laborer, workman.

**operiō**, *ire, uī, opertum*; to cover; *opertus*, covered.

**oppidum**, *i*, n.; town, city.

**op-primō**, *ere, pressī, pressum*; to take by surprise, press hard, oppress, overwhelm.

**op-pūgnō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to attack, assail, storm.

(**ops**), *opis*, f.; help, aid.

**optimē**, superl. of *bene*; most excellently, best.

**optimus**, superl. of *bonus*; best.

**opulentus**, *a, um*; rich, wealthy.

**opus**, *operis*, n.; work, need, want.

**ōrātiō**, *ōnis*, f.; oration, speech.

**ōrātor**, *ōris*, m.; orator.

**orbis**, *is*, m.; ring, circle, circuit; *orbis terrārum*, circle of the lands, the world.

**ōrnāmentum**, *i*, n.; adornment, jewel, trinket.

**ōrnant**; (they) adorn, decorate, furnish.

**ōrnantur**; (they) are adorned, decorated, furnished.

**ōrnat**; (he) adorns, decorates, furnishes.

**ōrnātur**; (he) is adorned, decorated, furnished.

**ōrnātus**, *a, um*; equipped, adorned.

**ōrnō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to adorn, decorate, furnish.

**ōrō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to ask, beg, beseech.

**ōs**, *ōris*, *n.*; mouth, face.

**ostendō**, *ere, dī, tum*; to show.

**ostium**, *ī, n.*; door.

**ostrum**, *ī, n.*; purple, purple dress.

**ōtiōsus**, *a, um*; unoccupied, idle.

**ōtium**, *ī, n.*; rest, leisure.

## P

**paene**, *adv.*; almost, nearly.

**pallium**, *ī, n.*; cloak.

**Pantheum**, *ī, n.*; Pantheon, a temple at Rome.

**par**, *paris*; equal, like.

**parcus**, *a, um*; sparing.

**parēns**, *parentis*, *m.* and *f.*; parent.

**pāreō**, *ēre, uī, —*; to obey, be obedient, be subject.

**pariēs**, *parietis*, *m.*; wall (as of a house).

**pariō**, *ere, peperī, partum*; to bring forth, produce, gain.

**pariter**, *adv.*; equally, alike.

**parō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to prepare, make ready.

**pars**, *partis*, *f.*; part, party, direction.

**parvus**, *a, um*; small, little.

**passer**, *passeris*, *m.*; sparrow.

**passus**, *ūs, m.*; pace; *mille passuum*, a thousand paces, a mile.

**pāstor**, *ōris*, *m.*; shepherd.

**pater**, *patris*, *m.*; father.

**patiēns**, *entis*; enduring, patient.

**patria**, *ae, f.*; one's country, native land.

**patrimōnium**, *ī, n.*; paternal estate, inheritance, property left by one's father.

**paucī**, *ae, a.*; few.

**paulātim**, *adv.*; little by little, gradually.

**paulō**, *adv.*; a little, somewhat.

**paulus**, *a, um*; little, small.

**pauper**, *pauperis*; poor.

**pāx**, *pācis*, *f.*; peace.

**pecūnia**, *ae, f.*; money, property.

**pecus**, *oris*, *n.*; cattle.

**pedes**, *peditis*, *m.*; foot-soldier; *pedītēs*, foot-soldiers, infantry.

**pedester**, *tra, trum*; of infantry, pedestrian.

**per**, *prep.* with *acc.*; through, by, during.

**perbrevis**, *e*; very short, very brief.

**percussor**, *ōris*, *m.*; murderer, assassin.

**per-dō**, *ere, didī, ditum*; to lose.

**per-ficiō**, *ere, fecī, fectum*; to finish, perfect.

**per-fringō**, *ere, frēgī, frāctum*; to break through.

**Periclēs**, *īs, m.*; Pericles, a famous Athenian.

**periculōsus**, *a, um*; dangerous, perilous.

**periculum**, *ī, n.*; danger, peril.

**perītus**, *a, um*; practiced, skillful.

**per-moveō**, *ēre, movī, mōtum*; to move deeply, rouse, influence.

**per-ōrō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to speak at length, close, finish.

**per-petior**, *ī, pessus sum*; to bear, suffer, be patient.

**perpetrō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to complete, commit.

**perpetuō**, *adv.*; constantly, forever.

**perpetuus**, *a, um*; entire, perpetual; *in perpetuum*, perpetual, forever.

**Persae**, *ārum, m.* plur.; the Persians.

**persaepe**, *adv.*; very often.

**per-sequor**, *ī, secūtus sum*; to follow, pursue, persecute.

**per-terreō**, *ēre, uī, itum*; to terrify greatly.

**perturbātiō**, *ōnis, f.*; confusion, disturbance.

**per-veniō**, *īre, vēnī, ventum*; to arrive, reach.

**pēs**, *pedis, m.*; foot.

**petō**, *ere, petivī* or *petiī, petitum*; to seek, desire, ask for.

**petunt**; (they) seek.

**phalanx**, *langis, f.*; battalion, phalanx.

**Pharsālicus**, *a, um*; of Pharsalus, Pharsalian.

**Phīdippus**, *ī, m.*; Phidippus.

**Philadelphia**, *ae, f.*; Philadelphia.

**pīca**, *ae, f.*; magpie.

**pīctus**, *a, um*; painted.

**pīla**, *ae, f.*; ball.

**pīlum**, *ī, n.*; javelin.

**pinguis**, *e*; fat, rich.

**pīnus**, *ūs* and *ī, f.*; pine-tree.

**pīrāta**, *ae, m.*; sea-robber, pirate.

**pīrum**, *ī, n.*; pear.

**pirus**, *ī, f.*; pear-tree.

**piscis**, *īs, m.*; fish.

**Pius**, *īī, m.*; Pius, a title of the Emperor Titus Antoninus.

**placeō**, *ēre, uī, itum*; to please, be pleasing.

**placidē**, *adv.*; gently, quietly.

**plāga**, *ae, f.*; blow, cut, wound.

**Plataeēnsēs**, *ium, m. plur.*; the Plataeans.

**platea**, *ae, f.*; street, avenue.

**plaudō**, *ere, sī, sum*; to applaud, give applause.

**plēbs**, *plēbis, f.*; the common people.

**plēnus**, *a, um*; full, plump.

**plērumque**, *adv.*; generally.

**Plinius**, *īī, m.*; Pliny, a Roman writer.

**plūrimus**, *a, um*, superl. of *multus*; very many.

**plūs**, *plūris*, compar. of *multus*; more, many, several.

**plūs**, *adv.*; more.

**poena**, *ae, f.*; satisfaction, punishment, penalty; *poenam dat*, (he) suffers punishment.

**Poenus**, *ī, m.*; a Carthaginian.

**poēta**, *ae, m.*; poet.

**pompa**, *ae, f.*; procession.

**Pompēiī**, *ōrum, m. plur.*; Pompeii, ancient city in Italy.

**Pompēius**, *īī, m.*; Pompey, Gnaeus Pompey.

**Pompilius**, *īī, m.*; Pompilius, Numa Pompilius, a Roman king.

**pondus**, *ponderis, n.*; weight, mass, amount.

**pōnō**, *ere, posuī, positum*; to place.

**pōns**, *pontis, m.*; bridge.

**populus**, *ī, m.*; people, tribe, nation.

**porrigō**, *ere, rēxī, rēctum*; to stretch out, hold forth.

**porta**, *ae, f.*; gate, door.

**portant**; (they) carry.

**portat**; (he) carries.

**porticus**, *ūs, m.*; gallery, portico.

**portō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to carry.

**portus**, *ūs, m.*; harbor, port.

**possum**, *posse, potuī*; to be able; *possum*, I can.

**post**, prep. with Acc.; after, behind.

**post**, *adv.*; after, afterward.

**postea**, *adv.*; afterward.

**posterus**, *a, um*; following, next.

**posthāc**; after this, henceforth.

**postquam**, *conj.*; after.

**postrīdiē**, *adv.*; on the following day.

**postulant**; (they) ask, demand.

**postulat**; (he) asks, demands.

**postulātum**, *ī, n.*; demand.

**postulō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to demand, ask.

**potestās**, *ātis, f.*; power.

**potior**, *īvī, itus sum*; to acquire, obtain, secure.

**praebēō**, *ēre, uī, itum*; to offer, furnish, give.

**praeceptor**, *ōris*, m.; instructor, preceptor.

**praeclārus**, *a, um*; very renowned, very famous.

**praeda**, *ae, f.*; booty, plunder.

**praedō**, *ōnis*, m.; plunderer, robber.

**praeficiō**, *ere, fēcī, fectum*; to set over, place in command.

(**prae-for**), *prae-fārī, prae-fātus sum*; to say beforehand, preface.

**praemium**, *iī, n.*; reward, premium, prize.

**praesēns**, *sentis*; present, at hand.

**praestābilis**, *e*; excellent; *praestābilior*, preferable.

**prae-stō**, *āre, stitī, stitum*; to furnish, give.

**prae-sum**, *esse, fuī*; to be in command, be over.

**praeter**, prep. with Acc.; except, besides.

**praetereā**, adv.; besides, in addition.

**praetor**, *ōris*, m.; praetor, a Roman magistrate.

**prae-veniō**, *āre, vēnī, ventum*; to precede, outstrip.

**prātum**, *ī, n.*; meadow.

**pretiōsus**, *a, um*; valuable, precious, costly.

**pretium**, *iī, n.*; price, value.

**prīmō**, adv.; at first.

**primum**, adv.; first.

**prīmus**, *a, um*; first.

**prīnceps**, *cipis*, m.; chieftain, leader, prince.

**prō**, prep. with Abl.; for, in behalf of.

**prō-cēdō**, *ere, cessī, cessum*; to go forth, advance.

**procērus**, *a, um*; high, tall.

**procul**, adv.; at a distance, f.r off.

**prō-dūcō**, *ere, dūxī, ductum*; to lead forth.

**proelium**, *iī, n.*; battle, conflict.

**proficīscor**, *ī, fectus sum*; to set out, march.

**prō-fligō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to overcome, conquer, crush.

**prō-gredior**, *ī, gressus sum*; to go forth, advance.

**prōgressus**, *ūs, m.*; advance, progress; *often plural*.

**prōmiscuē**, adv.; confusedly, in confusion.

**prope**, adv.; almost, about.

**properō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to hasten, hurry.

**propīnquus**, *a, um*; near.

**prō-pōnō**, *ere, posuī, positum*; to propose, offer.

**propter**, prep. with Acc.; on account of.

**proptereā quod**; because.

**prō-sequor**, *ī, secūtus sum*; to follow.

**prō-sternō**, *ere, strāvī, strātum*; to cast down, destroy, overthrow.

**prōtinus**, adv.; at once.

**prōvincia**, *ae, f.*; province.

**prōximē**, adv.; nearest, next.

**prōximus**, *a, um*; nearest, next.

**prūdēns**, *entis*; prudent.

**pūblicus**, *a, um*; public; *rēs pūblica*, republic, commonwealth.

**puella**, *ae, f.*; girl.

**puer**, *puerī, m.*; boy.

**pūgna**, *ae, f.*; battle, fight.

**pūgnant**; (they) fight.

**pūgnat**; (he) fights.

**pūgnō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to fight.

**pulcher**, *chra, chrum*; beautiful.

**pulchritūdō**, *dinis, f.*; beauty.

**pullus**, *ī, m.*; chicken.

**pulvis**, *pulveris, m.*; dust.

**puppis**, *is, m.*; stern.

**pūrus**, *a, um*; clean, pure.

**pusillus**, *a, um*; very small, insignificant.

## Q

**quā**, adv.; where, in which place.

**quadrāgintā**, indecl.; forty.

**quadringentī**, *ae, a*; four hundred.

**quae**, *f. sing.*; which, what?

**quaerō**, *ere, quacsivī, quacsitum*; to ask, inquire.  
**quam**, conj.; than.  
**quam**, adv.; how? as, *quam diū*, how long? as long as.  
**quamvis**, conj.; although.  
**quandō**, conj.; when?  
**quantus**, *a, um*; how much, how great?  
**quārē**, adv.; wherefore, therefore.  
**quārtus**, *a, um*; fourth.  
**quasi**, conj.; as if, as it were.  
**quattuor**, indecl.; four.  
**que**, *enclitic*; and.  
**quem**, acc. m.; whom?  
**quī**, *quae, quod*, rel. pronoun; who; see 354.  
**quid**, Nom. or Acc. neut.; what?  
**quīdam**, *quaedam, quoddam, or quiddam*; a certain, a certain one.  
**quidem**, adv.; certainly, at least, in fact; *nē quidem*, not even.  
**quiēscō**, *ere, quiēvī, quiētum*; to rest, be quiet.  
**quīngentī**, *ae, a*; five hundred.  
**quīnquāgintā**, indecl.; fifty.  
**quīnque**, indecl.; five.  
**quīntus**, *a, um*; fifth.  
**Quīntus**, *ī, m.*; Quintus, a Roman name.  
**Quirītēs**, *ium, m. plur.*; Quirites, Romans.  
**quis**, *quae, quid*; who? see 391.  
**quis**, *quae, quid*; any, any one, some one; see 392.  
**quisquam**, *quaequam, quidquam*; any one, some one, some.  
**quod**, conj.; because, that.  
**quōmodo**, adv.; in what way? how?  
**quondam**, adv.; formerly, once, on one occasion.  
**quoque**, conj.; also, too.  
**quorsum**, adv.; to what end? for what? why?  
**quot**, indecl.; how many?  
**quotus**, *a, um*; which, what (of number)?

## R

**rādix**, *īcis, f.*; root, base.  
**rapīna**, *ae, f.*; robbery, plunder, pillage.  
**recipiō**, *ere, cēpī, cēptum*; to receive, admit.  
**rēctē**, adv.; rightly, well.  
**recumbō**, *ere, cubūī, —*; to lie down.  
**recuperō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to regain, recover.  
**re-currō**, *ere, currī, cursum*; to hasten back, return.  
**red-dō**, *ere, didī, dītum*; to give back, return.  
**red-eō**, *īre, īvī or īī, itum*; to go back, return.  
**red-igō**, *ere, īgī, āctum*; to reduce, subdue.  
**red-imō**, *ere, īmī, īmptum*; to release, ransom.  
**re-dūcō**, *ere, dūcī, ductum*; to lead back, bring back.  
**re-ferō**, *re-ferre, ret-tulī, re-lātum*; to bring back, return.  
**rēgia**, *ae, f.*; palace.  
**rēgīna**, *ae, f.*; queen.  
**regiō**, *ōnis, f.*; region, neighborhood, country.  
**rēgius**, *a, um*; kingly, regal, royal.  
**rēgnō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to reign, be king, govern.  
**regō**, *ere, rēxī, rēctum*; to rule.  
**rē-iciō**, *ere, iēcī, iectum*; to throw back, repulse.  
**re-linquō**, *ere, līquī, līctum*; to leave, abandon.  
**relinquunt**; (they) leave.  
**re-lūcēō**, *ēre, lūxī*; to shine out, blaze.  
**re-maneō**, *ēre, mānsī, —*; to remain, stay.  
**remedium**, *īī, n.*; cure, remedy.  
**remōtus**, *a, um*; separate, apart.  
**re-novō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to repair, restore, renew.  
**repentē**, adv.; suddenly.

**re-periō**, *īre, repperī, repertum*; to find.

**re-petō**, *ere, īvī or īī, ītum*; to seek again, return to.

**repudiō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to reject, divorce.

**rēs**, *reī, f.*; thing, affair, matter; *rēs militāris*, military affairs, military system, military service; *rēs pūblica*, republic, commonwealth; *rēs secundae*, prosperity.

**re-sistō**, *ere, stitī*; to stop, stand still.

**re-spondeō**, *ēre, spondī, spōnsum*; to answer, respond, reply.

**respōsum**, *ī, n.*; reply, answer.

**rē-stituō**, *ere, uī, ūtum*; to replace, restore.

**reus**, *ī, m.*; defendant, accused, culprit.

**re-vellō**, *ere, ī, vulsum*; to pluck away, pull out.

**re-vertor**, *ī, versus sum*; to turn back, return.

**re-vinciō**, *īre, vinxī, vinctum*; to bind fast, fasten, tie.

**rēx**, *rēgis, m.*; king.

**Rhēnus**, *ī, m.*; Rhine, the river Rhine.

**Rhodus**, *ī, f.*; Rhodes, the island of Rhodes, the city of Rhodes.

**Ricardus**, *ī, m.*; Richard.

**rīdeō**, *ēre, sī, sum*; to laugh, smile.

**rīpa**, *ae, f.*; bank (of a river).

**rīvus**, *ī, m.*; stream, brook.

**Rōma**, *ae, f.*; Rome.

**Rōmānī**, *ōrum, m. plur.*; Romans.

**Rōmānus**, *a, urī*; Roman.

**Rōmulus**, *ī, m.*; Romulus, reputed founder of Rome.

**Rōsciū**, *īī, m.*; Roscius, proper name.

**rōstra**, *ōrum, n. plur.*; stage, platform.

**rota**, *ae, f.*; wheel.

**ruber**, *bra, brum*; red.

**ruīna**, *ae, f.*; fall, ruin; *plur.*, ruins.

**rūmor**, *ōris, m.*; report, rumor.

**rūsticus**, *a, um*; of the country, rural, rustic.

## S

**saccus**, *ī, m.*; sack, bag.

**saepe**, *adv.*; often.

**sagitta**, *ae, f.*; arrow.

**Salamīnius**, *a, um*; of Salamis.

**saltem**, *adv.*; at least.

**salūs**, *ūtis, f.*; safety, welfare.

**salūtat**; (he) greets, welcomes, salutes.

**salūtant**; (they) greet, welcome, salute.

**salutātiō**, *ōnis, f.*; greeting, salutation.

**salutātor**, *ōris, m.*; one who greets, caller.

**salūtō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to greet, welcome, salute.

**salvē**; hail.

**Samiī**, *ōrum, m. plur.*; Samians, people of Samos.

**sapiēns**, *entis*; wise.

**sapienter**, *adv.*; wisely.

**sapientia**, *ae, f.*; wisdom.

**satis**, *adv.*; enough, sufficient.

**satiū**, *adv.*; better, preferable.

**scelerātus**, *a, um*; wicked, villainous.

**scelus**, *sceleris, n.*; crime, sin, misdeed.

**schola**, *ae, f.*; school.

**scientia**, *ae, f.*; science, knowledge.

**sciō**, *īre, īvī or īī, ītum*; to know; *Graecē scīre*, to know Greek; *Latīnē scīre*, to know Latin.

**Scīpiō**, *ōnis, m.*; Scipio.

**Scīpiō Africānus**, *Scīpiōnis Africānī*; Scipio Africanus.

**Scotī**, *ōrum, m. plur.*; Scots.

**scrībīt**; (he) writes.

**scrībītur**; (it) is written.

**scrībō**, *ere, scripsī, scriptum*; to

write ; *Graecē scribere*, to write Greek ; *Latīnē scribere*, to write Latin.  
**scribunt** ; (they) write.  
**scribuntur** ; (they) are written.  
**scriptor**, *ōris*, m. ; writer.  
**sē**, Acc. ; himself, herself, itself, themselves.  
**sē-cēdō**, *ere, cessī, cessum* ; to withdraw, retire, secede.  
**secundus**, *a, um* ; second, favorable, propitious ; *rēs secundae* ; see *rēs*.  
**secūris**, *is*, m. ; axe.  
**sed**, conj. ; but.  
**sedent** ; (they) sit.  
**sedeō**, *ere, sēdī, sessum* ; to sit, sit still.  
**sedēs**, *is*, f. ; seat, abode, foundation.  
**sēdō**, *āre, āvī, ātum* ; to settle, quiet, check.  
**sella**, *ae*, f. ; seat, chair.  
**semper**, adv. ; always.  
**sempiternus**, *a, um* ; everlasting, perpetual.  
**Semprōnius**, *iī*, m. ; Sempronius, a Roman name.  
**senātor**, *ōris*, m. ; senator.  
**senātus**, *ūs*, m. ; senate.  
**Seneca**, *ae*, m. ; Seneca, a Roman author.  
**sēnsim**, adv. ; gradually, gently.  
**sententia**, *ae*, f. ; opinion, idea, sentiment, sentence.  
**sentiō**, *īre, sēnsī, sēnsū* ; to feel, perceive.  
**sēparantur** ; (they) are separated.  
**septem**, indecl. ; seven.  
**septimus**, *a, um* ; seventh.  
**septuāgēsīmus**, *a, um* ; seventieth.  
**sepultūra**, *ae*, f. ; burial.  
**Sēquanus**, *a, um* ; of the Sequanians.  
**sequor**, *ī, secūtus sum* ; to follow, accompany.  
**serēnus**, *a, um* ; bright, clear.  
**sermō**, *ōnis*, m. ; discourse, conversation.

**serviō**, *īre, īvī or iī, itum* ; to serve, devote one's self to.  
**servitūs**, *ūtis*, f. ; slavery, servitude.  
**Servius**, *iī*, m. ; Servius, a Roman king.  
**servō**, *āre, āvī, ātum* ; to save, preserve.  
**servus**, *ī*, m. ; slave, servant.  
**sēstertius**, *iī*, m. ; sesterce ; *sēstertium*, with *centēna mīlia* omitted = 100,000 sesterces, about \$5,000 ; *mīliēs sēstertium* = 1,000 × 100,000 = 100,000,000 sesterces, about \$5,000,000.  
**seu**, conj. ; or if ; *seu . . . seu*, whether . . . or.  
**sevērus**, *a, um* ; severe, strict, stern.  
**sex**, indecl. ; six.  
**sexāgintā**, indecl. ; sixty.  
**sextus**, *a, um* ; sixth.  
**Sextus**, *ī*, m. ; Sextus, a Roman name.  
**sī**, conj. ; if, whether.  
**sic**, adv. ; thus, so.  
**sībilus**, *ī*, m. ; hissing.  
**Sicilia**, *ae*, f. ; Sicily, island of Sicily.  
**sīgnum**, *ī*, n. ; sign, signal, standard.  
**sīgnificō**, *āre, āvī, ātum* ; to show, mean.  
**silva**, *ae*, f. ; wood, forest.  
**simul**, adv. ; at the same time, at once.  
**simulācrum**, *ī*, n. ; likeness, image, imitation ; *simulācrum pūgnae*, a sham battle.  
**simulō**, *āre, āvī, ātum* ; to imitate, copy, feign, counterfeit.  
**sīn**, conj. ; if, however, but if.  
**sine**, prep. with Abl. ; without.  
**sinō**, *ere, sīvī, situm* ; to allow, permit.  
**sōbrius**, *a, um* ; sober, temperate, sensible, reasonable.  
**socer**, *socerī*, m. ; father-in-law.  
**societās**, *ātis*, f. ; union, association, alliance.

**socius**, *ī*, m.; companion, fellow.  
**Sōcratēs**, *īs*, m.; Socrates, Athenian philosopher.

**sōl**, *sōlis*, m.; sun.

**sōleō**, *ere, sōlitus sum*; to be accustomed.

**sōlitūdō**, *dinis*, f.; loneliness, desert, wilderness.

**sollemnis**, *e*; solemn, customary, festive.

**sollicitus**, *a, um*; disturbed, anxious.

**Solōn**, *ōnis*, m.; Solon, Athenian lawgiver.

**sōlus**, *a, um*; alone.

**solvō**, *ere, solvī, solūtum*; to free, release, end, pay.

**sōror**, *ōris*, f.; sister.

**Sparta**, *ae*, f.; Sparta.

**Spartānī**, *ōrum*, m. plur.; Spartans.

**spatium**, *ī*, n.; space, interval.

**spectāculum**, *ī*, n.; sight, spectacle, view.

**spectat**; (he) looks at, watches.

**spectātiō**, *ōnis*, f.; exhibition, sight, show.

**spectātor**, *ōris*, m.; looker-on, spectator.

**spectō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to look at, view, watch.

**specus**, *ūs*, m.; cave, den.

**spēs**, *spēi*, f.; hope.

**spīna**, *ae*, f.; thorn.

**splendidus**, *a, um*; brilliant, splendid, magnificent, gorgeous, fine.

**splendeō**, *ēre, —, —*; to shine, be bright.

**spolium**, *ī*, n.; booty, spoil.

**spondeō**, *ēre, spondī, spōnsum*; to promise solemnly.

**Stabiae**, *ārum*, f. plur.; Stabiae, city of Italy.

**statim**, adv.; at once, immediately.

**statua**, *ae*, f.; statue.

**statuō**, *ere, uī, ūtum*; to determine, order.

**statūra**, *ae*, f.; height, size, stature.

**stīpendium**, *ī*, n.; salary, pay;  
*stīpendium merēre*, to serve in the army, be a soldier.

**stō**, *āre, stetī, statum*; to stand, stand still.

**stringit**; (he) draws, unsheathes.

**studeō**, *ēre, uī, —*; to be eager, desire.

**studium**, *ī*, n.; desire, zeal, study.

**studiōsē**, adv.; studiously, zealously.

**sub**, prep. with Acc. and Abl.; under, at the foot of.

**sub-dūcō**, *ere, dūxī, ductum*; to withdraw.

**sub-iciō**, *ere, iēcī, iectum*; to throw up, make subject, expose.

**subitō**, adv.; suddenly, immediately.

**submergitur**; (he) is sinking.

**sub-mergō**, *ere, mersī, mersum*; to sink, submerge.

**sub-scribō**, *ere, scripsī, scriptum*; to write underneath.

**succēdō**, *ere, cessī, cessum*; to come under, advance, march up.

**suf-ficiō**, *ere, fecī, fectum*; to attach to, make fast to.

**suf-fīgō**, *ere, fīxī, fixum*; to attach, affix, *crucī suffigere*, to crucify.

**suggestus**, *ūs*, m.; platform, stage.

**suī**, pronoun; of himself; for *de-clension* see 266.

**Sulla**, *ae*, m.; Sulla, a famous Roman general.

**sum**, *esse, fuī*; to be.

**summus**, superl. of *superus*; greatest, highest, topmost.

**sunt**; (they) are.

**supellex**, *lectilis*, f.; furniture.

**super**, prep. with Acc. and Abl.; above.

**superantur**; (they) are overcome, conquered.

**superbia**, *ae*, f.; pride, arrogance.

**superbus**, *a, um*; proud, haughty.

**superus**, *a, um*; high, upper;

comp. *superior*, superl. *suprēmus*, *summus*.

**superō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; to surmount, conquer, pass, surpass.

**super-sum**, *esse*, *fuī*; to remain, survive.

**supplicium**, *ii*, n.; punishment, penalty.

**surgit**; (he) rises.

**sus-cipiō**, *ere*, *cēpī*, *ceptum*; to undertake.

**suspiciō**, *ōnis*, f.; distrust, suspicion.

**sus-tineō**, *ere*, *uī*, *tentum*; to sustain, withstand.

**sūtor**, *ōris*, m.; shoemaker.

**suus**, *a*, *um*; his, her, their.

**Syria**, *ae*, f.; Syria, a country of Asia Minor.

## T

**tabula**, *ae*, f; tablet.

**tacent**; (they) are silent.

**taccō**, *ere*, *uī*, *itum*; to be silent, keep still.

**Tacitus**, *i*, m.; Tacitus, a Roman historian.

**talentum**, *i*, n.; talent, about §1,100.

**tālis**, *e*; such.

**tam**, adv.; so.

**tamen**, adv.; yet, nevertheless, still.

**tandem**, adv.; at length, at last.

**tantō**, adv.; so much, so greatly.

**tantus**, *a*, *um*; so great, so large, so much.

**Tarquinius**, *ii*, m.; Tarquin, a Roman king.

**taurus**, *i*, m.; bull; *taurī flūmen*, Bull Run.

**tē**, Acc. sing.; you, thee.

**tēctum**, *i*, n.; roof, house.

**tegō**, *ere*, *tēxī*, *tectum*; to cover.

**tēlum**, *i*, n.; weapon, spear, javelin.

**temeritās**, *ātis*, f.; rashness.

**templum**, *i*, n.; temple.

**tempus**, *oris*, n.; time, season; plur., *tempora*, the times, times.

**tendō**, *ere*, *tendī*, *tentum*; to stretch out, extend.

**tenebrae**, *arum*, f.; darkness.

**teneō**, *ere*, *uī*, *tentum*; to hold, keep.

**tener**, *era*, *erum*; tender, young, delicate.

**tenet**; (he) holds.

**tenent**; (they) hold.

**tentat**; (he) tries, attempts.

**tentō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; to try, attempt.

**tentōrium**, *ii*, n.; tent.

**tenuis**, *e*; slim, thin, slender.

**Terentia**, *ae*, f.; Terentia.

**tergum**, *i*, n.; back; *tergum dat*, he turns his back, flees.

**terminat**; (he) bounds, limits.

**terra**, *ae*, f.; land, earth; *orbis terrarum*, the circle of the lands, the world.

**terrent**; (they) frighten, terrify.

**terrentur**; (they) are frightened, terrified.

**terreō**, *ere*, *uī*, *itum*; to frighten, terrify.

**terret**; (he) frightens, terrifies.

**terrētur**; (he) is frightened, terrified.

**terribilis**, *e*; frightful, terrible.

**terror**, *ōris*, m.; fright, dread, fear, terror.

**tertius**, *a*, *um*; third.

**testis**, *is*, m. and f.; witness.

**testāmentum**, *i*, n.; will, testament.

**theātrum**, *i*, n.; theatre.

**Themistoclē**s, *i* and *is*, m.; Themistocles, Athenian general.

**Thessalia**, *ae*, f.; Thessaly, country north of Greece.

**tigris**, *tigridis*, m.; tiger.

**timent**; (they) fear.

**timentur**; (they) are feared.

**timeō**, *ere*, *uī*; to fear, dread, be afraid of.

**timet**; (he) fears.

**timētur**; (he) is feared.

**Timōn**, *ōnis*, m.; Timon, proper name.

**timor**, *ōris*, m.; fear.

**Titus**, *i*, m.; Titus.

**toga**, *ae*, f.; toga, gown, outer garment.

**tolerō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to endure, suffer.

**tollō**, *ere, sustulī, sublātum*; to raise, lift up, take up, remove, destroy.

**torquis**, *is*, m. and f.; necklace, collar.

**torreō**, *ēre, torruī, tostum*; to roast, bake,

**tōtus**, *a, um*; all, entire; for declension, see 377.

**trā-dō**, *ere, didī, ditum*; to hand over, deliver, relate, report.

**trāgula**, *ae*, f.; javelin, dart.

**trahō**, *ere, traxī, tractum*; to draw, drag.

**trā-iciō**, *ere, icī, iectum*; to cross, cross over.

**trāns**, prep. with Acc.; across; *trāns Rhēnum*, across the Rhine.

**trāns-eō**, *īre, ivī or iī, itum*; to go across, cross.

**trānseunt**; (they) cross.

**trāns-figō**, *ere, fīxī, fīxum*; to pierce.

**trānsit**; (he) crosses.

**tremō**, *ere, uī*; to tremble, shake, quake.

**tremor**, *ōris*, m.; trembling, shaking, earthquake.

**trepidātiō**, *ōnis*, f.; confusion, disorder.

**trēs**, *trīa*; three.

**tribūnus**, *i*, m.; tribune, a Roman magistrate.

**tribuō**, *ere, uī, ūtum*; to grant, bestow, render, award.

**trīduum**, *i*, n.; three days' time, three days.

**triennium**, *iī*, n.; three years' time, three years.

**trīgintā**, indecl.; thirty.

**trīgintā septem**; thirty-seven.

**triplex**, *plīcis*; threefold, triple.

**trīumphō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to triumph, celebrate a victory; *trīumphāre dē*, to triumph over.

**trīumphus**, *i*, m.; triumph, victory.

**truēdō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to slaughter, massacre.

**tū**, pronoun; thou, you; see 265.

**tuba**, *ae*, f.; trumpet.

**Tullia**, *ae*, f.; Tuilia.

**tum**, adv.; at that time, then.

**tumultus**, *ūs*, m.; disturbance, noise.

**tunc**, adv.; at that time, then.

**turba**, *ae*, f.; throng, band, crowd.

**turbulentus**, *a, um*; disorderly, seditious.

**turpis**, *e*; shameful, dishonorable, base.

**turris**, *is*, f.; tower.

**tuus**, *a, um*; your, yours, thy, thine.

## U

**ubi**; when, where; when? where?

**ūllus**, *a, um*; any; see 378.

**ūltrā**, prep. with Acc.; beyond, over.

**ūltrō**, adv.; of one's own accord, voluntarily.

**umbra**, *ae*, f.; shade.

**umerus**, *i*, m.; shoulder.

**ūnā**, adv.; together, together with.

**unde**, adv.; whence? from what place?

**ūniversus**, *a, um*; all, whole, entire.

**unquam**, adv.; ever, at any time.

**ūnus**, *a, um*; one, only; 381.

**urbānus**, *a, um*; of the city.

**urbs**, *urbis*, f.; city.

**ūsūrpō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to use, enjoy, assume.

**ūsus**, *ūs*, m.; use, experience.

**ut**, conj.; that, in order that, in order to, to.

**uter**, *utra, utrum*; which (of two); for declension see 377.

**uterque**, *utraque, utrumque*; each (of two), both.

**utinam**, adv.; oh, that! would that!

**ūtilis**, *e*; useful.

**ūtor**, *ī, ūsus sum*; to use, make use of.

**uxor**, *ōris, f.*; wife.

## V

**vagor**, *ārī, ātus sum*; to wander, to roam.

**valdē**, adv.; greatly, very, very much, exceedingly.

**valē**; be well, farewell, good-by.

**valent**; (they) are well, are strong.

**valeō**, *ēre uī, itum*; to be well, be strong; *bene valere*, to be very well; *melius valere*, to be better; *optime valere*, to be perfectly well; *imperative*, farewell, good-by.

**valet**; (he) is well, is strong.

**valētūdō**, *dinis, f.*; health, state of health.

**vallum**, *ī, n.*; wall, rampart.

**varius**, *a, um*; various, different.

**vās**, *vāsīs, n.*; vessel, vase.

**vāstō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to lay waste, ravage.

**vāstus**, *a, um*; vast, immense, mighty.

**vegetus**, *a, um*; lively, animated.

**vehemēns**, *entis*; strong, violent, furious.

**vehementer**, adv.; strongly, violently, greatly.

**vehō**, *ere, vēxī, vēctum*; to bear, carry; *pass.*, to ride.

**vel**, conj.; or; *vel . . . vel*, either . . . or.

**vēlum**, *ī, n.*; sail.

**vēnātiō**, *ōnis, f.*; hunting, chase, combat of wild beasts.

**vēnātor**, *ōris, m.*; hunter, huntsman.

**venerātiō**, *ōnis, f.*; respect, reverence, awe.

**venia**, *ae, f.*; pardon, grace.

**veniō**, *īre, vēnī, ventum*; to come.

**vēnor**, *ārī, ātus sum*; to hunt, take in hunting.

**ventus**, *ī, m.*; wind.

**verberis**, genitive, *n.* (defective); whip, whipping, blow.

**verbum**, *ī, n.*; word, verb.

**vereor**, *ērī, veritus sum*; to reverence, fear.

**Vergilius**, *iī, m.*; Vergil, a Roman poet.

**vērō**, adv.; in truth, indeed, but.

**versor**, *ārī, ātus sum*; to be, be busy, be engaged.

**vertō**, *ere, tī, sum*; to turn.

**vector**, *ī, versus sum*; to turn.

**vērūs**, *a, um*; true, real, actual.

**vesper**, *erī, m.*; evening; *vesperī*, adv.; at evening.

**Vesta**, *ae, f.*; Vesta, goddess of the Roman household.

**vester**, *tra, trum*; your.

**vestigium**, *iī, n.*; the bottom of the foot, track, trace.

**vestimentum**, *ī, n.*; clothing, cloak.

**vestis**, *īs, f.*; clothes, clothing, garment, dress.

**Vesuvius**, *iī, m.*; Vesuvius, a volcano in Italy.

**veterānus**, *a, um*; old, veteran.

**vēxillum**, *ī, n.*; banner, flag.

**via**, *ae, f.*; way, road, street.

**vīcēsīmus**, *a, um*; twentieth.

**vīcīnus**, *ī, m.*; neighbor.

**vīctor**, *ōris, m.*; conqueror, victor.

**vīctōria**, *ae, f.*; victory.

**Vīctōria**, *ae, f.*; Victoria.

**vīctus**, *ūs, m.*; food, victuals.

**vīcus**, *ī, m.*; village, ward, quarter, street.

**vident**; (they) see.

**videō**, *ēre, vīdī, vīsum*; to see, perceive; *pass.* *videor*, to be seen, to see, appear.

**vidēs**; you see.

**videt**; (he) sees.

**vīgintī**, indecl.; twenty.

**villa**, *ae, f.*; country-house, villa.

**vincit**; he binds.

**vincō**, *ere, vīcī, vīctum*; to conquer.

**vinculum**, *ī, n.*; bond, chain.

**vindicō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to avenge, revenge.

**vīnum**, *ī, n.*; wine.

**vir**, *virī*, *m.*; man, true man, hero; see 121.

**vireō**, *ēre*; to be green.

**Virgīnia**, *ae, f.*; Virginia.

**virtūs**, *ūtis, f.*; virtue, valor, bravery.

**viridis**, *e*; green.

**vīta**, *ae, f.*; life.

**vītant**; (they) avoid, shun.

**vītantur**; (they) are avoided, shunned.

**vītat**; (he) avoids, shuns.

**vītātur**; (he) is avoided, shunned.

**vītō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to avoid, shun.

**vītuperō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to find fault with, blame.

**vīvō**, *ere, vīxī, vīctum*; to live.

**vix**, *adv.*; hardly, scarcely.

**vocābulum**, *ī, n.*; name, noun, word.

**volō**, *velle, voluī*; to wish, desire, like, be willing.

**voluptās**, *ātis, f.*; pleasure, delight.

**vōx**, *vōcis, f.*; voice, sound.

**vulnerātus est**; (he) is wounded.

**vulnerō**, *āre, āvī, ātum*; to wound.

**vulnus**, *vulneris, n.*; wound.

# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

## A

**a** ; the Latin has no article, see page 9, foot-note 2.

**able** ; to be able, *possum, posse, potuī.*

**about** ; *dē*, prep. with the Abl.

**acceptable** ; *grātus, a, um.*

**accuse** ; *accūsō, āre, āvī, ātum* ; (he) accuses, *accūsāt* ; (they) accuse, *accūsant* ; (he) is accused, *accūsātur* ; they are accused, *accūsantur.*

**acquire** ; *potior, irī, potītus sum.*

**administer** ; *gerō, ere, gessī, gestum.*

**admire** ; *admīror, ārī, ātus sum.*

**adorn** ; *ōrnō, āre, āvī, ātum* ; (he) adorns, *ōrnat* ; (they) adorn, *ōrnant* ; (he) is adorned, *ōrnātur* ; (they) are adorned, *ōrnantur.*

**advise** ; *monēō, ēre, uī, itum.*

**Aetna** ; *Aetna, ae, f.*

**affairs, military** ; see *military.*

**Africanus** ; *Āfricānus, ī, m.*

**after** ; *post*, prep. with Acc.

**afterward** ; *postea*, adv.

**against** ; *contrā*, prep. with Acc.

**agreeable** ; *iūcundus, a, um.*

**Albert** ; *Albertus, ī, m.*

**Alexander** ; *Alexander, drī, m.*

**all** ; *omnis, e* ; *tōtus, a, um, 377.*

**alone** ; *sōlus, a, um, 378.*

**already** ; *iam*, adv.

**also** ; *quoque, etiam*, conj.

**always** ; *semper*, adv.

**ambassador** ; *lēgātus, ī, m.*

**Amelia** ; *Amelia, ae, f.*

**America** ; *America, ae, f.*

**American** ; *Americānus, a, um.*

**Americans** ; *Americānī, ōrum*, m. plur.

**among** ; *inter*, prep. with Acc. ; *apud*, prep. with Acc.

**an** ; see page 9, foot-note 2.

**ancient** ; *antīquus, a, um.*

**and** ; *et, que, atque.*

**animal** ; *animal, ālis, n.*

**another** ; *alius, a, ud, 378.*

**Apollo** ; *Apollō, Apollinis, m.*

**apple** ; *mālum, ī, n.*

**apple-tree** ; *mālus, ī, f.*

**approach** ; *adventus, ūs, m.*

**are, they are, there are** ; *sunt.*

**Ariovistus** ; *Ariovistus, ī, m.*

**arms** ; *arma, ōrum, n. plur.*

**army** ; *exercitus, ūs, m.*

**arouse** ; *excitō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

**arrival** ; *adventus, ūs, m.*

**art** ; *ars, artis, f.*

**ascertain** ; *cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitum.*

**Asia** ; *Asia, ae, f.*

**ask** ; *ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

**associate** ; *comes, itis, m. and f.*

**at** ; *ad*, prep. with Acc. ; sometimes expressed by Loc. or Abl.

**Athenian** ; *Athēniēnsis, is, m.*

**Athens** ; *Athēnae, ārum, f. plur.*

**attack** ; *impetus, ūs, m.*

**attack** ; *oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātum* ; *adorior, irī, ortus sum.*

**Augustus** ; *Augustus, ī, m.*

**author** ; *scriptor, ōris, m.*

**avoid** ; *vitō, āre, āvī, ātum* ; (he)

avoids, *vitat*; (they) avoid, *vitant*; (he) is avoided, *vītatur*; (they) are avoided, *vītantur*.

**await**; *expectō, āre, āvī, ātum*.

**award**; *tribuō, ere, uī, ūtum*.

## B

**bad**; *malus, a, um, 192*.

**ball**; *pila, ae, f*.

**battle**; *pūgna, ae, f, proelium, īi, n*.

**battle**, line of, *acies, aciēi, f*.

**be**; *sum, esse, fūi*.

**bear**; *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum*.

**beautiful**; *pulcher, chra, chrum*.

**beauty**; *pulchritūdō, dīnis, f*.

**before** (of time and place); *ante*, prep. with Acc.; (in the presence of), *apud*, prep. with Acc.

**before**; *anteā, adv*.

**beseech**; *orō, āre, āvī, ātum*.

**besiege**; *obsidēō, ēre, sēdī, sessum*.

**best**; *optimus, a, um*, superlative of *bonus*, 192.

**bestow**; *tribuō, ere, uī, ūtum*.

**better**; *melior, ius*, comparative of *bonus*, 192. To be better; *melius valeō, ēre, uī, ūtum*.

**bird**; *avis, is, f*.

**birthday**; *dies nātālis, diēi nātālis*.

**black**; *niger, gra, grum*.

**bloom**, to bloom, to be in bloom; *flōrēō, ēre, uī*.

**book**; *liber, librī, m*.

**booty**; *praeda, ae, f*.

**Boston**; *Bostonia, ae, f*.

**boy**; *puer, puerī, m*.

**brave**; *fortis, e*.

**bravely**; *fortiter, adv*.

**bravery**; *virtūs, ūtis, f*.

**bridge**; *pōns, pontis, m*.

**briefly**; *breviter, adv*.

**bring to a close**; *fīniō, īre, īvī*, or *īi, ūtum*.

**brother**; *frāter, frātris, m*.

**build**; *aedificō, āre, āvī, ātum*.

**but**; *sed, autem, at*.

**by**; *ā* or *ab*, prep. with Abl., sometimes denoted by the Abl.

## C

**Caesar**; *Caesar, aris, m*.

**call**; *appellō, āre, āvī, ātum*.

**camp**; *castra, ōrum, n, plur*.

**can**, to be able; *possum, posse, potuī*.

**capture**; *expūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum*; *capio, ere, cēpī, captum*.

**care**; *cūra, ae, f*.

**carry**; *portō, āre, āvī, ātum*; (he) carries, *portat*; (they) carry, *portant*.

**Carthage**; *Carthāgō, ginis, f*.

**Carthaginians**; *Carthāginiēnsēs, ium, m, plur*.

**cavalry**; *equitēs, um, m, plur*; *equitātus, ūs, m*; battle of the cavalry, *pūgna equestris*.

**celebrate**; *celebrō, āre, āvī, ātum*.

**celebrated**; *celeber, bra, brum*.

**chariot**; *currus, ūs, m*.

**Charles**; *Carolus, ī, m*.

**children**; *liberī, ōrum, m, plur*.

**choose**, choose rather; *mālō, mālōle, maluī*.

**Cicero**; *Cicerō, ōnis, m*.

**citadel**; *arx, arcis, f*.

**citizen**; *civis, is, m, and f*.

**city**; *urbs, urbis, f*.

**civil**; *civilis, e*.

**cloud**; *nūbēs, is, f*.

**color**; *color, ōris, m*.

**come**; *veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum*.

**command**; *imperō, āre, āvī, ātum*.

**commander**; *imperātor, ōris, m*; *dux, ducis, m*.

**concerning**; *dē*, prep. with Abl.

**conquer**; *superō, āre, āvī, ātum*; *vīncō, ere, vīcī, vīctum*.

**conqueror**; *vīctor, ōris, m*.

**consul**; *consul, ulis, m*.

**contrary to**; *contrā*, prep. with Acc.

**conversation**; *sermō, ōnis, m*.

**Corinth**; *Corīnthus, ī, f*.

**Cornelia**; *Cornēlia*, *ae*, *f*.  
country, one's country; *patria*,  
*ae*, *f*.

**Croesus**; *Croesus*, *i*, *m*.  
cultivate; *exercēō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itum*.  
custom; *mōs*, *mōris*, *m*.

## D

**daily**; *cottidīe*, *adv*.  
**danger**; *periculum*, *i*, *n*.  
**dangerous**; *periculōsus*, *a*, *um*.  
**daring**; *audāx*, *ācis*.  
**daughter**; *fīlia*, *ae*, *f*.  
**day**; *dies*, *diēi*; every day, *cottidīe*,  
*adv*.; to-day, *hodiē*, *adv*.

**dear**; *cārus*, *a*, *um*.

**death**; *mors*, *mortis*, *f*.

**December**; *mēnsis* December,  
*mēnsis* Decembris.

**decree**; *dē cernō*, *ere*, *crēvī*, *crē-*  
*tum*.

**defeat**; *clādēs*, *is*, *f*.

**delicate**; *tener*, *era*, *erum*.

**delight**; *dēlectō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*;  
(he) delights, *dēlectat*; (they) de-  
light, *dēlectant*; (he) is delighted,  
*dēlectātur*; (they) are delighted, *dē-*  
*lectantur*.

**delightful**; *iūcundus*, *a*, *um*.

**derive**; *copiō*, *ere*, *cēpī*, *captum*;  
*accipiō*, *ere*, *cēpī*, *ceptum*.

**deserve**; *mereō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itum*.

**destroy**; *dēlēō*, *ēre*, *ēvī*, *ētum*.

**devote one's self to**; *serviō*, *īre*,  
*ivī* or *iī*, *itum*.

**Diana**; *Diāna*, *ae*, *f*.

**did**; often a sign of the Imperf. or  
Perfect tenses.

**difficult**; *difficilis*, *e*.

**diligence**; *diligentia*, *ae*, *f*.

**diligent**; *diligēns*, *entis*.

**do**; *faciō*, *ere*, *fecī*, *factum*; do and  
does are sometimes the signs of the  
Present tense. To be done; *fiō*, *fi-*  
*rī*, *factus sum*.

**Draco**; *Dracō*, *ōnis*, *m*.

**duty**; *officiūm*, *iī*, *n*.

## E

**eagerly**; *studiōsē*, *adv*.

**early**; *māne*, *adv*.; very early,  
*bene māne*.

**easy**; *facilis*, *e*.

**elephant**; *elephantus*, *i*, *m*.

**enemy**; *hostis*, *is*, *m*. and *f*.

**enjoy**; *fruor*, *i*, *fructus sum*.

**equestrian**; *equester*, *tris*, *tre*.

**estate**; *fundus*, *i*, *m*.

**Europe**; *Eurōpa*, *ae*, *f*.

**evening**, in the; *vesperī*, *adv*.

**ever**; *unquam*, *adv*.; ever, mean-  
ing always, *semper*, *adv*.

**every day**; *cottidīe*, *adv*.

**exceedingly**; *valdē*, *adv*.

**exceedingly well**; *optimē*, *adv*.

**excellent**; *ēgregius*, *a*, *um*.

**exercise**; *exercēō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itum*.

**exhort**; *hortor*, *ārī*, *ātus sum*.

**expect**; *expectō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*;  
(he) expects, *expectat*; (they) expect,  
*expectant*; (he) is expected, *expectā-*  
*tur*; (they) are expected, *expectantur*.

**experience**; *ūsus*, *ūs*, *m*.

## F

**fair**; *aequus*, *a*, *um*.

**faithful**; *fīdus*, *a*, *um*.

**false**; *falsus*, *a*, *um*.

**famous**; *clārus*, *a*, *um*.

**farm**; *fundus*, *i*, *m*.

**farmer**; *agricola*, *ae*, *m*.

**fast**; *celer*, *era*, *erum*.

**father**; *pater*, *patris*, *m*.

**father-in-law**; *socer*, *socerī*, *m*.

**favor**; *beneficiūm*, *iī*, *n*.

**fear**; *timor*, *timōris*, *m*.; *metus*,  
*ūs*, *m*.

**fear**; *timeō*, *ēre*, *uī*, —; (he)  
fears, *timet*; (they) fear, *timent*; (he)  
is feared, *timētur*; (they) are feared,  
*timentur*.

**feast**; *cēna*, *ae*, *f*.

**February**; *mēnsis* Februārius,  
*mēnsis* Februāriī.

**festal**; *festus*, *a*, *um*.

**few**; *paucī*, *ae*, *a*.

field; *ager, agrī, m.*  
 fifth; *quīntus, a, um.*  
 fifty; *quīnquāgintā, indecl.*  
 fight; *pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātum*; (he) fights, *pūgnat*; (they) fight, *pūgnant.*  
 fire; *ignīs, is, m.*; *incendium, īī, n.*  
 five; *quīnque, indecl.*  
 fleet; *clāssis, is, f.*  
 Florence; *Flōrentia, ae, f.*  
 Florida; *Flōrida, ae, f.*  
 flourish; *flōrēō, ēre, uī.*  
 flower; *flōs, flōris, m.*  
 for, prep.; *prō, prep. with Abl.*; sometimes expressed by the Dative.  
 for, conj.; *nam, conj.*  
 forces; *cōpiae, ārum, f. plur.*  
 fortify; *mūnō, īre, īvī or īī, itum.*  
 fortune; *fortūna, ae, f.*  
 forum; *forum, i, n.*  
 fountain; *fōns, fontis, m.*  
 four; *quattuor, indecl.*  
 Frederick; *Frederīcus, ī, m.*  
 free; *liber, era, erum.*  
 free, to free; *liberō, āre, āvī, ātum.*  
 friend; *amicus, ī, m.*  
 friendship; *amicitia, ae, f.*  
 from; *ē* or *ex, prep. with Abl.*; *ā* or *ab, prep. with Abl.*; sometimes expressed by the Abl.

## G

Gallic; *Gallicus, a, um.*  
 game; *lūdus, ī, m.*  
 garden; *hortus, ī, m.*  
 garland; *corōna, ae, f.*  
 gate; *porta, ae, f.*  
 Gaul; *Gallia, ae, f.*  
 Gauls; *Gallī, ōrum, m. plur.*  
 general; *imperātor, ōris, m.*  
 Germans; *Germānī, ōrum, m. plur.*  
 gift; *dōnum, ī, n.*  
 girl; *puella, ae, f.*  
 give; *dō, are, dedī, datum*; (to) gives, *dat*; (they) give, *dant*; (it) is given, *datur*; (they) are given, *dantur.*  
 gladly; *libenter, adv.*

glory; *glōria, ae, f.*  
 go; *eō, īre, īvī or īī, itum.*  
 god; *deus, ī, m.*, 372, note.  
 golden; *aureus, a, um.*  
 good; *bonus, a, um*, 192.  
 goose; *ānser, eris, m.*  
 grandfather; *avus, ī, m.*  
 grandson; *nepōs, ōtis, m.*  
 great; *māgnus, a, um*, 192.  
 greatest; *māximus, a, um*, superl. of *māgnus*, 192.  
 greatly; *valdē, adv.*  
 Greece; *Graecia, ae, f.*  
 Greek, Grecian; *Graecus, a, um.*  
 Greek, in Greek, *Graecē, adv.*  
 Greeks, the Greeks, *Graeci, ōrum, m. plur.*  
 grounds; *hortī, ōrum, m. plur.*  
 grove; *lucus, ī, m.*  
 guard; *cūstōdiō, īre, īvī or īī, itum.*  
 guardian; *cūstōs, ōdis, m.*  
 guest; *hospes, hospitīs, m. and f.*

## II.

had, (he) had; *habuit.*  
 Hannibal; *Hannibal, alīs, m.*  
 happy; *beātus, a, um.*  
 harbor; *portus, ūs, m.*  
 have; *habeō, ēre, uī, itum*; (he) has, *habet*; (they) have, *habent.*  
 he; *is, ea, id*; often contained in the verb.  
 hear; *audiō, īre, īvī or īī, itum.*  
 help; *auxilium, īī, n.*  
 Henry; *Henricus, ī, m.*  
 her; *suus, a, um.*; very often omitted in Latin.  
 here; *hic, adv.*  
 high; *altus, a, um.*  
 hill; *collis, is, m.*  
 himself; *suī, 266.*  
 his; *suus, a, um*; very often omitted in Latin.  
 holidays; *feriae, ārum, f. plur.*  
 home; *domus, ūs, f.*; at home, *domī, 209.*  
 Homer; *Homērus, ī, m.*

**honor**; *honōs* or *honor*, *ōris*, m.; *glōria*, ae, f.

**honor**; *honōrō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; *celebrō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

**honorable**; *honestus*, a, um.

**hope**; *spēs*, *spēi*, f.

**horse**; *equus*, *ī*, m.

**hour**; *hōra*, ae, f.

**house**; *domus*, *ūs*, f., 200.

**how**; *quam*; how many, *quot*, indecl.

**huge**; *ingēns*, *entis*.

## I

**I**; *ego*, often implied in the ending of the verb.

**idle**; *ignāvus*, a, um.

**ignorant**; *imperītus*, a, um.

**ill**; *aeger*, *gra*, *grum*.

**illustrious**; *clārus*, a, um.

**immense**; *ingēns*, *entis*; *vāstus*, a, um.

**impartial**; *aequus*, a, um.

**in**; *in*, prep. with Abl.; sometimes expressed by *Loc.* or *Abl.*

**in regard to**; *dē*; in behalf of, *prō*.

**industriously**; *diligenter*, adv.

**influence**; *auctōritās*, *ātis*, f.

**inhabitant**; *incola*, ae, m.

**instruct**; *erudiō*, *āre*, *āvī* or *īi*, *ūtum*; *doceō*, *ēre*, *vī*, *doctum*.

**instructor**; *praeceptor*, *ōris*, m.; *magister*, *tri*, m; see 116.

**interesting**; *iucundus*, a, um.

**into**; *in*, prep. with Accus.

**invite**; *invitō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

**is**; (he) is, *est*.

**it**; *id*, neuter of *is*, *ea*, *id*; often contained in the verb.

**Italy**; *Italia*, ae, f.

## J

**January**; *mēnsis Iānuārius*, *mēnsis Iānuārii*.

**journey**; *iter*, *itineris*, n.; to make a journey; *iter faciō*, *ere*, *fēcī*, *factum*.

**judge**; *iūdex*, *iūdicis*, m.

**Julia**; *Iūlia*, ae, f.

**Juno**; *Iūnō*, *ōnis*, f.

**Jupiter**; *Iuppiter*, *Iovis*, m.

**justice**; *iūstītia*, ae, f.

## K

**keeper**; *cūstōs*, *ōdis*, m.

**kind**; *genus*, *generis*, n.

**king**; *rēx*, *rēgis*, m.

**know**; *sciō*, *īre*, *īvī* or *īi*, *ūtum*; to know Greek, Latin, *Graecō*, *Latīnē sciire*; not to know, *nēsciō*, *īre*, *īvī* or *īi*, *ūtum*.

**known**; *nōtus*, a, um.

## L

**lake**; *lacus*, *ūs*, m.

**land, native land**; *patria*, ae, f.

**large**; *māgnus*, a, um, 192.

**lately**; *nūper*, adv.

**Latin**; *Latinus*, a, um; in Latin, *Latīnē*; to know, write Latin, *Latīnē sciire*, *scribere*.

**Lavinia**; *Lāvīnia*, ae, f.

**law**; *lēx*, *lēgis*, f.

**lay waste**; *vāstō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

**lead**; *dūcō*, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductum*; lead back, *re-dūcō*, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductum*; lead out, *ē-dūcō*, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductum*; (he) leads out, *ēdūcit*; (they) lead out, *ēdūcunt*.

**leader**; *princeps*, *cipis*, m.; *dux*, *ducis*, m.

**learn**; *discō*, *ere*, *didicī*.

**learned**; *doctus*, a, um.

**legion**; *legiō*, *ōnis*, f.

**let**; expressed by the subjunctive or imperative; see 401, page 129, footnote 1.

**letter**; *epistula*, ae, f.; *litterae*, *ārūm*, f. plur.

**liberate**; *liberō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*.

**liberty**; *libertās*, *ātis*, f.

**like**; *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*.

**line of battle**; *aciēs*, *ēi*, f.

**live**; *habitō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*; *vivō*, *ere*, *vixī*, *victum*.

**lofty**; *altus, a, um.*

**long**; *longus, a, um.*

**look at**; *spectō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

**love**; *amō, āre, āvī, ātum*; (he) loves, *amat*; (they) love, *amant*; (he) is loved, *amātur*, they are loved, *amantur.*

**Lydians**; *Lydī, ōrum, m. plur.*

## M

**magnificent**; *māgnificus, a, um.*

**make**; *faciō, ere, fecī, factum*; make a journey, *iter facere*; make use of, *utor, ī, ūsus sum.*

**man**; *homō, hominis, m.*; *vir, virī, m., 121.*

**many**; *multī, ae, a*; how many, *quot*, indecl.

**Marathon**, of; *Marathōnius, a, um.*

**Marcus**; *Mārcus, ī, m.*

**master**, owner; *dominus, ī, m.*; teacher, *magister, trī, m., 87.*

**medicine**; *medicīna, ae, f.*

**memory**; *memoriā, ae, f.*

**merchant**; *mercātor, ōris, m.*

**Mercury**; *Mercurius, ī, m.*

**messenger**; *nūntius, ī, m.*

**military**; *militāris, e*; military affairs, military system, *rēs militāris, rei militāris.*

**Minerva**; *Minerva, ae, f.*

**month**; *mēnsis, is, m.*

**morning**, in the; *māne, adv.*; this morning, *hodiē māne*; to-morrow morning, *crās māne.*

**mother**; *māter, mātris, f.*

**mountain**; *mōns, montis, m.*

**move**; *moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtūm.*

**my**; *meus, a, um*, page 267, foot-note 1.

**myself**; *ego, meī*; see 265.

## N

**name**; *nōmen, nōminis, n.*

**name**; *nōminō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

**native land**, native country; *patria, ae, f.*

**navy**; *clāssis, is, f.*

**nearly**; *ferē, adv.*

**neither**; *neuter, tra, trum, 377.*

**never**; *nunquam, adv.*

**new**; *novus, a, um.*

**next**; *prōximus, a, um.*

**no one**, nobody; *nēmō*, see 195, foot-note 3.

**not**, adv.; *nōn*; not to know, *nēscīre.*

**not?** *nōn-ne?*

**not yet**; *nōndum, adv.*

**nothing**; *nihil*, indecl.

**now**; *nunc, adv.*

**number**; *numerus, ī, m.*

## O

**obey**; *pāreō, ēre, uī, itum.*

**of**, concerning, about; *dē*, prep. with Abl.; generally expressed by the Genitive.

**often**; *saepe, adv.*

**on**; *in*, prep. with Abl.

**one**; *ūnus, a, um, 381*; some one, *aliquis, aliqua, aliquid.*

**one's country**; *patria, ae, f.*

**oration**; *ōrātiō, ōnis, f.*

**orator**; *ōrātor, ōris, m.*

**ornament**; *ōrnāmentum, ī, n.*

**other**; *alius, a, ud, 378*; the other (of two), *alter, era, erum, 377.*

**ought**; *dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum*; (he) ought, *dēbet*; (they) ought, *dēbent.*

**our**; *noster, tra, trum.*

**over**; see *triumph over.*

## P

**parent**; *parēns, entis, m and f.*

**part**; *pars, partis, f.*

**peace**; *pāx, pācis, f.*

**pear**; *pirum, ī, n.*

**people**; *populus, ī, m.*

**perform**; *fungor, ī, functus sum.*

**Pericles**; *Periclēs, is, m.*

**peril**; *periculum, ī, n.*

**Persians**; *Persae, arum, m. plur.*

**Phidippus**; *Phidippus, ī, m.*

**Philadelphia** ; *Philadelp̄hia*,  
*ae, f.*

**physician** ; *medicus, ī, m.*

**plain** ; *campus, ī, m.*

**play** ; *lūdō, ere, lūsī, lūsum.*

**pleasant** ; *iūcundus, a, um.*

**please** ; *placeō, ēre, uī, itum*, with  
Dat. ; *dēlecto, āre, āvī, ātum* ; (he)  
pleases, *dēlectat* ; (they) please, *dē-*  
*lectant* ; (he) is pleased, *dēlectātur* ;  
(they) are pleased, *dēlectantur*.

**pleasing** ; *iūcundus, a, um.*

**pleasure** ; *voluptās, ātis, f.*

**poem** ; *carmen, carminis, n.*

**poet** ; *poēta, ae, m.*

**point out** ; *mōnstrō, āre, āvī,*  
*ātum.*

**Pompey** ; *Pompēius, iī, m.*

**possession of** ; see *take posses-*  
*sion of.*

**practice** ; *exerceō, ēre, uī, itum.*

**praise** ; *laus, laudis, f.*

**praise** ; *laudō, āre, āvī, ātum* ; (he)  
praises, *laudat* ; (they) praise, *lau-*  
*dant* ; (he) is praised, *laudātur* ; (they)  
are praised, *laudantur*.

**prefer** ; *mālō, malle, māluī.*

**present** ; *dōnum, ī, n.*

**previously** ; *antē, adv.*

**prince** ; *prīnceps, cipis, m.*

**prison** ; *carcer, eris, m.*

**prize** ; *praemium, iī, n.*

**progress** ; *prōgressus, ūs, m.*, gen-  
erally used in the plural.

**propose** ; *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.*

**prosperous voyage**, to have ;  
*fēliciter nāvīgāre.*

**pupil** ; *discipulus, ī, m.*

## Q

**queen** ; *rēgīna, ae, f.*

## R

**read** ; *legō, ere, lēgī, lēctum* ; (he)  
reads, *legit* ; (they) read, *legunt* ; (it)  
is read, *legitur* ; (they) are read, *le-*  
*guntur*.

**receive** ; *accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum.*

**recently** ; *nūper, adv.*

**red** ; *ruber, bra, brum.*

**reign** ; *rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

**remain** ; *manēō, ēre, mānsī, mān-*  
*sum* ; *re-manēō, ēre mānsī, —.*

**remarkable** ; *ēgregius, a, um.*

**republic** ; *rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae.*

**return** ; *redeō, īre, īvī or īī, itum.*

**reward** ; *praemium, iī, n.*

**Richard** ; *Ricardus ī, m.*

**riches** ; *dīvitiae, ārum, f. plur.*

**road** ; *via, ae, f.*

**Roman** ; *Rōmānus, a, um.*

**Romans** ; *Rōmānī, ōrum, m. plur.*

**Rome** ; *Rōma, ae, f.*

**Romulus** ; *Rōmulus, ī, m.*

**rough** ; *asper, era, erum.*

**ruins** ; *ruīnae, ārum, f. plur.*

**rumor** ; *rūmor, ōris, m.*

## S

**sacred** ; *sacer, cra, crum.*

**safety** ; *salūs, ūtis, f.*

**sail** ; *nāvīgō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

**sailor** ; *nauta, ae, m.*

**save** ; *servō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

**say** ; *dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum* ; *lo-*  
*quor, ī, locūtus sum.*

**school** ; *schola, ae, f.*

**Scipio** ; *Scīpiō, ōnis, m.* ; *Scīpio*  
*Africanus, Scīpiō Africānus, Scīpiōnis*  
*Africānī, m.*

**sea** ; *mare, maris, n.*

**see** ; *videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum.*

**seem** ; *videor, ērī, vīsus sum.*

**seize** ; *occupō, āre, āvī, ātum* ; (he)  
seizes, *occupat* ; (they) seize, *occupant*.

**senate** ; *senātus, ūs, m.*

**senator** ; *senātor, ōris, m.*

**send** ; *mittō, ere, misī, missum.*

**servant** ; *servus, ī, m.*

**serve** ; *serviō, īre, īvī or īī, itum.*

**servitude** ; *servitūs, ūtis, f.*

**Servius** ; *Servius, iī, m.*

**seven** ; *septem, indecl.*

**severe** ; *sevērus, a, um.*

**ship** ; *nāvis, is, f.* ; ship of war,  
*nāvis longa, nāvis longae.*

**short**; *brevis, e*; in a short time, *brevi tempore, brevī*.

**shout**; *clāmor, ōris, m.*

**shun**; *vitō, āre, āvī, ātum*.

**Sicily**; *Sicilia, ae, f.*

**sing**; *cantō, āre, āvī, ātum*; (he) sings, *cantat*; (they) sing, *cantant*.

**singing**; *cantus, ūs, m.*

**sister**; *soror, ōris, f.*

**six**; *sex, indecl.*

**sixth**; *sextus, a, um*.

**slaughter**; *caedēs, is, f.*

**slave**; *servus, ī, m.*

**sleep**; *dormiō, īre, īvī or īī, itum*.

**small**; *parvus, a, um, 192*.

**Socrates**; *Sōcratēs, is, m.*

**soldier**; *mīles, militis, m.*

**Solon**; *Solōn, ōnis, m.*

**some one**; *aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, 392*.

**sometimes**; *interdum, adv.*

**son**; *filius, īī, m., voc. sing. fili*.

**son-in-law**; *gener, generi, m.*

**song**; *cantus, ūs, m.; carmen, carminis, n.*

**soon**; *mox, adv.; brevi tempore; brevī, adv.*

**speak**; *dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum; loquor, ī, locūtus sum; speak Latin, Greck, Latīnē, Graecē loquī*.

**speedy**; *celer, era, erum*.

**spirited**; *acer, acris, acre*.

**spur**; *calcar, āris, n.*

**start**; *pro-ficiscor, ī, fectus sum; to start for, proficiscī ad*.

**state**; *civitās, ātis, f.*

**statue**; *statua, ae, f.*

**story**; *fābula, ae, f.*

**study**; *studium, īī, n.*

**subject**, to be; *pāreō, ēre, uī, itum*.

**summer**; *aestās, ātis, f.*

**suspicion**; *suspīciō, ōnis, f.*

**system**; see military.

## T

**Tacitus**; *Tacitus, ī, m.*

**take**; *capīō, ere, cēvī, captum;*

take a walk, *ambulō, āre, āvī, ātum*; take possession of, *occupō, āre, āvī, ātum*.

**take**, conduct; *dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum*.

**talk**, *dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum*; (he) talks, *dīcīt*; (they) talk, *dīcunt*; *loquor, ī, locūtus sum*.

**teacher**; *magister, trī, m.; praeceptor, ōris, m., 116*.

**temple**; *templum, ī, n.*

**ten**; *decem, indecl.*

**terrify**; *terreō, ēre, uī, itum*; (he) terrifies, *terret*; (they) terrify, *terrent*; (he) is terrified, *terrētur*; (they) are terrified, *terrentur*.

**than**; *quam*; often denoted by the ablative.

**that**; *is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud*.

**that**; conj., *ut* with subjunctive, see 406; sometimes expressed by *in-fin.* with *Acc.*, see 416.

**the**; see page 9, foot-note 2.

**theft**; *fūrtum, ī, n.*

**their**; *suus, a, um*; very often omitted.

**there are**; *sunt*.

**thief**; *fūr, fūris, m.*

**thing**; *rēs, reī, f.*; sometimes denoted by a neuter adjective.

**thirty**; *trīgintā*; thirty-seven, *trīgintā septem*.

**this**; *hīc, haec, hōc*; this morning, *hodiē māne*.

**thousand**; *mīlle, indecl.; thousands, mīlia, ium, n.*

**three**; *trēs, tria, 381*.

**through**; *per*, prep. with *Acc.*

**time**; *tempus, temporis, n.*; times, *tempora, um, n. plur.*; at that time, *eō tempore*; in a short time, *brevī tempore, brevī*.

**Titus**; *Titus, ī, m.*

**to**; *ad*, prep. with *Acc.*; often expressed by the *Dat.*; to-day, *hodiē* adv.; to-morrow, *crās*, adv.; to-morrow morning, *crās māne*.

**tower**, *turris, is, f.*

**town**; *oppidum, ī, n.*  
**travel**, make a journey; *iter faciō, ere, feci, factum.*  
**tree**; *arbor, oris, f.*  
**triumph**; *triumphus, ī, m.*  
**triumph**; *triumphō, āre, āvī, ātum*; to triumph over, *triumphāre dē.*  
**try**; *tentō, āre, āvī, ātum*; *cōnor, ārī, ātus sum.*  
**Tullia**; *Tullia, ae, f.*

## U

**uncertain**; *incertus, a, um.*  
**unhappy**; *miser, era, erum*; *infelix, icis.*  
**unwilling**, to be; *nōlō, nōlle, nōluī.*  
**upon**; *in* with Abl.; often expressed by Dat.  
**use**; *ūsus, ūs, m.*  
**use**, make use of; *ūtor, ī, ūsus sum.*  
**useful**; *ūtilis, e.*

## V

**valor**; *virtūs, ūtis, f.*  
**various**; *variūs, a, um.*  
**vase**; *vās, vāsīs, n.*  
**vast**; *vāstus, a, um*; *ingēns, entis.*  
**Vergil**; *Vergilius, iī, m.*; 90, 2.  
**very**; *valdē, adv.*; often expressed by the Superlative; very early, *bene māne*; to be very well, *bene valeō, ēre, uī, itum.*  
**victory**; *victōria, ae, f.*  
**villa**; *villa, ae, f.*  
**Virginia**; *Virgīnia, ae, f.*  
**voyage**, to have a prosperous voyage, *felīciter nāvīgāre.*

## W

**wage**; *gerō, ere, gessi, gestum.*  
**wait for**; *expectō, āre, āvī, ātum*; (he) waits for, *expectat*; (they) wait for, *expectant.*  
**walk**, take a walk; *ambulō, āre,*

*āvī, ātum*; (he) walks, *ambulat*; (they) walk, *ambulant.*

**wall**; *mūrus, ī, m.*; *vallum, ī, n.*  
**war**; *bellum, ī, n.*; ship of war, *nāvis longa, nāvis longae.*  
**was**, (he) was, there was; *erat, fuit.*

**waste**, to lay waste; *vāstō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

**wealth**; *dīvitiāe, ārum, f. plur.*

**welcome**; *grātus, a, um.*

**well**; *bene, adv.*; to be well, *valeō, ēre, uī, itum*; to be very well, *bene valēre.*

**were**, (they) were, there were; *erant, fuērunt.*

**what**; *quid*, neuter of *quis, quae, quid*; sometimes *quī, quae, quod*; see who, which, what.

**when**; *quandō, adv.*

**where**; *ubī, adv.*

**which of two**; *uter, utra, utrum.*

**who**, which, what? *quis, quae, quid*; *qui, quae, quod*, 391.

**who**, which, that; *quī, quae, quod*, 354.

**whole**; *tōtus, a, um*, 377.

**whom**? *quem*, Acc. sing. of *quis*; *quōs*, Acc. plur. of *quis*.

**winter**; *hiems, hiemis, f.*

**wise**; *sapiēns, entis*; wise men, sometimes *sapiētēs, ium, m.*; see 322.

**wish**; *volō, velle, voluī.*

**with**; *cum*, prep. with Abl.; often denoted by ablative of means.

**witness**; *testis, is, m. and f.*

**witty**; *facītus, a, um.*

**woman**; *mulier, eris, f.*

**wonder at**; *mīror, ārī, ātus sum*; *admīror, ārī, ātus sum.*

**wood**; *silva, ae, f.*

**word**; *verbum, ī, n.*

**work**; *opus, operis, n.*

**world**; *orbis terrārum, orbis terrārum.*

**would that**; *utinam*; see 401, 402.

**wound**; *vulnus, vulneris, n.*

**wound**; *vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

**wreath**; *corōna, ae, f.*

**write**; *scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptum*; (he) writes, *scribit*; (they) write, *scribunt*. To write Greek, *Graecē scribere*; to write Latin, *Latīnē scribere*.

## Y

**year**; *annus, ī, m.*

**yesterday**; *herī, adv.*

**you**; *tū*, often implied in the ending of the verb.

**your**; *tuus, a, um*, referring to one person; *vester, tra, trum*, referring to more than one person.

THE END.

# Harkness's Standard Latin Grammar.

FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

By **ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph.D., LL.D.,**

PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

---

This is a complete, philosophical, and attractive work. Facts are presented in clear and simple language. The work has been pronounced "a model for perspicuity of statement and clearness of arrangement." It is characterized by great accuracy of statement. It is a Grammar of the Latin Language based upon the facts of that language. The facts and laws of the language are all presented in the light of the latest and best grammatical studies, including comparative grammar.

It practically embraces three works in one.

The present edition is the result of a thorough and complete revision of that of 1874. To a large extent it is a new and independent work, yet the paradigms, rules of construction, and in general all parts intended for recitation, have been only slightly changed. The aim of the work in its present form is threefold:

1. To be a clear, simple, and convenient elementary Latin Grammar, giving the essentials for that use in distinctive type, and in the form best adapted to the end.

2. To be an adequate and trustworthy grammar for the advanced student—a complete grammar of the Latin language, for the use of critical students of every grade of scholarship.

3. To be a practical introduction to the broader fields of philology and modern linguistic research with references to the latest and best authorities upon the numerous questions which arise in such study.

**Price, \$1.12.**

---

*A copy of the above book will be mailed, postpaid, to any address, on receipt of price. Full descriptive circulars sent on application.*

**AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY,**

NEW YORK      ∴      CINCINNATI      ∴      CHICAGO.

[\*82]

# Harkness's Series of Preparatory Latin Text-Books.

By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph.D., LL.D.,  
PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

## LATIN GRAMMAR.

Standard Edition of 1881. 12mo, cloth. 430 pages . \$1.12

For schools and colleges. This is a complete, philosophical, and attractive work. It presents a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the language, exhibiting not only the grammatical forms and constructions, but also those vital principles which underlie, control, and explain them.

## EASY METHOD FOR BEGINNERS IN LATIN.

12mo, cloth. 348 pages . . . . . \$1.20

This volume is not a mere companion to the Grammar, but a practical guide for the pupil in the work of reading and writing Latin. It approaches the language on its practical side. The very first lesson, without a word of grammar, introduces the learner to complete Latin sentences, with verb, subject, and object. Thus, at the very outset, he finds himself already using the language. He is not only reading Latin, but actually writing it.

## FIRST YEAR IN LATIN.

Complete Course. 12mo, cloth. 332 pages . . . . \$1.12

An outline of Latin Grammar and progressive exercises in reading and writing Latin, with frequent practice in reading at sight. This volume contains a series of simple exercises progressively arranged, and designed to lead the way directly to connected discourse, together with numerous exercises and passages intended for practice in sight reading and composition exercise.

## LATIN EXERCISES FOR THE FIRST YEAR.

12mo, cloth. 268 pages . . . . . \$1.00

A course of progressive exercises in reading and writing Latin, with frequent practice in reading at sight, intended as a companion to Harkness's Latin Grammar.

## NEW LATIN READER.

12mo, cloth. 227 pages . . . . . 87 cents

With exercises in Latin composition, intended as a companion to the author's Latin Grammar. With references, suggestions, notes, and vocabularies.

The "New Reader" differs from the "Reader" in several respects. The first parts of the two books are wholly different. The New has in this part alternating exercises in translation both ways from one language into the other, with numbered references to the "Grammar" at every step.

## INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK.

12mo, cloth. 162 pages . . . . . 87 cents

Intended as an elementary drill book on the inflections and principles of the language. This work gives a distinct outline of the whole grammar.

## INTRODUCTION TO LATIN COMPOSITION.

12mo, cloth. 306 pages . . . . . \$1.05

For schools and colleges. Part I. Elementary Exercises, intended as a companion to the Reader. Part II. Latin Syntax. Part III. Elements of Latin style, with special reference to idioms and synonyms.

*Copies of the above books will be mailed, postpaid, to any address, on receipt of price. Full descriptive circulars sent on application.*

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY,

NEW YORK

∴

CINCINNATI

∴

CHICAGO.

# Preparatory Latin Texts.

(NOT INCLUDING VIRGIL).

## CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR.

By G. K. BARTHOLOMEW

90 cents

This new and complete edition of "Cæsar's Commentaries."

## CÆSAR'S COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR.

(New Pictorial Edition.) With Notes, Dictionary, and a Map of Gaul. By ALBERT HARKNESS, LL.D.

\$1.20

This revised edition of Harkness's Cæsar contains many important additions and improvements, including an outline of the Roman military system during the last half century of the republic.

## CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR. (Eight Books.)

By WM. R. HARPER, Ph.D., and HERBERT C. TOLMAN, Ph.D.

\$1.20

An entirely new work on an original plan; with numerous examples of inductive studies, and lists of topics for investigation.

## CICERO'S ORATIONS, NOTES, AND VOCABULARY.

By A. HARKNESS, LL.D.

\$1.22

This book contains ten select orations, giving specimens of Roman eloquence in its various departments—forensic, senatorial, and judicial.

## CICERO'S ORATIONS AND LETTERS.

With Vocabulary. By J. H. HANSON, A.M.

\$1.20

The thirty-five letters which have been selected cover a period of twenty years, commencing with the year succeeding Cicero's consulship and ending with the year of his death.

## CICERO'S LAELIUS DE AMICITIA.

By JOHN K. LORD

72 cents

With English notes, containing references to the standard Latin Grammars. Preceded by an account of the life of Cicero.

## CICERO'S DE OFFICIIS.

By THOMAS A. THACHER

87 cents

With English notes, chiefly selected and translated from the editions of Zumpt and Bonnell.

## SALLUST. JUGURTHINE WAR.

By CHARLES GEORGE HERBERMANN, Ph.D.

\$1.12

With full explanatory notes, references to Harkness's Revised Latin Grammar, and a copious Latin-English vocabulary. Also an introduction, with life of Sallust, and a short history of Numidia (with map).

## SALLUST. JUGURTHA AND CATILINE.

Notes by N. BUTLER and M. STURGIS

\$1.22

Revised edition, with notes and a vocabulary.

## SALLUST. CATILINE.

Notes and Vocabulary by A. HARKNESS, Ph.D.

90 cents

With explanatory notes and a special vocabulary. Adapted to Harkness's Revised Latin Grammar. Prepared expressly for school use.

## COURSE IN CÆSAR, SALLUST, AND CICERO.

By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph.D.

\$1.40

New pictorial edition. With notes and dictionary, plans of battles, outline of the Roman military system, etc. It contains four books of Cæsar's "Commentaries," the "Catiline" of Sallust, and eight of Cicero's orations.

*Copies of the above books will be mailed, postpaid, to any address, on receipt of price. Full descriptive circulars sent on application.*

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY,

NEW YORK

CINCINNATI

CHICAGO

# LATIN TEXTS.

FOR ADVANCED CLASSES.

## HORACE.

By J. L. LINCOLN, LL.D. 12mo, cloth. 574 pages . \$1.22

With copious English notes and a life of Horace. The text of this edition is that of Orelli; but other important readings are also given in foot-notes.

## JUVENAL. SATIRES.

By T. B. LINDSAY. 12mo, cloth. 226 pages . \$1.00

A carefully-edited edition of this author prepared with special reference to the requirements of schools and colleges. Fully illustrated.

## LIVY.

With Notes. By J. L. LINCOLN. 12mo, cloth. 372 pages, \$1.22

Selections from the first five books, together with the twenty-first and twenty-second books entire; with a plan of Rome, a map of the passage of Hannibal, and English notes for the use of schools.

## CORNELIUS NEPOS.

With Notes and Vocabulary. By THOMAS LINDSAY, Ph.D.  
12mo, cloth. 357 pages . \$1.22

With notes, vocabulary, index of proper names, and exercises for translation into Latin. Illustrated by numerous cuts.

## CORNELIUS NEPOS FOR SIGHT READING.

12mo, cloth. 283 pages . \$1.00

An edition of the preceding book without notes and vocabulary. Designed especially for sight reading.

## OVID.

With Notes and Vocabulary. By J. L. LINCOLN, LL.D. 12mo,  
cloth. 332 pages . \$1.22

The text is very carefully annotated, and references made to Harkness's Standard Grammar. Selections have been made from the *Aurores Fasti* and *Tristia*, in addition to those from the *Metamorphoses*.

## SELECTIONS FROM OVID AND VERGIL.

With Vocabulary. By J. H. HANSON, A.M., and W. A. ROLFE.  
12mo, cloth. 770 pages . \$1.40

A hand-book of Latin poetry, containing selections from Ovid and Vergil, with Vocabulary, Notes, and references to the standard Latin grammars.

## TACITUS. HISTORIES.

Notes by W. S. TYLER. 12mo, cloth. 453 pages . \$1.22

References to Harkness's Revised Latin Grammar; copious notes; and an essay on the "Style of Tacitus."

## TACITUS. GERMANIA AND AGRICOLA.

Notes by W. S. TYLER. 12mo, cloth. 216 pages . 87 cents

Revised edition, with additions and references to Harkness's New Standard Latin Grammar.

*Copies of the above books will be mailed, postpaid, to any address, on receipt of price. Full descriptive circulars sent on application.*

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY,

NEW YORK

∴

CINCINNATI

∴

CHICAGO.







# Date Due

				\$0 80
				90
				20
				84
				2 00
				1 05
				1 20
				1 12
				1 00
				87
				87
				1 12
				1 05
				75
				87
				87
				1 05
I				1 00
				1 00
I				50
S				80
I	Demco 293-5			90
	Butler and Sturgus's Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline . . . .	1	22	
	Crosby's Quintus Curtius Rufus. . . . .	1	05	
	Frieze's Quintilian. Tenth and Twelfth Books. With Notes,	1	20	
	Vergil's Æneid. Complete. With Notes and Dictionary..	1	30	
	Six Books of Æneid, Georgics, and Bucolics. With Notes			
	and Dictionary. . . . .	1	30	
	Vergil. Complete Works. Notes and Dictionary. . . . .	1	60	
	Hanson's Cicero's Orations and Letters. With Vocabulary..	1	20	



1 1719 02753 7416

<b>Harkness's</b> Cæsar's Commentaries. New Pictorial Edition..	‡1 20
Cæsar's Commentaries. (Old Edition).....	1 05
Cicero's Orations. With Notes and Dictionary .....	1 22
Course in Cæsar, Sallust, and Cicero. (Preparatory).....	1 40
Sallust's Catiline. With Notes and Vocabulary.....	90
Military System of the Romans.....	
<b>Harper and Tolman's</b> Cæsar's Gallic War. With Notes and Dictionary.....	1 20
<b>Harper and Miller's</b> Virgil's Æneid. ( <i>In preparation</i> )....	
<b>Herbermann's</b> Sallust's Jugurthine War.....	1 12
<b>Lincoln's</b> Horace. With Notes.....	1 22
Livy. With Notes.....	1 22
Ovid. With Notes and Vocabulary.....	1 22
<b>Lindsay's</b> Cornelius Nepos. With Notes and Vocabulary...	1 22
Cornelius Nepos for Sight Reading.....	1 00
Satires of Juvenal.....	1 00
<b>Lord's</b> (John K.) Cicero's Laelius de Amicitia.....	72
<b>Searing's</b> Virgil. The Æneid (Six Books), Bucolics, and Geor- gics. With Vocabulary.....	1 60
Virgil's Æneid. Six Books. With Vocabulary.....	1 40
The same. Books I, II, and VI, with Vocabulary.....	1 25
<b>Thacher's</b> Cicero de Officiis.....	87
<b>Tyler's</b> Histories of Tacitus.....	1 22
Germania and Agricola of Tacitus.....	87

*Copies of these books will be sent to any address, postage paid, on receipt of price. Full price-list mailed on application.*

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY, Publishers,

NEW YORK,       · : ·       CINCINNATI,       · : ·       CHICAGO.

